

Addressing social issues in rural communities by planning for lively places and green spaces

N. de Jong

Student number: 21681848

B.Art et Scien in Town and Regional Planning

Dissertation submitted in fulfillment of the requirements for the degree Magister Scientiae in Urban and Regional Planning at the Potchefstroom Campus of the North-West University

Supervisor: Dr. E.J. Cilliers

May 2014

This document was edited according to the 'QUOTING SOURCES' (E.J. van der Walt, 2012),
as prescribed and edited by the Information Services of the Ferdinand Postma Library, North West University, Potchefstroom.

*

This research (or parts thereof) was made possible by the financial contribution of the NRF (National Research Foundation) South Africa.

Any opinion, findings and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and therefore the NRF does not accept any liability in regard thereto.

Abstract

The increase in social challenges especially with regards to safety and security experienced in rural communities, as well as the lack of efficient lively places and public green spaces, is predominantly increasing in importance for government and planning policies.

This problem is substantiated by the large number of deaths (especially the deaths of children) drowning in rivers flowing through or nearby rural communities because of the lack of any other safe, public facilities and well-managed and maintained green spaces. The research question therefore focuses on whether the planning of lively places and green spaces in rural communities can address some of these social issues, and contribute to the strengthening of communities and creation of lively public places.

Government is struggling to deal with social issues (especially that of safety and security) within rural communities and a number of strategies were discussed and drawn up. (For example, the Rural Safety Summit which took place on 10 October 1998 aimed at achieving consensus regarding issues of rural insecurity; as well as crime prevention strategies as defined by the SAPS White Paper on Safety and Security (1998).) However, very little (if any) in-depth research on the possibility of upgrading public spaces into lively green places as a solution, has been done. This study can serve as a link between literature and practical rural issues, as well as contribute to green space and lively place development, incorporating international approaches and pilot studies, and illustrating best practices in terms of lively place and green space development, linking it to the local rural reality.

In creating public and lively green places for rural communities, issues of safety, inequality, sociability and community coherence are addressed. Through the correct corresponding planning initiatives consequently drawn up, overall quality of life of those living in rural communities can be improved, decreasing the social challenges experienced.

Key words: Social challenges; lively places; public green spaces; safety and security; rural communities.

Opsomming

Die toename in sosiale uitdagings (“*social challenges*”), veral dié van veiligheid en sekuriteit soos ervaar in landelike gemeenskappe se belang word toenemend verhoog vir die regering en beplanningsbeleide, sowel as die gebrek aan doeltreffende lewendige plekke (“*lively places*”) en openbare groen ruimtes.

Hierdie probleem word gestaaf deur die groot aantal die sterftes (veral dié van kinders) wat verdrink in riviere van landelike gemeenskappe as gevolg van die gebrek aan enige ander veilige, openbare geriewe en goed bestuurde en onderhoude groen ruimtes. Die navorsingsvraag fokus dus op die kwessie of die beplanning van lewendige plekke en groen ruimtes in landelike gemeenskappe sommige van hierdie sosiale kwessies kan aanspreek en daardeur bydra tot die versterking van gemeenskappe sowel as die skepping van lewendige openbare plekke.

Die regering sukkel met sosiale kwessies (veral dié van veiligheid en sekuriteit) in landelike gemeenskappe en 'n aantal strategieë is bespreek en opgestel (byvoorbeeld die van die Landelike Veiligheid Summit wat plaasgevind het op 10 Oktober 1998 wat daarop gemik was om konsensus te bereik rakende kwessies van landelike onsekerheid, asook misdada voorkoming strategieë soos gedefinieer deur die SAPD Witskrif oor Veiligheid en Sekuriteit (1998)), maar baie min (indien enige) in diepte navorsing oor die moontlikheid van die opgradering van openbare ruimtes in lewendige groen plekke (as 'n oplossing) is al gedoen. Daarom kan hierdie studie dus dien as 'n skakel tussen literatuur en praktiese landelike kwessies, sowel as die van groen ruimte en lewendige plek-ontwikkeling, wat internasionale benaderings en proef studies illustreer wat die beste praktyke in terme van lewendige plek en groen ruimte-ontwikkeling integreer, en dit te koppel aan die plaaslike landelike werklikheid.

In die skep van openbare en lewendige groen plekke vir landelike gemeenskappe word kwessies rakende veiligheid, ongelykheid, sosialiteit en gemeenskapsamehang aangespreek word; en deur die korrekte ooreenstemmende beplanning inisiatiewe gevolglik op te stel kan algehele kwaliteit van lewe (“*quality of life*”) van diegene wat in landelike gemeenskappe woon verbeter word, wat dan ook lei tot die vermindering van sosiale uitdagings en kwessies wat ervaar word.

Sleutelwoorde: Sosiale uitdagings; lewendige plekke; openbare groen ruimtes; veiligheid en sekuriteit; landelike gemeenskappe.

Table of Contents

ABSTRACT	III
OPSOMMING	IV
TABLE OF CONTENTS	V
LIST OF TABLES	VIII
LIST OF FIGURES	X
FIGURE 1: STRUCTURE OF DOCUMENT	X
FIGURE 2: PLACE-MAKING ELEMENTS	X
TABLE OF ACRONYMS	XI
CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION	13
1.1 Points of departure	13
1.2 Problem statement	14
1.3 Primary research questions	15
1.4 Aims and objectives of this study	15
1.5 Method	17
1.6 Delineation of the Study Area	18
1.7 Limitations of the research	18
1.8 Structure of the dissertation	22
1.9 Definitions	23
CHAPTER 2: RURAL COMMUNITIES AND DEVELOPMENT	24
2.1 The local rural reality in South Africa	25
2.1.1 Defining 'rural'	25
2.1.2 Primary (social) rural challenges	26
2.2 Addressing the social challenges in rural areas of South Africa by means of planning	44
2.2.1 Understanding "social planning"	44
2.2.2 Current rural planning legislation and policies in SA	46
2.2.3 Frameworks guiding social dimension planning in South Africa	53
2.2.4 South African framework and legislation approach to social issues: safety and security	61
CHAPTER 3: PLANNING OF PUBLIC AND LIVELY PLACES	63
3.1 Introduction	63
3.2 Defining public and lively places	64
3.2.1 Creating a public place	64
3.2.2 Planning for lively places	68
3.2.3 Social benefits of public and lively place planning	84
3.3 Place-making approaches	86
3.3.1 Elements of place-making	86
3.3.2 Theories regarding place-making	87
3.3.3 Impact of place-making theories on rural safety and security	89
3.4 Planning of lively places to address social challenges	93
CHAPTER 4: GREEN SPACE PLANNING	97
4.1 Introduction	97
4.2 Defining 'green spaces'	97
4.3 Challenges and understanding of the context of green spaces	101
4.4 Green spaces and social challenges	108
4.4.1 International context	108
4.4.2 International case studies	108
4.4.3 South African context	118
4.5.1 Comparing factors of successful green space case studies	126
4.6 Role of green spaces in enhancing social benefits	127

4.7	The role of green space planning in creating lively places	130
4.8	Rural communities and the social benefit of green space planning	133
4.8.1	Impact of green space provision on safety and security of rural areas	133
4.9	Collaborate: Lively place and green space planning relevance in rural communities	136
4.9.1	Background: Rural challenges and lively place and green space planning	137
4.9.2	Evaluating the concept of lively place planning in terms of rural development	138
4.9.3	Success aspects in terms of rural development	140
4.9.4	Effect on safety and security of a rural area	143
CHAPTER 5: INTERNATIONAL CASE STUDIES OF GREEN SPACE PLANNING AND APPROACHES TO LIVELY PLACE PLANNING		145
5.1	Introduction	145
5.2	International lively place planning: Approach analysis	145
5.2.1	Point of departure: planning lively places	146
5.2.2	International case studies: Lively place planning and place-making	149
5.3	International green space planning: Case study analysis	153
5.3.1	Point of departure: planning of green spaces	154
5.3.2	International case studies: Green space planning	157
5.4	Discussion and implications of findings	164
5.5	Chapter conclusion	168
CHAPTER 6: LOCAL CASE STUDIES OF GREEN SPACE PLANNING AND APPROACHES TO LIVELY PLACE PLANNING–PILOT TESTS		169
6.1	Introduction	169
6.2	Local lively place planning: Approach analysis	169
6.2.1	Point of departure: Planning lively public places locally	170
6.2.2	Local case studies: Lively place planning and place-making	170
6.3	Local green space planning: Case study analysis	174
6.3.1	Point of departure: Planning of green spaces locally	174
6.3.2	Local case studies: Green space planning	174
6.4	Discussion and implications	179
6.5	Application to local pilot tests	181
6.5.1	Nigel and Zonkizizwe – Ekurhuleni Metropolitan	183
6.5.2	Umgababa – KwaZulu-Natal	189
6.5.4	Comparing local pilot tests: Best practices in terms of lively place and green space planning	198
6.6	Chapter conclusion	200
CHAPTER 7: APPLICATION OF FINDINGS-VAALHARTS CASE STUDY		202
7.1	Introduction to the Vaalharts area	203
7.2	Current rural situation in Vaalharts	204
7.2.1	Previous research conducted in the Vaalharts region	204
7.2.2	Needs identification and prioritization in the Vaalharts region	205
7.2.3	Current initiatives attempting to address challenges	206
7.3	Needs-analysis	207
7.3.1	Statistical analysis of needs	207
7.3.2	Gap analysis of current needs and challenges to be addressed	209
7.3.3	Strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats	211
7.4	Interpretation of analysis in terms of the social dimension of planning	213
7.4.1	Safety and security as social challenges in the Vaalharts area	213
7.4.2	Evaluation of current initiatives to address social challenges in the Vaalharts area	215
7.4.3	Potential benefit of integrating social planning initiatives in the Vaalharts area	218
7.5	Evaluating the WIN-project as initiative to address Vaalharts-challenges	219
7.5.1	Background and information regarding WIN-project	219
7.5.2	Evaluation of WIN-project initiatives in terms of social dimension planning	220
7.5.3	Success in terms of addressing safety and security challenges in the Vaalharts	222
7.6	Results and findings	222
CHAPTER 8: CONCLUSIONS		224

8.1	Introduction	225
8.2	Linking theory and practice	226
8.2.1	Rural challenges and corresponding lively place and green space planning influence	226
8.2.2	International and local best practice approaches and case studies	231
8.2.3	Application of best practices in rural communities	235
8.2.4	Implementation of best practices in addressing pilot test challenges	238
8.3	Synopsis.....	242
CHAPTER 9: RECOMMENDATIONS		245
9.1	Introduction	246
9.2	The integration of lively place and green space planning.....	246
9.3	Practical implementation strategies and initiatives	249
9.3.1	Universal recommended application of 'lively and green public place planning' for rural communities	249
9.3.2	Recommended implementation of social planning elements in local pilot tests and the Vaalharts case study ...	254
9.4	Conclusion	257

List of Tables

Table 1:	Acronyms
Table 2:	Glossary
Table 3:	Aspects included within the concept of “social”
Table 4:	Summary of rural social challenges
Table 5:	Causes of drowning in South Africa
Table 6:	Agenda 21 – Approaches to social dimension planning
Table 7:	NSDP social planning principles
Table 8:	Summary of frameworks
Table 9:	Factors of successful public places
Table 10:	Visual examples of planning principles
Table 11:	Regeneration approaches to lively place planning
Table 12:	International lively place planning approaches
Table 13:	Rural planning programmes by the DCSL
Table 14:	South African lively place planning regarding safety and security
Table 15:	Place-making effects on safety and security
Table 16:	Methods to enhance ecosystem services
Table 17:	Typology of green space
Table 18:	International green space case studies and their corresponding green initiatives
Table 19:	Summary of Durban greening initiatives
Table 20:	Local green space case studies and their corresponding green initiatives
Table 21:	Beneficial social values as a result of green space planning
Table 22:	Contribution of green spaces on different social levels
Table 23:	Evaluation tool for lively place planning and place-making
Table 24:	Approach analysis: success and failure in terms of international lively place planning
Table 25:	Evaluation tool for green space planning
Table 26:	Case study analysis: success and failure in terms of international green space planning
Table 27:	Success summary: International lively place planning
Table 28:	Success summary: International green space planning
Table 29:	Approach analysis: success and failure in terms of local lively place planning
Table 30:	Case study analysis: success and failure in terms of local green space planning
Table 31:	Success summary: Local lively place planning

Table 32:	Success summary: Local green space planning
Table 33:	Nigel and Zonkizizwe crime prevention
Table 34:	Umgababa socio-economic upliftment
Table 35:	Pilot test comparison
Table 36:	Community needs inventory and prioritization in the Vaalharts region
Table 37:	Highest scoring needs
Table 38:	Summary of identified gaps
Table 39:	The strengths and assets, weaknesses and threats of the Vaalharts region
Table 40:	Evaluation of current initiatives in terms of lively place and green space planning
Table 41:	Evaluation of WIN-project initiatives in terms of lively place and green space planning
Table 42:	Successful proposed initiatives of current rural legislation policies
Table 43:	Conclusive checklist for evaluating lively places and green spaces
Table 44:	Lively place planning and green space planning benefits in terms of social challenges
Table 45:	Successful lively place approaches and green space case studies to address rural challenges
Table 46:	Gaps in pilot test communities inhibiting best practices to address social challenge
Table 47:	WIN-project as successful social planning initiative for addressing social challenges
Table 48:	Conclusive answers to the primary research questions
Table 49 a:	Implementation of lively and green public place planning for local rural communities: Nigel and Zonkizizwe
Table 49 b:	Implementation of lively and green public place planning for local rural communities: Umgababa
Table 49 c:	Implementation of lively and green public place planning for local rural communities: Vaalharts
Table 50:	Proposed phases of execution when planning a lively and green public place

List of Figures

- Figure 1: Structure of document
- Figure 2: Place-making elements
- Figure 3: Planning scales in practice
- Figure 4: Land tenure systems reform
- Figure 5: Structure of Chapter 7
- Figure 6: Highest scoring needs
- Figure 7: Corresponding needs-related themes
- Figure 8: Basic human needs according to Maslow
- Figure 9: Structure of Chapter 8
- Figure 10: International lively place planning statistical graph
- Figure 11: Local lively place planning statistical graph
- Figure 12: International green space planning statistical graph
- Figure 13: Local green space planning statistical graph
- Figure 14: Structure of Chapter 9
- Figure 15: Lively and green public place planning

Table of Acronyms

Table 1: Acronyms

CPF	Community Police Forums
CPRC	Chronic Poverty Research Centre
CPTED	Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design
CRDP	Comprehensive Rural Development Programme
DCSL	Department of Community Safety and Liaison
DETR	Department for Transport and the Regions
DTLR	Department for Transport, Local Government and the Regions
DWAF	Department of Water Affairs & Forestry
EEA	European Environment Agency
EMPD	Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Police Department
EN	English Nature
GEAR	Growth, Employment and Redistribution
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
ISRDS	Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy
LDCE	Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English
LSA	Lifesaving South Africa
LUMS	Land Use Management Schemes
MLL	Minimum Living Level
MOSS	Metropolitan Open Space System
MRC	Medical & Research Council of South Africa
NAO	National Audit Office
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective

PGS	Public Green Space
PPS	Project for Public Spaces
RDF	Rural Development Framework
RPP	Rural Protection Programme
SAPS	South African Police Service
SD	Social Dimension
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SESAME	System of Economic and Social Accounting Matrices Extensions
SMA	Society of Municipal Arborists
SWOT	Strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats
TTRI	Training for Township Renewal Initiative
UN	United Nations

Source: Own creation (2013)

Chapter 1: Introduction

1.1 Points of departure

The following figure illustrates the structure of the document and an understandable linkage between the content of the research as a whole.

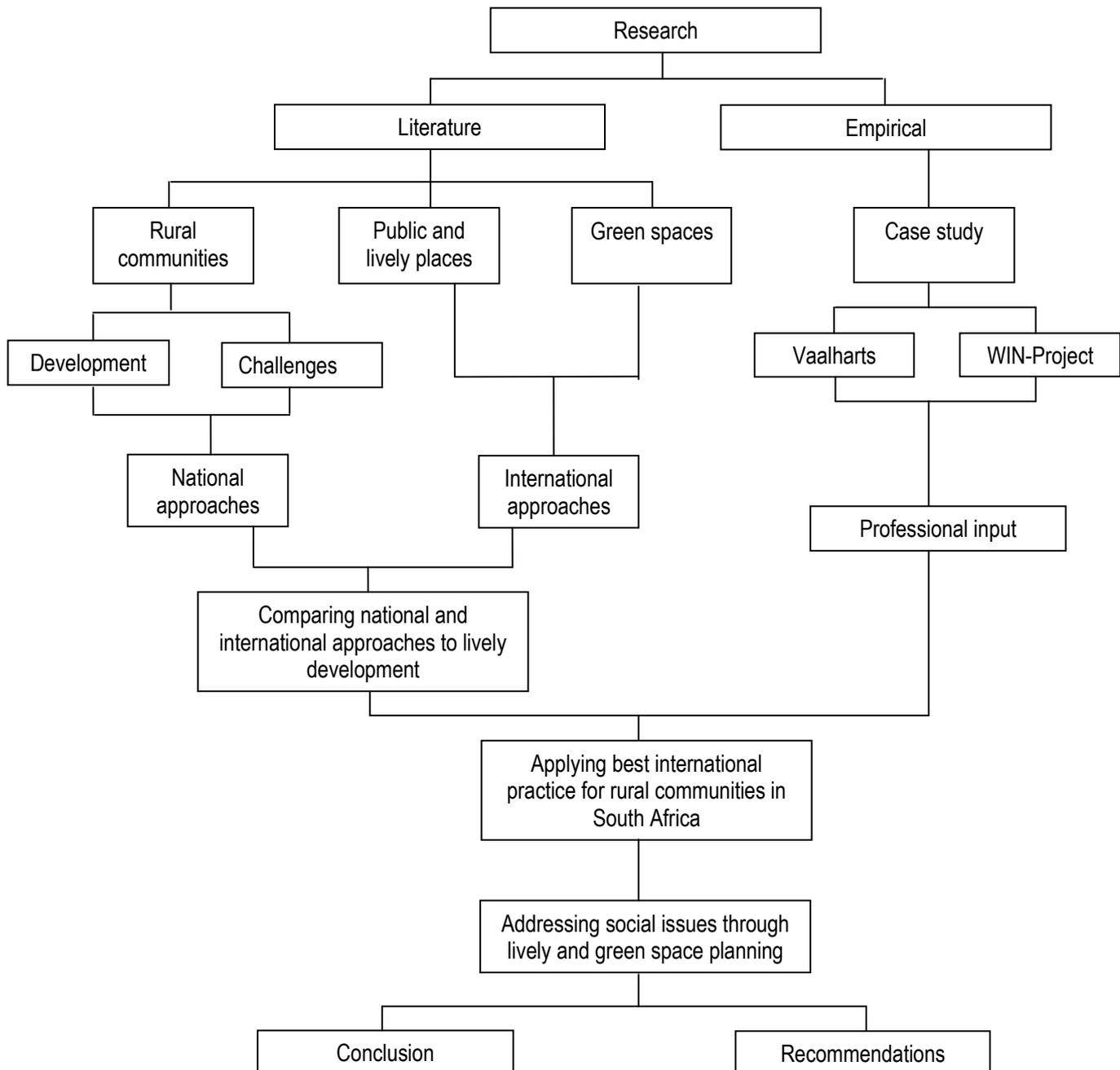


Figure 1: Structure of the document

Source: Own creation (2013)

Numerous approaches to the planning and developing of public and lively places are implemented internationally, with the inclusion of the relatively new and unique design and planning of green spaces. These developments focus on creating places for people in specific areas or communities to enjoy within a safe, human-friendly environment. With the inclusion of green space planning in these areas, a more sustainable approach towards planning is conjured.

Most of these mentioned approaches, which are already implemented, are focused on spaces within urban areas. In this research, the focus is shifted to rural communities and whether or not the implementation of these above-mentioned international approaches can be applicable to rural development.

Therefore, theoretical literature regarding rural communities and the challenges and opportunities faced within the rural environments and communities will be researched. National approaches and frameworks regarding the planning and development of rural communities in South Africa will be referred to.

In order to test the practicality of the research, the Vaalharts rural area was selected as case study with simultaneous reference and inclusion of the WIN-project (Water Innovation Project - a project to be executed in this specific area to address certain social issues experienced in this area).

The international approaches to lively place and green space planning will be compared to current national approaches and best practices for this specific study area will be identified in an attempt to address the current social issues within this rural area. The objective is to determine whether lively place and green space planning can be implemented within South African rural communities, in order to address social issues as those experienced in the Vaalharts area.

1.2 Problem statement

Government is struggling with social issues (especially those connected to safety and security) within rural communities. A number of strategies were discussed and drawn up. (For example, the Rural Safety Summit which took place on 10 October 1998, aimed at achieving consensus regarding issues of rural insecurity; as well as crime prevention strategies as defined by the SAPS White Paper on Safety and Security (1998)), but very little (if any) in-depth research on the possibility of upgrading public spaces into lively and green public places (as a solution) has been done.

The main problem to be addressed is therefore the increasing social issues in rural communities – especially that of safety and security, and the lack of efficient lively place and green space planning.

This problem is substantiated by the large number of deaths (especially the deaths of children) drowning in rivers flowing through or nearby rural communities because of the lack of any other safe, public facilities and green spaces. The research question therefore focuses on whether the planning of lively places and green spaces in rural communities can address some of these social issues, and contribute to the strengthening of communities and creation of lively and green public places.

This study aims to link literature and practical rural issues, as well as incorporate green space and lively place development, including international approaches and pilot studies illustrating best practices in terms of lively place and green space planning, and linking it to the local rural reality.

1.3 Primary research questions

The following primary research questions will be addressed:

- What are lively and public places?
- What are green spaces?
- What are the existing international and local approaches regarding planning of these spaces?
- How can the best practices of international and local approaches be applied to rural communities?
- Is it possible to address social issues within rural communities through the planning of lively places and green spaces?

1.4 Aims and objectives of this study

This research primarily aims to address social issues (such as safety and security) specific to rural communities in South Africa in a sustainable manner by planning for (and improving) lively places and green spaces within rural communities.

The theoretical founding and literature research aim to:

- define lively places, public places and green spaces;
- evaluate place-making theories as a means of addressing safety and security issues within rural communities;
- identify the indirect (social) benefit of planning for lively places and green spaces in the South African environment;
- evaluate the concept of lively public places internationally to determine whether or not it is applicable in rural communities;

- Address problems regarding safety and security through the implementation or improvement of lively place and green space planning elements.

The empirical research aims to:

- review international case studies and pilot tests to compare best practices and to introduce relevant practices and approaches to the Vaalharts Community area as a local case study;
- evaluate rural green space planning in the Vaalharts Community area in South Africa (based findings on the social benefit) and identify possibilities to create useable spaces in rural areas;
- investigate the impact of place-making and green space provision on the safety and security of rural areas, tested on the local case study.

Based on the multi-method approach implemented within this research (refer to subsection 1.5 Method) the integrative and overall aim focuses on:

- An encapsulating nature covering as many aspects and facts including statistics and past social life (e.g. the previous apartheid-regime and the influence thereof on today's social planning and rural development phenomena) as possible. The controversial and complex nature of the subject and focus area (i.e. rural communities, people, and their development) requires an objective research based on facts, current situational-observations, statistics and social and spatial heritage.
- An empirical procedure to create a 'list' whereby any social space (particularly green and lively spaces) can be evaluated on an objective, statistical manner based on whether or not these spaces include the relevant aspects needed for creating successful lively and green public places – as predetermined by researched theory; this procedure includes the in-depth study of various research and applications of lively place planning and green space planning locally and internationally. In doing so, the most predominant, and therefore relevant, elements could be determined. These are used to 'evaluate' the success of local and international practical examples and executions (i.e. case studies and approaches) in order to determine best practices as experienced (and evaluated) locally and internationally.
- Determining the relevance of applying these 'list' aspects (i.e. elements of lively places and green spaces) and best practices as potential social planning approach in order to contribute to and enhance the quality of the environment and overall health of rural communities.
- Empirically comparing and applying these findings to local pilot tests (Umgababa as well as Nigel and Zonkizizwe) and particularly the Vaalharts area as primary case study to support the

assumption of a distinct correlation between rural communities' needs and shortcomings, and the influence of successful lively places and green spaces.

1.5 Method

- Comprehensive literature review
 - Research from various references internationally and locally;
 - Articles and papers on international approaches and projects regarding “green” planning and development;
 - Reviews on national documents including Agenda 21, the Constitution, the NSDP and other relevant policy and legislation frameworks guiding the social dimension of planning in South Africa.
- Structured interviews
 - Structured interviews with persons directly or indirectly involved in the case study (Vaalharts) as well as key role players in the WIN-project.
 - Vaalharts was identified as the ideal rural community due to numerous previous contact and structured interviews with the communities and their inhabitants, as well as the distribution and processing of surveys – substantiating the aspects of “fieldwork”, “surveys” and “statistics” as included in the broad spectrum and definition of a multi-method approach (see below).
- Comparative studies and statistical analysis of different literature information gathered.
 - Based on previously determined, researched and processed statistics a further unobtrusive observational technique will be applied where sole facts (i.e. statistics) will be interpreted to support the assumed correlation between the social needs of rural communities and the potential of lively place and green space planning to address these needs.
- Multi-method research approach
 - According to Brewer and Hunter (1989:1) a diversity of methods (i.e. a ‘multi-method’ approach) implies “...rich opportunities for cross-validating and cross-fertilizing research procedures, findings and theories.”
 - Within this specific research emphasis is placed particularly on three (3) of the four (4) principle methods of research (as described in *Multimethod Research: A synthesis of styles* by J. Brewer and A. Hunter).
 - These include fieldwork, survey research and nonreactive research.

- This research further focus on the inclusion of the nonreactive research method which (according to Brewer and Hunter (1989:2)) entails various unobtrusive observational techniques and/or study artefacts, archives, official statistics and other natural by-products of social life.
- Due to the extremity of the “types” of data included (i.e. factually researched theory on lively place and green space planning on the one side and human needs and emotions, community life, experience and shortcomings on the other side) the inclusion of a multi faceted approach is ideal.
- This variety of methods and approaches is therefore applied in order to successfully comprehend and combine these diverse focus areas (as referred to above) into a single and thriving sustainable social planning solution.

1.6 Delineation of the Study Area

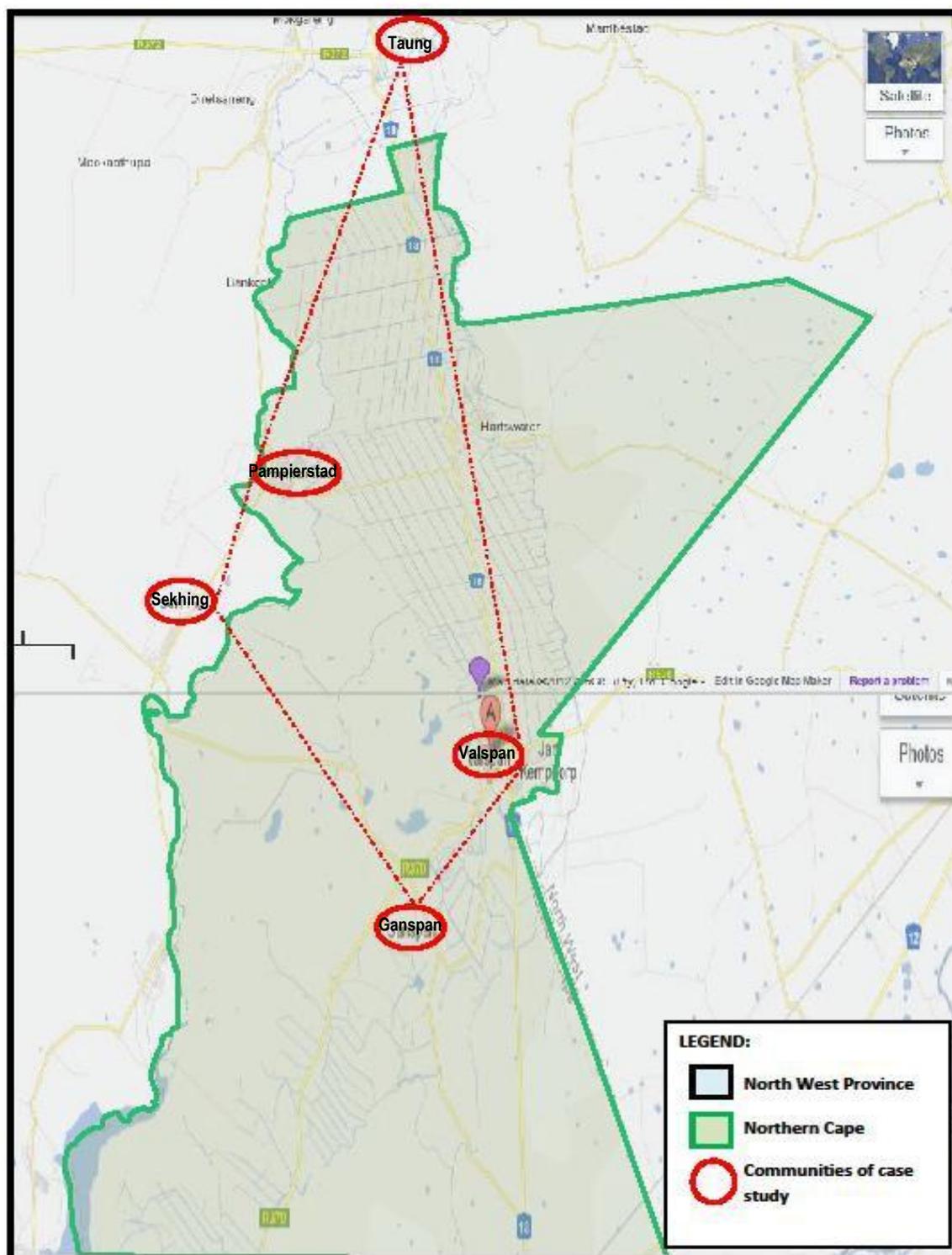
For the purpose of this research, the Vaalharts rural area was selected as the case study with simultaneous inclusion and reference to the WIN-project (Water Innovation Project) executed within this area as reaction to certain social issues regarding safety experienced in these communities. This rural area is located within the jurisdiction of the North West and Northern Cape provinces of South Africa. The data made available for the purpose of this research is representative of the communities Taung, Valspan, Ganspan, Sekhing and Pampierstad, all located within the Vaalharts rural area. This case study is presented in Map 1: Location of the case study.

1.7 Limitations of the research

Time and funding restraints prohibited a comprehensive and detailed survey of the entire Vaalharts rural area and therefore data, findings and analysis encompassed in this research were predominantly acquired from the Vaalharts case study carried out by the company, “Research Logistics” in partnership with the Northwest University throughout a period of seven years ending in 2011, and should thus be considered as a secondary source.

The objective of the Vaalharts case study was to determine the basic needs of only five communities in the Vaalharts rural area. However, since the predominant appearances of and tendencies in rural areas in South Africa are generally comparable, research results could therefore be seen as typical of the Vaalharts rural area.

Data obtained (especially regarding safety and security statistics) mostly focuses on urban rather than rural areas or is an average statistic regarding SA, not primarily focusing on rural communities.



Map 1: Location of the case study

Source: Own creation (2012)

1.8 Structure of the dissertation

The following is a summary of the structure and content of the remainder of the dissertation:

- Rural communities and development
 - The local rural reality
 - Social challenges faced in South African rural areas
 - Focus on safety and security
 - Current planning approach for social-dimension in rural areas in South Africa
 - Policies and legislation guiding rural development
 - ISRDS (the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy)
 - RDF (Rural Development Framework)
 - Review of frameworks guiding the social dimension of planning in South Africa including
 - Agenda 21
 - The Constitution (No. 108 of 1996)
 - The NSDP (National Spatial Development Perspective, 2006)
- Lively public places and green spaces
 - Defining of public and lively places and green spaces
 - Place-making approaches
 - Role of green spaces in creating lively places
 - Planning of lively places and green spaces as answer to social challenges
 - Specific green spaces to enhance social aspects (safety and security)
 - Ethical and moral approaches
- International approaches to lively place and green space planning
 - Comparative studies locally and internationally
 - Best practices to answer social challenges such as safety and security
- Empirical analysis: Vaalharts and WIN-project as Case Studies
 - Defining and description of the area
 - Current needs and challenges
 - Influence of social-dimension planning (lively place and green space planning) on Vaalharts.
 - WIN-Project
 - Introduction and short description of project

- Contribution of the project in addressing needs and challenges regarding safety).
- Initiatives or proposals regarding the future planning of lively places and green spaces.
- Conclusion and proposals

1.9 Definitions

The following are important definitions of applicable terminology used in this study.

Table 2: Glossary

Agrarian transformation	Agrarian transformation is the rapid fundamental change in the relations of land, livestock, cropping and community (Ministry of Rural Development and Land Reform, 2009:3).
Arboreal	Relating to trees, or living in trees (LDCE, 2003:75).
Camaraderie	A feeling of friendship that a group of people have, especially when they work together (LDCE, 2003:248).
Deprivation	The lack of something that you need in order to be healthy, comfortable, or happy (LDCE, 2003:493).
Ecosystem services	The ability of ecological systems to provide (direct or indirect) products and services fundamental to the healthy functioning of human societies (Young, 2010:313).
Green infrastructure	A strategically planned and delivered network including high quality green spaces and other environmental features capable of delivering ecological services and quality of life benefits vital to the sustainability of any area. It includes established as well as new green sites surrounding and/or connecting the urban area to the wider hinterland (Natural England, 2009:7)
Municipal foresters	Individuals managing urban forests and their associated green spaces and assets at municipal level. Can also be referred to as city or town forester, shade tree commissioner, tree warden and city or municipal arborist (Young, 2010:315).
Rural development	Policy and programmes intended to improve the economy and quality of life in rural areas (Farber, 2009:22)
Welfare services	Help that is provided for people who have personal or social problems (LDCE, 2003:2186).

Source: Own construction (2013)

Chapter 2: Rural communities and development

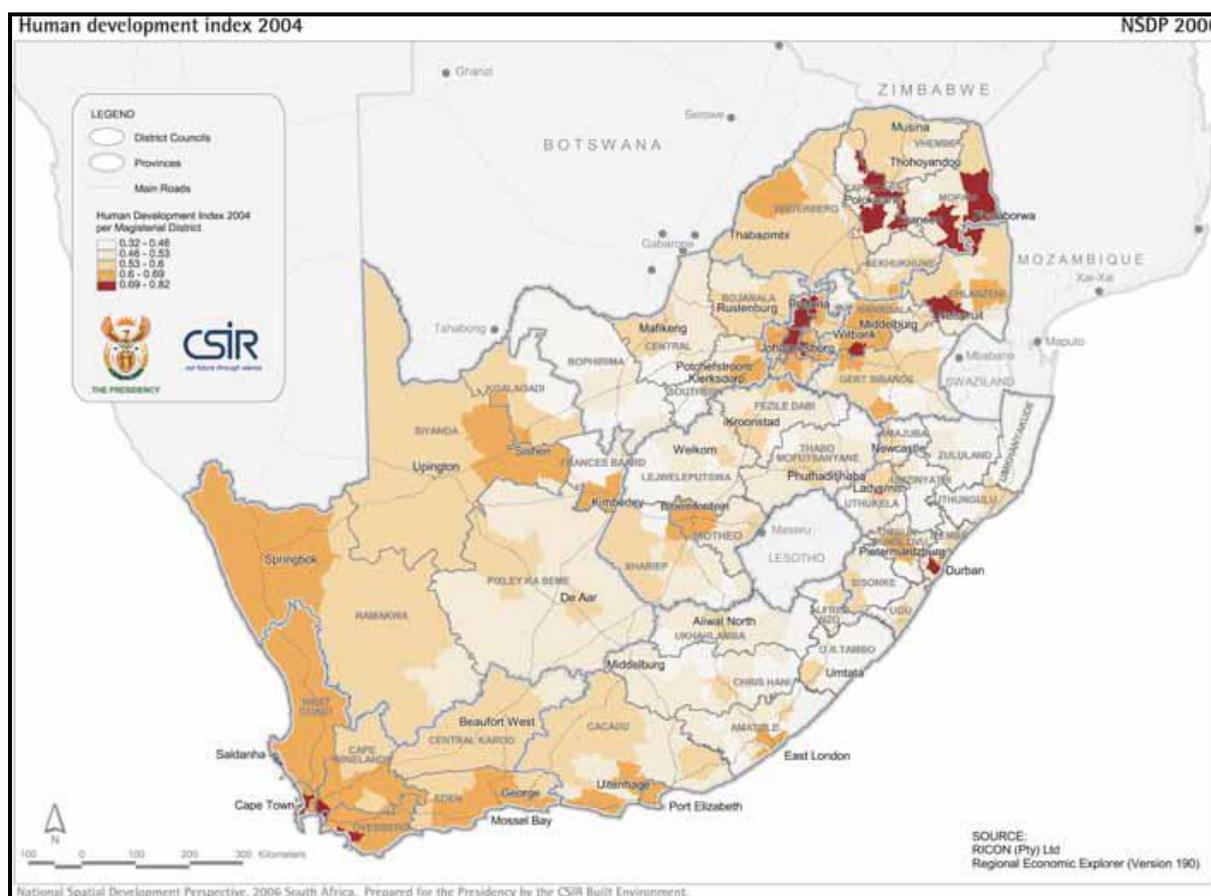
Rural communities and the development thereof continue to be one of the main priorities within frameworks and constitutions guiding the economic and social development of (especially developing) countries. The ISRDS (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:2) substantiates this statement by referring to the pervasiveness of poverty and poor delivery of basic services in rural areas as a primary constraint regarding a country's development efforts.

In South Africa, rural development is an even more predominant challenge as it is estimated that half of South Africa's population lives in rural areas (Campbell *et al.*, 2008:4) and that an astonishing three quarters of this country's people living below the poverty line or MLL (minimum living level) live in these rural areas (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:4).

Therefore planning for rural communities and identifying or creating new approaches to rural development should receive a great deal of attention, as this is the core of addressing government's commitment to eradicate poverty (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:4).

The failure of previous rural development projects implemented during the last three decades (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:2) leads to the consideration of different approaches that will focus and increase the relatively low development levels in the rural areas of South Africa (NSDP, 2006:39 – refer to Map 3) through interventions that support and enhance livelihood such as sound rural-development planning policies and programmes (NSDP, 2006:11) that are oriented towards the provision of basic needs (which will be identified and described in this chapter as well as empirically researched based on the case studies to be discussed in Chapter 7), the development of human resources and a growing economy in order to generate sustainable livelihoods (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform(2), 1997:4).

As such this chapter will aim to define and describe current local rural communities and the challenges associated with these communities. It will also include and embrace current frameworks aimed at developing rural communities and their successes (or failures) as well as addressing the biggest problems experienced in rural communities. In doing this, a platform can be created for lively development as a means to address rural social development which (in the longer term) will contribute to the developmental rate of the country as a whole.



Map 3: Human development index 2004

Source: Adopted from NSDP (2006:39)

2.1 The local rural reality in South Africa

2.1.1 Defining 'rural'

When discussing a concept such as “rural development”, it is essential to define and understand the term “rural”, especially within the context of South Africa, as it is mostly perceived differently compared to other countries where the term usually demonstrates or refers to the density of a population and the dependence on manual labour (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:20). Another perception of “rural” is that of the LDCE (1686) which defines rural as a “happening in or relating to the countryside, not the city”. The European definition of “rural” refers to any agricultural land and/or areas (refer to Annexure 1 indicating the definition of rural settlements in South Africa according to the RDF (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:18)).

The first perception of “rural” would therefore have regarded or defined the whole of South Africa (all-inclusive) up until 1995 as “rural” (referring to the outcomes of censuses and official surveys)

(Department of Rural Development and Land Reform(2), 1997:20) and the other perceptions would not encapsulate the unique and detailed composition of “rural” areas as found in South Africa.

In reaction to these deficit definitions regarding “rural” in the South African context, the Rural Development Framework of South Africa that was originated in 1997, defined “rural” as “... *the sparsely populated areas in which people farm or depend on natural resources, including villages and small towns that are dispersed through these areas*” (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:21).

2.1.2 Primary (social) rural challenges

2.1.2.1 Understanding “social challenges”

When addressing or referring to concepts such as “social”, one must recognise the history of the concept. For many years, SD (sustainable development) was focused on environmental issues and the integration of the environmental and economic dimension, but recently the social dimension was included equally (Mulalic, 2004:4).

As an introduction to this subsection regarding the concept of social challenges, it is important to comprehend that there is no definite and clear consensus regarding the defining of “social” (Mulalic, 2004:4) and that it is important to note that this lack of clear defining imposes a huge number of social indicators when addressing the social aspect of development (Mulalic, 2004:11).

It is therefore important to comprehend the specific focus area regarding “social”. This chapter specifically focuses on rural communities and their development, especially their social issues development. In this subsection, social challenges as an umbrella-term will be discussed, focusing on rural-specific challenges, development and (especially) safety and security as rural social challenges.

In order to present a platform when addressing something as broad and unlimited as “social”, the mixed definition will be accepted conditionally, as defined by Henslin (2003:3). He defines a social problem as “an aspect of society that people are concerned about and would like changed.” Within this definition, the writer comments that a social problem begins with an objective condition. This refers to a social challenge as something (an aspect, happening or circumstance for example) within the community that one can measure or experience. Simultaneous to this, another key element regarding social problems is that of a subjective concern, which refers to a concern that a number of people have regarding the previously-mentioned condition.

In the remainder of this subsection, different concepts or attributes regarding “social” will be identified as well as issues regarding the social aspects that might cause it to be classified as a challenge. These “social challenges” are challenges as experienced and identified by different writers and resources and will be discussed in order to give a more distinct definition of “social challenges”.

“Social” is a component increasingly emphasized especially regarding its contribution to development and development practices. In the ISRDS (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:34), this “social” component has become known as “social capital”. This creates a more vivid and concrete context for the term “social” necessary within this subsection in order to adequately identify and define social challenges as found and specifically experienced within rural communities. “Social capital” thus refers to specific features of social organisations including trust, norms and networks useful in improving the society’s efficiency through the facilitation of co-ordinated actions, making it a productive concept helping to attain goals that might not have been achieved otherwise (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:34).

It is easy for social capital to be considered a challenge, seeing that it serves as “glue” keeping a society together, or alternatively, serving as a “lubricant” used to facilitate or ease social interactions in order for people to work together towards common goals (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:34). It is also necessary to note the importance of “social” when referring to communities (society) as it is the key attribute (“glue”) binding a community or society. This is a challenging purpose to fulfil considering that society changes constantly and therefore social capital and its application can also be prone to alteration. This importance of society and people within “social” is further substantiated by Scoones (2009:9) when specifically addressing the importance of local needs and cultural contexts within social development.

Social capital can onwards be seen as a collective concept consisting of various aspects of “social” (as identified by different resources) that will be identified and discussed in the remainder of this subsection. Specific or possible challenges associated with these aspects will also be addressed.

According to Philips (2010:28) the concept of “social” includes a variety of aspects such as safety, culture, housing, labour and community relations. This composition of “social” seems credulous, but still, according to survey results done by Philips (2010:30), 7% chose labour/social unrest as the most critical pressure (or challenge) on their city within the next 3 to 5 years. An astounding 30% selected crime and safety as the most critical potential pressure and shortage of jobs received 25% of respondents’ votes (both of which are listed within their definition of “social”). Refer to Annexure 1, Chart 1 to see other pressures also listed (most of these pressures also appear in further discussions on social and rural social challenges).

As mentioned in Philips (2010:28), culture is a very common attribute among numerous resources and is even recognized as playing "... an essential role in building and sustaining a diverse urban community that is socially and economically healthy" (Toronto 2008:41) as well as its importance within social development (Scoones, 2009:9). According to the ISRDS (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:19), this creation of social sustainability will not only limit social challenges faced in communities, but is also regarded as an important dimension of a successful strategy.

In Philips (2010:33) another survey asked respondents to what extent they agreed or disagreed with the statement that "...cultural and social attributes of cities are as important to business as good infrastructure". 37% strongly agreed; 48% just agreed; 10% neither agreed nor disagreed; 5% disagreed; none of them (0%) strongly disagreed and less than 1% chose 'don't know'. Therefore 85% agreed and felt that the social aspect of a city (including culture as an attribute) is as important as having good infrastructure within their city (refer to Annexure 2, Chart 2 for clarity on the distribution of responses).

Another reference or inclusion of culture as an important aspect and influence regarding the concept of "social" is supported by Mulalic (2004:11) where it is stated that social indicators (or social capital as referred to by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform(1), 2000:34) are extremely sensitive to cultural differences.

The fact that culture is a very unique and diverse concept contributes to the numerous cultural differences experienced. Because of these unpredictable differences, the inclusion of culture as part of social capital can therefore also be considered as a "social challenge". This classification of culture as a social challenge is supported by Scoones (2009:9) when placing "social and cultural issues...at the core of the development endeavour" as a means of correcting mistakes made by previous development approaches.

Besides the importance of the cultural aspect of social issues, it is especially important to note the importance and influence of political factors. This is substantiated in Mulalic (2004:11) stating that "...social indicators depend on politics" and how changes in politics (especially within this decade) can impact social indicators such as employment, social benefits, mortality (such as drowning because of the lack of governmental provision of security and safety services and education regarding swimming and water safety – which will be discussed in detail as a rural social challenge in subsection 2.1.2.3), etc.

Another important aspect of "social" includes basic social services like food and water, shelter, energy, health and education, and transport and communications services (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform(1), 2000:6) as well as functions like sanitation, community centres and day care

centres (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform(1), 2000:58). For any community, the adequate provision of these services is challenging and costly and hence the creation of “social clusters” is identified as solution to these social challenges by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1) (2000:36).

Overall, anything people-oriented or contributing to human experience (positively or negatively) can be included as part of social capital or can be seen as an aspect of “social”. In order to create positive social capital (therefore illuminating any form of social challenge), one should remember that the happiness (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:1) of the people should serve as guidance and be seen as a “highly valued goal in social policy”. This can be done by trying to reduce human suffering and by making life more satisfying for a larger number of people. Veenhoven and Ehrhardt (1995:1) support this statement and refer to happiness as a “current output-indicator regarding the success of policy”.

Furthermore, it is also important to note that even the concept of happiness can be regarded as a challenge. This challenge or relativity of happiness is described by Veenhoven and Ehrhardt (1995:2) in their comparison theory, especially the variant “social-comparison” (comparison with other people suggesting that a person might still be unhappy in good conditions when they compare themselves to others living in better conditions (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:3)). Therefore, as most of the other aspects mentioned, happiness is a relative aspect regarding social, but can still be seen as an attribute that needs to be considered when planning for the social dimension within communities or society.

Bearing in mind the importance of living conditions as an element of creating happiness as stated by Veenhoven and Ehrhardt (1995:3), another social challenge that can be derived is the overall issue regarding quality of life. This challenge contributes to the relativity of happiness as it is also a subjective appreciation of life depending on the objective quality of life. According to the liveability theory, the better the living conditions in a country as well as the equality of life chances (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:7), the ‘happier’ the people will be (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:2) or the more balanced the differences in happiness will be (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:7).

As already mentioned, this is a very relative concept and only a small part in the difficult concept of “social”, which is why it is discussed in this section regarding social challenges. It is seen as relative as different people have different opinions, view and expectations regarding life and the relative quality thereof. In order for quality of life and happiness to be understood as social concepts, it is important to understand their connection to the idea that, within any community, group or society, universal needs do exist (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:2). This supports the previous statement made by Scoones (2009:9) when addressing the importance of local needs in social development. Because of this relevance of society and the major influence of people and especially their needs on social

development, the theory of liveability (with its inclusion of quality of life as a social challenge) can therefore be seen as a “canon” in social policies (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:3) especially since “social” is regarded as a development dimension that needs to be considered when integrated development is concerned (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:5).

This close relationship between “people” and “social” can distinctly be seen within Cilliers *et al.* (2012:13) and their more comprehensible reference to specific spatial dynamics (i.e. social, sustainability and economic issues) as “people, planet, profit,” where ‘profit’ refers to the economic issues, ‘planet’ to sustainability and ‘people’ to social. This, and the inclusion of “liveability” as described by Veenhoven and Ehrhardt (1995:7) are aligned more closely in Cilliers *et al.* (2012:10) when “people” (therefore the social aspect) is identified as one of the core issues or challenges of liveability.

The importance of people and the human aspect of social can indeed be seen as another possibility for the eruption of more social challenges. According to this above-mentioned theory of liveability (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:7), the challenge of social inequality because of differences in dispersion across nations might occur. Thus the social aspect is that of equality (according to Veenhoven and Ehrhardt (1995:20) social equality includes social security, gender equality and income equality), but factors or situations connected therewith (dispersion and social inequality) can be seen and included in the concept of “social challenges”. Gender and age as part of social differences (Scoones, 2009:2) are also important concepts needed in the creation of ‘livelihoods’ that easily falter under the consequence of social inequality. The social challenge regarding gender-inequality is one of the major social challenges facing rural communities and will therefore be discussed in more detail in the next subsection: 2.1.2.2 Rural Social Challenges.

The term “social” is not only relevant in the study or implementation of liveability, but also one of the key attributes or elements regarding place-making alongside three other elements (i.e. Uses & activities; comfort & image; and access & linkages). When referring to figure 2: Place-making elements, as identified and illustrated by the Baltimore City Department of Planning (2010), the concept of “social” also includes intangibles such as diversity, stewardship, cooperativeness, neighbourliness, pride, friendliness etc. with elements like number of women, children and elderly (all of which can be associated with the previous paragraph’s discussion of gender and the challenge of inequality according to Veenhoven and Ehrhardt (1995:7)), social networks, volunteerism, evening use and street life that serve as measurements of sociability of a place.

According to Cilliers *et al.* (2012:16) “social” is not merely an “aspect of society” as referred to by Henslin (2003:3), but rather a key dimension in planning that is focused on the human scale of planning and also planning from the various planning scales (i.e. City-, site- and people-scale (refer to Figure 3: Planning scales in practice)).



Figure 2: Place-making elements

Source: Baltimore City Department of Planning (2010:90)

These planning scales are subsequently used in planning for and creating of spaces and lively places, including visual, sound, environmental, functional and especially social functions (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:22 – also refer to addendum 3) with social containing the most value on the people scale. The concept of social functions within spaces and lively places will be discussed in detail in Chapters 3 (Planning of Public and Lively Places) and 4 (Green Space Planning).

Processes with regards to social (as well as political processes) include exchange, extraction, exploitation and empowerment (Scoones, 2009:18). These social processes can easily degenerate into challenges, especially challenges for future development regarding livelihoods and the analysis of aspects (like networks, linkages, connections, etc.) across scales whilst still remaining rooted in place and context (Scoones, 2009:18). These challenges are also highlighted by Cilliers *et al.* (2012:5) with their effort of community strengthening (an effort liable to the enhancing of social objectives by increasing challenges such as connectedness, active engagement and partnerships between members of the community, community groups and organisations).

To conclude, social includes various aspects and can be interpreted differently through different approaches. In general, most of these aspects or attributes or features refer to a human scale or approach, thus issues regarding human development. “Social challenges” can therefore be collectively summarized as issues or problems that might arise within the process of social development when attempting to address local needs and cultural contexts (Scoones, 2009:9) - therefore the challenges regarding the HUMAN aspects of planning (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:16).

Even though the issue or challenge regarding social-economic-cultural-political systems and the newly extension of resilience concepts within these systems are a ‘work in progress’ (Scoones, 2008:20), this remains a critically sensitive area needing attention and innovative planning, hence the objective of this research to address these challenges.

Conclusively, the following table summarizes the main aspects (as discussed) that are included within the concept of “social”, as well as their corresponding attributes.

Table 3: Aspects included within the concept of “social”

ASPECTS	DESCRIPTION	ATTRIBUTES
Social capital	Collective term for all aspects and its corresponding attributes or elements that “social” consists of.	<i>All attributes listed below</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Society (people) 	Includes all aspects regarding human necessities and social needs any person might experience or seek to regard a community as sociably viable.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Trust • Norms • Social networks and community relations • Happiness • Quality of life • Local needs • Equality • Culture
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Social services 	Services that support or enhance a person’s or community’s capability to interact socially and/or to promote the creation of sociable living environments.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Food - Water - Shelter/ Housing - Energy - Health - Education - Transport and communication services

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Sanitation - Safety and security
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Political factors 	Factors influenced or dependant on the level of political interference and/or provision.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Employment/ Labour ○ Social benefits ○ Mortality

Source: Own creation (2013)

These are all factors that, according to various authors referenced above, contribute and compose the concept of “social”. In the remainder of this chapter and especially in further chapters of this research, aspects and approaches regarding lively place planning and green space planning will be discussed. In the conclusive chapter of this research, detailed theoretical (and practical implementable) attention will be given to which of these social aspects and social challenges (discussed in the following section) can be addressed and improved through lively place planning.

2.1.2.2 Rural social challenges

The elucidation of “social challenges” still remains a broad and not definite definition, but presents enough clearance to further define and specify the meaning and scope of “social challenges”. This section of the thesis concerns rural communities and social challenges experienced within these communities. In order to therefore define “social challenges” to be applicable within the context of this thesis, a number of resources were consulted in order to focus on social challenges found in rural communities.

As mentioned in the introductory paragraphs of this Chapter, Campbell *et al.* (2008:4) and the RDF (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:4) mentioned the challenges regarding rural development within South Africa. May (1998:15) agrees with this immensity of rural development challenges, but also reveals the potential of revitalizing the rural economy in order to help create a better way of life (a social challenge as identified by Veenhoven and Ehrhardt (1995:7) for these rural people. This positive outlook regarding rural social development potential is further substantiated by Gopaul (2006:54) when stating that “...challenges can become new opportunities”. Therefore the challenges specific to rural communities (as will be described in this sub-section) should be seen as potential catalysts for innovative new opportunities and development programmes needed according to Scoones (2009:20).

Even though a number of strategies, policies and other implementation programmes are already in place regarding the effective integration and growth of rural communities, a challenge still lingering remains their need for additional social assistance (Department of Rural Development and Land

Reform(1), 2000:34) as rural communities seem to be neglected, enduring great poverty and deprivation (Gopaul, 2006:1). This refers to certain challenges that need attention regarding benefits for the rural poor, including the proper registration and benefits entitled to orphans; the possibility of schools doing more to contribute to the nutrition of children (possibility of agricultural production programmes at school as a possible solution) (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:34).

The strain of poverty often leads to problems within families (Gopaul, 2006:7) resulting in added problems i.e. social challenges (Gopaul, 2006:74). This social challenge (or vulnerability issues as referred to by Department of Rural Development and Land Reform(1), 2000:34) is the lack of safety-nets in rural areas, particularly focused on women, the youth, disabled people, the elderly, people affected by HIV/AIDS, etc.

When suppressing certain groups (i.e. social groups within communities) it may lead to instances where mechanisms of social exclusion occur within rural development programmes (van der Ploeg *et al.*, 2000:394). A practical example of this reality in rural South Africa is the poor rural community of Umgababa (situated approximately 40 kilometres south of the city of Durban) in KwaZulu-Natal (Gopaul, 2006:69) whose inhabitants display significant instances of low self-esteem and social exclusions, and these social exclusions are referred to as "...a major challenge".

One of the most prominent issues or calibrations found regarding social exclusion within South African rural communities is that of women, where issues such as race, class and gender ensure that these (African) women remain poor and severely excluded (Gopaul, 2006:73). This is supported by Fouracre (2001?:5) stating the subjugation of women to be a common feature of rural societies within the developing world. This ranks women as one of the "...major categories of socially excluded" and places their needs and their social responsibilities (Fouracre, 2001?:5) as top priority in order to gain social victory regarding the breaking down of segregation (Lanham, 2007:37).

Other social challenges (or vulnerability issues as referred to by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:34) include social vulnerability factors such as (Cannon, 2005?:36):

- Level of poverty
- Standard of health
- Level of malnutrition
- Proportion of female-headed households
- Level of illiteracy
- Living conditions

These factors can also be measured in terms of the current living conditions of a threatened group (refer to the previous section on “quality of life” and its contribution to social challenges).

The factors as listed and mentioned according to Cannon (2005?:36) above can serve as a basic commencement for social challenges within rural communities (especially as experienced in South Africa). These specific challenges are addressed and identified numerous in various resources. Challenges including limited access to employment opportunities, education, and health care are supported by Gopaul (2006:20) as well as by Campbell *et al.* (2008:3) when specifically referring to the limited or total lack of access to health and welfare services as experienced by rural people. Regarding vulnerability factors like living conditions and standard of health, van der Ploeg *et al.* (2000:394) includes energy, sanitation, clean water and pollution as serious problems.

Of all these issues identified, the most prominent and representative social challenges have been proven to be poverty and unemployment. Even though these issues have been a major problem in South African rural areas for a long time (Gopaul 2006:6), the relevance of their present existence can still be discussed and substantiated by the numerous references to and focus of rural development strategies (like the RDF, ISRDS and CRDP – to be discussed in detail in subsection 2.2.2 regarding current rural planning legislation and policies) on unemployment and poverty as main challenges or issues and/or as primary objectives.

The RDF (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:16), for example, refers to South African rural communities as facing possibly the highest rate of unemployment in the world with its depth of poverty nearly as severe as in the poorer African countries. This can be supported by the statistics captured in the ISRDS (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:11) of unemployment (an excess of 30%) and under employment (50%) as well as the doctrine that unemployment in these areas is “...high and chronic” (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:14). They also refer to South Africa as a country characterized by high levels of poverty... especially in rural areas (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:6).

It therefore explains the objective of the Comprehensive Rural Development Strategy Framework (Ministry of Rural Development and Land Reform, 2009:7) to halve poverty and unemployment by 2014 as these high social costs of unemployment are regarded as a serious problem (van der Ploeg *et al.*, 2000:394).

Other social challenges that rather include rural people or rural communities as a whole (and not focusing only on specific disadvantaged groups like women or the elderly) that might experience exclusion or disadvantage are that of transport and travel facilities –i.e. “accessibility”.

Fouracre (2001?:5) refers to travel/transport as the means of access to other facilities and services and a means to social bonding and development. This is a challenge as the main factors that characterise a typical rural transport environment are that of "...low population densities, low levels of economic activity (and hence low incomes), low vehicle ownership levels (of any description, including non-motorised vehicles), inferior provision of roads (both quality and quantity), and near absence of regular transport services" (Fouracre, 2001?:4). It thus contributes to the challenge mentioned by Campbell *et al.* (2008:3) regarding the lack (and need) of access to basic health en welfare services.

This above-mentioned challenge does not merely refer to "accessibility" in terms of travel and transport, but also regards social provisions and other potentially hazardous situations such as water safety etc. This, for example, is explained by Sewduth's (2006?:8) omission of inequality regarding provisions and accessibility (as mentioned by Fouracre (2006?:5)) when, for e.g. referring to alarming statistics that highlight imbalances of the unequal systems (carried over from apartheid).

Historically "white schools", for example, emphasized sports and swimming lessons thus white learners either enrolled in schools that had a pool, lived in homes with a pool or resided in communities with access to community pools (Fouracre (2006?:5). Black children, on the other hand, residing in and attending township- and rural schools, experienced the direct opposite in terms of resources and facilities.

This challenge regarding provision of certain services or social infrastructure is further scrutinised and explained by TTRI (2009:65). It classifies these types of "access" or "provisions" as social infrastructure that is necessary as municipal input for township development. These include structures like community halls and recreation facilities.

It may seem like a straightforward challenge easily addressable, but holds numerous challenges for project managers in doing this, including:

- 1) Sourcing municipal budgets needed for infrastructure: project element does not have allocated funds in the overall package of municipal budgets; therefore capital investment needed for social infrastructure can be redirected to another area on political instruction.
- 2) Silo-based standards: Resources are spread and these standardised solutions may impede the achievement of a project objective.
- 3) Synchronising approvals: Projects slowed down due to inordinate delays regarding statutory approvals. (TTRI, 2009:65).

To conclude, the following table summarizes the main, collective or primary rural social challenges as identified and discussed in this section.

Table 4: Summary of rural social challenges

RURAL SOCIAL CHALLENGES	ABILITY TO POTENTIALLY BE IMPROVED THROUGH LIVELY PLACE PLANNING
Rural development	Yes, implementing lively place development approaches
Social assistance	Yes, including people within lively place planning processes contributes to assisting in the local needs.
Poverty	Maybe, the provision of jobs regarding maintaining and managing these spaces may reduce unemployment, indirectly addressing poverty.
Deprivation	Yes, lively place planning regenerates neglected spaces
Energy, sanitation, clean water and pollution	Not directly – lively places with better maintenance and management might lead to the reduction of the presence of these challenges.
Social provisions/ infrastructure	Yes, providing versatile and diverse functions within lively place planning addresses this challenge directly.
Vulnerability	Yes, successful implementation of gender empowerment and child safety planning approaches as well as addressing environmental safety hazards.
Social exclusion	Yes, lively places are spaces aimed at accommodating a diverse mix of people, race, age and gender.
Inequality (race, class, gender)	Yes, refer to above where lively places are planned for accommodating and being freely accessible for all.
Health care	Not directly but provides the possibility for healthier environments with psychological and recreational advantages.
Welfare services	Not directly, but indirectly provides opportunity for better opportunities and accessibility to these services and the potential erection of such services.
Safety and security.	Most definitely, lively places create a sense of 'used space', reducing the potential for unsafe activities.
Malnutrition	Not directly.
Illiteracy (education)	Not directly.
Poor living conditions	Indirectly, a better lively place environment is created with improved accessibility to services, thus enhancing the living conditions.
Employment opportunities	Yes – refer to poverty.

Accessibility	Successful lively place planning enhances tourism potential, therefore indirectly includes governmental provision of better accessibility.
---------------	--

Source: Own creation (2013)

As extracted from Anonymous (2009:67) municipal authority plays a significant role in addressing and implementing township (rural) development projects but national and provincial government command a number of key project inputs which can (if implemented accurately) use specific research and approaches regarding empowerment and involvement in tourism projects as a possible answer to the challenges facing rural communities (Gopaul, 2006:5). This may also include other important public infrastructure such as police stations, health facilities, schools, courts, social welfare services and home affairs facilities (Anonymous (2009:67).

Because the social dynamics of rural areas present challenges to which there are no easy answers, a more transparent and broadly inclusive participatory process should be designed by government with (at least) certain portions of the newly designed or developed benefits to be kept or held for disadvantaged social groups such as women and young people (a social issue already discussed) (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:20).

With the background clarity regarding the concepts of rural, social challenges and rural social challenges, the social challenge of safety and security in rural communities will be discussed as main focus of social challenges (as it is one of the most relevant and appropriate social challenges able to be addressed by means of applicable and effective planning) in order to attempt to relieve a number of other social challenges and shortcomings as already identified and discussed.

2.1.2.3 Safety and security as social challenge in rural areas

As previously mentioned, crime and safety remain critical pressures experienced by inhabitants of cities and/or areas (Refer to annexure 2, Chart 1).

This is specifically the case in rural communities as can be seen in the development frameworks' objectives and statements regarding this issue (frameworks to be discussed critically in section 2.2.2 Current rural planning legislation and policies). Not only will the increase of public safety and security in rural areas lead to lower crime, less uncertainty, increased values of land (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:33) and reduced incidents of crime and corruption (Ministry of Rural Development and Land Reform, 2009:7), but the issue of safety and security is also identified as a "...precondition for social and economic development (Department of Rural Development and Land

Reform(2), 2000:8 and 58). Addressing safety and security in rural areas is of such high importance that the Rural Development Framework has an entire section devoted particularly to this issue (section 5.2 Safety and security in rural areas, Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:58).

Two primary aspects or sections regarding safety and security within rural areas will be focused on, i.e. crime and drowning incidences (water safety) with quick reference and brief discussions on other safety and security aspects also found.

Crime is a well-comprehended concept not needing any introduction. It is something that we live with and hear of regularly. It is also a concept connected with the lack of feeling safe and secure within an area with certain types of social trends and demographic patterns in communities that influence crime and victimization rates continuously (Waller & Weiler, 2003). This can be substantiated by a questionnaire survey executed by Statistics South Africa (Statistics South Africa, 2011:8) regarding people's feelings of safety (or lack thereof) depending on the time of day (refer to Annexure 4, Chart 1 for the exact outcomes). This, for example, illustrates how night-time creates a social trend in which no one walks alone as this time of day is regarded as "unsafe".

According to Statistics South Africa (Statistics South Africa, 2011:2), these feelings or perceptions regarding crime and safety can differ according to several factors found within an environment. They include employment status, population, group and area of residences. Therefore it can be inferred that rural communities may be prone to incidents of crime and safety issues as they typically fall under the category of low employment (unemployment within rural communities in South Africa is regarded as "...high and chronic" (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:14)) and are also situated in areas where access to (or incorporation of) safety and security services are challenging and difficult to reach (refer to Table 4 where social provisions/infrastructure – including security services – are identified as rural social challenges).

This issue regarding the feeling of being unsafe in one's community can lead to numerous social challenges because of the fear of visiting open or social spaces unaccompanied because of a "...fear of crime" (Statistics South Africa, 2011:2). These contribute to extensions of social challenges as these open spaces are social necessities needed for any community to be able to grow and develop sustainably. With a third of households (33,3%) avoiding these spaces, social interaction and growing social cohesion continue to falter (Statistics South Africa, 2011:2).

Visiting open spaces is only one of many daily recreational and commercial activities whose engagement is influenced and prevented as a result of people's fear of crime. The use of public transport, walking to and from work or other amenities and allowing children to play outside (Statistics South Africa, 2011:11) are some of the daily activities restricted due to crime (refer to Annexure 4, Chart 2). Most of these activities require a daily connection with "social". As a result people do not feel safe to engage in social areas or activities which results in a huge challenge regarding rural development.

This might explain the survey results in which two-thirds (66,8%) of households agree that a bigger injection in social and/or economic development would be a more effective way of reducing crime than spending more money on law enforcement or judiciary/courts (Statistics South Africa, 2011:12). This trend continues as is reflected on the comparative charts of 2010 and 2011 regarding where households would rather want government to spend money in an attempt to reduce crime (refer to Annexure 4, Charts 3 and 4).

Even though the challenge regarding social space is the highest critical area, it is also important to note the importance of the need for money spent on more and/or better law enforcement (i.e. security services, as mentioned previously).

"Accessibility" and "social services and/or infrastructure" were identified as key social challenges regarding rural development in the previous sub-section. The combined influence of these two challenges presents severe consequences. One of these consequences, according to the statistics obtained by Statistics South Africa (2011:21), is the growing distance (or time) travelled to get to the nearest police station. The best case scenario is where households travel less than 30 minutes to the nearest police station (using their usual mode of transport). This is the case for most households (66,4%) in urban areas like the Western Cape and Gauteng. In other provinces (Eastern Cape, Free State, Northern Cape and Limpopo), nearly a third of households travel between half an hour to an hour in order to reach the nearest police station (refer to Annexure 4, Chart 5 for exact percentages).

Because of rural communities' challenge regarding travel and transport (as mentioned in the section on "rural social challenges"), the issues regarding safety and security intensify as the provision of, as well as the travelling time to services such as police stations are immensely difficult in rural communities.

Another important aspect regarding safety and security in rural communities is that of water safety and the high number of mortalities related to drowning within rural communities, especially that of children. This challenge is aggravated as provisions for safety and education regarding water safety (DWA and LSA) cater mainly for privileged school children and disadvantages children from rural and

disadvantaged communities where no community pool or pools at the school exist (Sewduth, 2007:5). This supports and contributes to the issues regarding inequality experienced within rural communities.

A contributory and important finding regarding drowning is the increase of drowning as a leading cause of death as the age of children increases between 1 and 10 years of age (refer to Annexure 5, Charts 1 to 4). This is due to the fact that (as stated by Bradshaw *et al.*, 2003:3) external causes of death (like drowning) rise in importance as children get older. This reason can be connected with the above-mentioned verdict that people (starting with young children) in rural communities do not have efficient practices or opportunities intact regarding education and lessons necessary when confronted with water.

As children age, they become more mobile and independent. They go wherever they want, including to areas with rivers, dams, streams, etc. resulting in more deaths due to drowning.

Even though these statistics largely focus on urban areas (marginalising rural areas once again), it is believed, according to Sewduth (2007:2), that incidents of death by drowning are even greater in the inland waterways (dams and rivers) of rural areas. This belief is supported and intensified by the statement made by Sewduth (2006?:4) that South Africa has experienced many incidents of drowning in the inland and rural areas and that drowning is the second highest cause of accidental death among children up to the age of fifteen years (Sewduth, 2006?:1) after road accidents (Sewduth, 2007:3).

According to Table 5 (Causes of drowning in SA), the figure for drowning in pools of water or streams around rural communities is reflected at 3%. This figure is observed by Sewduth (2007:9) to be an increasing trend. More rural communities are established without any recreational facilities for victims (mostly children), leaving them to play in rivers and streams regarded as "...instant death traps", especially during rainy seasons.

Table 5: Causes of drowning in South Africa

SCENE	2001	2002	2003	2004	TOTAL
Private Residence	129	147	131	102	509
Residential inst.	6	15	14	11	46
Bar / Shebeen	0	1	1	0	2
Amuse/ Public Places	13	16	10	14	53

Urban Rd	1	12	4	0	17
Railway	0	5	0	0	5
Retail	0	1	1	0	2
School	10	4	1	3	18
Medical Service	3	4	9	0	16
Industrial	5	4	6	6	21
Farm	6	18	11	8	43
Sea/ River/ Dam	383	324	264	349	1320
Open land	5	11	2	0	18
Countryside	1	8	10	0	19
In Custody	0	1	0	0	1
Informal Settlement	6	8	4	16	34
Unknown	26	27	79	58	230
Other	4	10	12	0	26
TOTAL	598	656	559	567	2380

Source: Adopted from Sewduth (2007:8)

Observing this table it is evident (and the table enhances this in its totality) that an enormous number of people in South Africa die of drowning in rivers or dams. Incidents of death due to drowning are even greater in the waterways (dams and rivers) of rural areas (Sewduth, 2007:2). The table therefore contextualizes the importance of water safety and security, especially in uneducated and uninformed rural communities. This is a very important aspect, increasing the potential hazardousness of unsafe and insecure rural environments, especially (as mentioned by Bradshaw *et al.* (2003:3)) in terms of children who live in these rural communities, that need to be well-educated and trained regarding water safety.

The victims (as recalled by Sewduth (2007:9) – school children - are not only exposed to drowning when engaged in recreational activities, but are also threatened with the possibility of drowning when

having to cross rivers on their way to and from school (Sewduth, 2006?:4) as they have not had the opportunity to engage in programmes to learn how to swim or any other form of access to water safety education (Sewduth, 2006?:5).

In a sense, these two rural social challenges collaborate in that they both contribute to “...inherent challenges facing rural communities” regarding poor or lack of access to socio-economic infrastructure and services (referring to services such as adjacent police stations), public amenities and government services (referring to both education and safety regarding water as well as safety regarding crime prevention services). According to the Training for Township Renewal Initiative (TTRI) (Wolpe, 2008:17) these public infrastructures or amenities should not merely be provided, but also collaborate with the binary nature of the two discussed safety and security challenges by specifically insisting on the SAFETY of these facilities as well.

As inference to the challenges of safety and security regarding water safety, the following facts and/or statistics are given by Sewduth (2007:3) to support and emphasize the importance and trends of this issue within rural communities in South Africa:

- Each year an unacceptable number of people drown. 89% of these drowning victims did not wear personal flotation devices;
- 80% of these drowning victims are male;
- The vast majority of drowning accidents occur in unguarded areas (60-70% of SA’s 3500km coastline is unguarded);
- Many national and provincial parks have unguarded bodies of water and some sites even apply a “No Swimming” or “Swim at your own risk” policy.

These facts given by Sewduth (2007:3) support this research aim and theory that in planning for better and more lively places, these challenges can be addressed and reduced, enhancing the overall safety and therefore quality of life of rural individuals (i.e. planning for guarded waterways and other areas where large volumes of water might be a risk; planning for educational projects teaching and notifying inhabitants of risks; etc.).

The two main aspects of social challenges, namely safety and security (as is applicable and relevant to this research) have now been discussed and clarified in detail. Although other challenges are also important and partially addressed in the remainder of this study, the two aspects of safety and security will be the primary focus thus addressing the social challenges of public spaces within rural areas by means of planning for better safety and security within these areas.

Any public space can be contributory to the insecurity of an area if it becomes a place of relegation, neglect, degradation and/or illegible which allures a range of uncivil acts, delinquency and vulnerability (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:1). Such public spaces should therefore rather be enhanced whereas its urbanity and hospitality will create a certain degree or guarantee of safety (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:1) which minimizes the challenge planners face because of rural people's unwillingness (due to the fear of crime) to visit social places. The failure, therefore, to maintain or implement basic management in rural areas – especially that of safety, policing and public space quality – will largely negate the impact of any potential incentives or capital investment (Wolpe, 2008:33) or contribute to the inherent challenges facing rural communities like the decay of the social fabric (including crime and family disputes – as mentioned and discussed (Gopaul, 2006:7).

2.2 Addressing the social challenges in rural areas of South Africa by means of planning

2.2.1 Understanding “social planning”

The concepts of “social” and “people” are used as parallel concepts as concluded in section 2.1.2.1 on what are “social challenges” (and therefore assumed through the remainder of this research). “Social planning” can be seen as a ‘people-centred’ approach. When cross-referencing section 2.1.2.1 on what “Social challenges” are, social planning can be seen or defined as the planning approaches implemented to improve or reduce social challenges within society. As ‘people’ and ‘social’ are used interchangeably, “social planning” therefore refers to any human aspects of or approaches to planning (as previously referenced by Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:16), such as the process of social development which attempts to address local needs and cultural contexts (i.e. human aspects) as stated by Scoones (2009:9).

Furthermore, Scoones (2009:10) states that this type of human or social approach to planning also includes that policy should be made based on the understanding of the reality of struggles of poor people themselves. This is based on the principle of their participation regarding the determining of priorities for practical interventions as well as on their need to influence institutional structures and processes governing their lives.

Scoones (2009:10) also states that this approach is a holistic one in the sense that it is non-sectoral and recognises multiple influences, actors, strategies and multiple outcomes. It is a dynamic approach understanding change as well as complex cause-and-effect relationships that seeks to build on everyone's inherent potential committed explicitly to dimensions of sustainability (which includes

environmental, economic, institutional and especially social) for people and the use and benefit of future generations (CPRC, 2012:21).

Social planning is thus the planning approach implemented and aimed at improving social development. According to Fouracre (2011:4) the core of such a development approach lies in the understanding of people's behaviour and response to the development challenge, which are not solely determined by economic rationalism but also by society, culture and the historical moment in which he or she lives (therefore feelings and experiences by the people themselves regarding issues or challenges surrounding them).

Overseas Development Administration (ODA Social Development Department, 1993) mentions that through the process of analysing these human aspects of society and culture, we can recognise that these behaviours of individuals are also determined by structures and networks of social relationships and obligation as well as by shared knowledge and values.

In order for this human, people-driven approach of social planning to be applied successfully regarding social development, a process of shared respect between indigenous knowledge and values of the people themselves as well as technical skills applied in policy development and planning programmes should be implemented in order to achieve sustainability (ODA Social Development Department, 1993) for rural communities and their development.

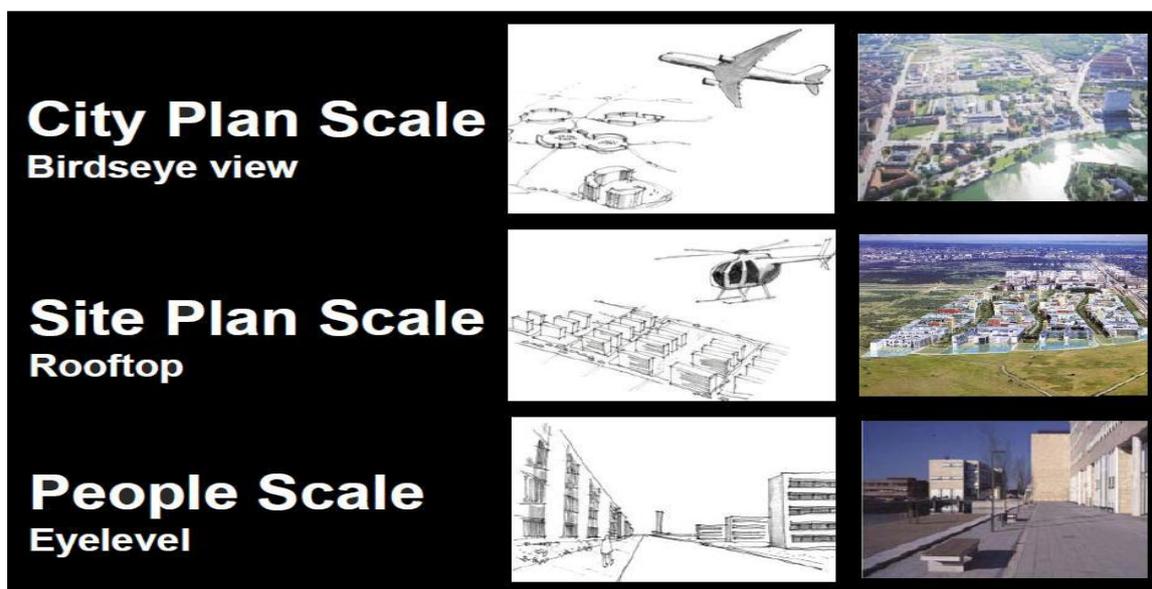


Figure 3: Planning scales in practice

Source: Adopted from Gehl (2004:10)

Figure 3 provides a concise and visual representation of the level at which a people-centred or participative planning approach should be focused. The people-scale (i.e. social planning) aims at planning from the human perspective – i.e. designing, improving and planning the surrounding environment based on what people see. Redesigning the environment primarily aims to increase social improvement – therefore creating a place people want to use and will enjoy (refer to chapter 3 on the planning and creating of these lively places). Figure 3 thus visually enhances the definition and statement deducted from Cilliers *et al.* (2012:16) that social (planning for people) is equal to people – i.e. eyelevel planning.

2.2.2 Current rural planning legislation and policies in SA

As concluded in the previous paragraph, planning policies are necessary in order to obtain sustainability for communities. In this section, three policies and/or programmes regarding the current planning for and development of rural communities (as found in South Africa), will be investigated and concisely summarized, focusing on the references and approaches to address social challenges through planning initiatives in the rural areas of South Africa in order to obtain a clear perspective on the current rural reality and approach to social challenges.

2.2.2.1 RDF (Rural Development Framework, 1997)

The most notable value of this framework was its attempt at giving a profound definition to rural areas (refer to section 2.1.1 Defining 'rural'). Even though this definition was never adopted as the official definition, most government departments currently still use this definition as a working definition (Gwanya, 2010:12).

The primary objective of this Framework is to eradicate poverty (a social challenge as identified in previous sections of this research).

Government aims to contribute to policies (such as GEAR) by means of applying social development in many fields (particularly education and health services) through the provision of access to resources in order to improve household and national productivity (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 1997:5). The RDF also admits the obstacle in applying social development because of factors like the lack of adequate energy resources within rural communities (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 1997:7), issues relating to funding (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 1997:24), and the strain on women and the consequent negative effect on children and their growth (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 1997:62)

(which is a powerful indicator of general social development) (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 1997:74).

Gwanya (2010:11) summarizes the main focus or objectives of the RDF by listing the following issues (amongst others) attempting to be answered by the framework:

- To involve rural people in local government and decisions affecting their lives (therefore the social, human aspect of development);
- To increase employment and economic growth in rural areas (with unemployment as one of the main social challenges within rural communities – refer to Table 4);
- To provide affordable infrastructure and improve services in rural areas (especially that of safety and security services and infrastructure regarding crime and water safety);
- To resolve the problems related to the crowding of people into remote, low-potential areas during the apartheid era;
- How to ensure social sustainability in rural areas (includes aspects like the safety and security of rural areas, legal issues, rights of children living in rural areas, rights of disabled, rural health, capacity building, improving of education, security and welfare, etc) and
- How to increase the rural local government's capacity to plan, assemble and implement essential information for the planning, monitoring and evaluating of the process (as well as the progress) of development, especially that of social development.

Other initiatives also supported by the Framework include:

- Creating diverse job opportunities by developing the local economy: This is addressed by the EMPLOYMENT element of GEAR;
- Reviewing current government expenditure and redistributing it to formerly deprived (rural) areas: This is addressed by the REDISTRIBUTION element of GEAR;
- Addressing service backlogs while delivering cost-effective infrastructure and services;
- Especially (for the aim of this research) the improving of social development (especially education and health)
- Access to resources for better national and household productivity: This is addressed by the GROWTH element of GEAR;
- Integrate marginal rural areas to be included in the national economy (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:7).

These obstacles or issues identified in the Framework correspond directly with the rural social challenges listed in Table 4. These are therefore crucial objectives in the social development of rural communities. If these obstacles are not addressed and overcome, the success of the frameworks objective regarding social development and sustainability will not be accomplished.

2.2.2.2 ISRDS (Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy, 2000)

This integrated strategy (which later evolved into a programme – Gwanya, 2010:13) was developed in reaction to the challenges faced by the rural poor. The South African Government in consultation and partaking with various stakeholders implemented this proposal in order to address and improve opportunities and the overall well-being of the rural poor by 2010.

The vision of the Strategy includes phrases such as “attaining socially cohesive and stable rural communities”; “viable institutions, sustainable economies and universal access to social amenities” and “attracting and retaining skilled and knowledgeable people ... contribute to growth and development”, with an objective of intensifying a sustained attack on poverty and underdevelopment (Gwanya, 2010:13).

Overall, this strategy is directed at determining rural people’s needs and presents them with opportunities to realize their potential in order to contribute more effectively to the future of South Africa (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:5). The strategy equally attempts to further develop existing institutional, planning, management and funding mechanisms to respond to needs and opportunities.

Based on previous fails regarding integrated rural development projects (those implemented in the 1970s - Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:6), the ISRDS includes decentralization and the promotion of local power and autonomy within decision making – therefore the inclusion of participation of local people and building of the local capacity

The ISRDS (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:7) compiled the following strategic pointers aimed at addressing the challenges and social issues (as discussed and named in 2.1.2.2 rural social challenges) unique to rural South Africa:

- the diversity and complexity of rural areas and poverty in South Africa must be accommodated in flexible, responsive strategic planning;
- planning must take into account the nature of urban-rural linkages and aim for comprehensive regional development where urban settlements form an integral part of the strategy (this refers to the social challenge of accessibility);

- the marginalisation of agriculture, particularly in the former homelands, needs to be addressed, with central acknowledgment of the role of women and gender issues (addressing the issue regarding inequality and the challenge women are faced with in rural parts of South Africa – as also mentioned by the RDF(1997:62);
- The impact of HIV/AIDS on highly vulnerable rural households must be incorporated.

The approach of the ISRDS regarding addressing social challenges and the development of the local rural economy is a “...well co-ordinated, bottom-up approach” (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:7) with their vision focusing on specific elements including Rural Development, Sustainability, Integration and a Rural Safety Net (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:7), which corresponds immensely with the social challenge of Gopaul (2006:74) regarding the lack of safety-nets in rural areas (particularly focused on women, the youth, disabled people, the elderly, people affected by HIV/AIDS, etc. – as also included in the strategic pointers to be considered in the ISRDS (2000:7)).

Although the strategy seems ideal in solving rural social challenges, Gwanya (2010:14) identifies key weaknesses within the ISRDS, impeding the successful alleviation of rural social challenges and creating a basis for future planning initiatives regarding the addressing of rural social challenges:

- Intervention was done at District Municipality level which leads to unconscious focus-shifting away from local municipality, wards and/or village needs;
- No enforcement mechanisms for integrated planning and implementation,
- Faced challenges related to misaligned planning cycles between local government and other spheres of government;
- Very low levels of involvement or participation of communities and targeted vulnerability groups at planning stage - considering them as beneficiaries mostly at reporting;

2.2.2.3 CRDP (Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, 2009)

The CRDP (also known as “government’s plan for developing rural areas”) is aimed specifically at curing rural social challenges brought about by the blight of poverty by the means of creating vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities (Gwanya, 2010:18).

The achieving of this vision is made possible by focusing on a number of key issues or aspects that were previously not included or effectively addressed by rural development programmes. This includes maximizing the use (and management) of natural resources in order to address poverty and food insecurity (an aspect of safety and security as social challenge, mentioned in section 2.1.2.3 on safety and security as social challenge in rural areas); rectifying past injustices and improving the standard of

living (or quality of life as previously referred to in this dissertation) through the implementation or execution of rights-based interventions, aimed specifically at addressing the skewed patterns of distribution and ownership of wealth and assets (therefore the social challenge of inequality); and finally the facilitation of integrated development and social cohesion by implementing more participatory approaches that work in partnership with all sectors of society (Gwanya, 2010:18).

These objectives can only be achieved through a three-pronged strategy that includes a co-ordinated and integrated broad-based agrarian transformation; better rural development infrastructure, and an improved land reform programme. This “agrarian transformation” (refer to figure 4: land tenure systems reform) also focuses on (but is not limited to) the empowerment of rural people and communities, especially that of women and youth, as a solution to the gender inequality challenge within rural communities, as also included and identified in the RDF(1997:62).

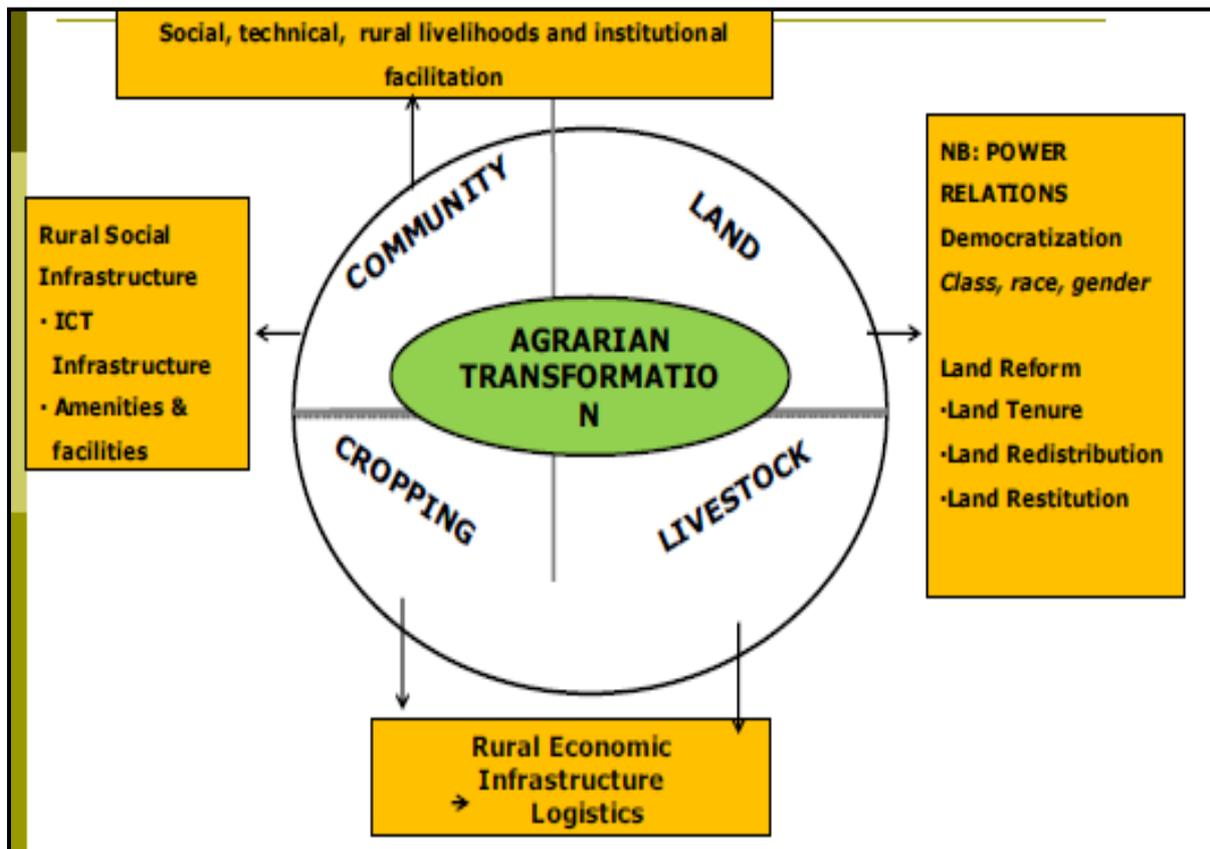


Figure 4: Land tenure systems reform

Source: Adopted from Gwanya (2010:22)

This approach or “transformation” is based on a categorization model informed by land use needs (Gwanya, 2010:21). This model addresses a number of social issues as listed and/or mentioned in section 2.1.2.1 regarding rural social challenges. It includes a section of ‘community’ specifically focusing on the addressing of social issues through social facilitation and the planning of rural

livelihoods. Other challenges also addressed in this figure of transformation are that of inequality (democratization of class, race and gender) as well as the addressing of rural social infrastructure and amenities (which might include the provision or improving of security and safety services).

The concept or idea of this transformation system in addressing rural social challenges seems accurate and useful. For successful implementation, an “implementation model” is compiled and divided into four basic sections i.e. community socio-economic profiling; household profiling; creating an enabling environment of the communities to participate in development; and the social mobilization of rural communities to take initiatives. These sections can be summarized as including the following:

a) Community socio-economic profiling

The sites to be focused on are selected through this socio-economic profiling along with community participation processes and intergovernmental co-operation. This community profile that is created illustrates (amongst others) resource use, livelihood patterns, institutions present in communities, the importance and accessibility of services as well as a historical profile of the community (Gwanya, 2010:23). These profiles aid in the development of a community engagement strategy.

b) Household profiling

This aspect focuses on identifying individual household needs in order to attack poverty at household level. These needs are then compared and matched to those of the community to determine which should be addressed through large community interventions and which should be directed to families or individuals (Gwanya, 2010:24).

c) Creating an enabling environment of the communities to participate in development

This aims to be achieved through the construction and revitalization of old and new infrastructure for socio-economic development (including the revitalisation of small towns to be economic hubs); the development of access to information and communication technology for better access to government information as well as access to public facilities and amenities for better community participation in various activities to strengthen social cohesion and national identity (Gwanya, 2010:25).

d) The social mobilization of rural communities to take initiatives

This comprises of the establishing and/or development of community organizations (such as the participation of NGOs and CBOs), stakeholders and their associated structures in order to develop skills and initiatives based on the identified needs and opportunities of the community. It also includes the empowerment of communities themselves through leadership training and social facilitation in order to become more self-reliant (Gwanya, 2010:26).

Other interventions or approaches in addressing rural social development also include decent employment through inclusive and diversified economic growth (Gwanya, 2010:31) which addresses the primary challenge of unemployment. The improvement of government performance and enforcement mechanisms are also included (Gwanya, 2010:33). This focuses on the problem regarding gaps and uncertainty regarding the roles of different spheres of government as well as the validation of policies regarding the distribution and channelling of resources and funding (Gwanya, 2010:33).

One of these outcomes regarding this intervention is that "...all people in South Africa are and feel safe" which immediately includes addressing a number of social issues for this outcome to become a realisation.

The CRDP is also one of the first rural development programmes and/or frameworks including the planning for or implementing of green development. They are currently in process of developing a Green Paper on rural development, agrarian transformation and land reform (Gwanya, 2010:21) within the CRDP and include the support of creating green industries (Gwanya, 2010:31).

The concept of green space planning and creation of green public spaces will be discussed and defined in detail in Chapter 4 (Green Space Planning), with reference to the planning for and inclusion of this concept in rural development and their policies.

In conclusion to these three strategies aimed at addressing rural development, Gwanya (2010:37) includes a number of aspects or lessons that should be considered in the creation or execution of rural development programmes in order for success to be achieved. These lessons include that:

- The definitions of rural development and transformation should be flexible - rural spaces, their characteristics, needs, required interventions and opportunities are not the same and therefore need detailed needs-analyses for every community in order to address their specific challenges.
- Guiding approaches and principles that can be adapted to suit the local needs and conditions should be considered;
- There's a need to move away from defining rural development as a concept merely dealing with land related challenges, but to rather see land as a catalyst for innovative new opportunities and development potential (as mentioned by Scoones (2009:20) as well).;
- Rural poverty should be attacked both spatially and at household level, not just spatially as the focus on space intends to miss poverty experienced at household level;
- Solutions for rural economic challenges can be found both in the rural space being serviced or developed AND through opportunities and linkages with other spaces in the proximity (including urban spaces);

- Institutions for public participation are not effective in rural areas due to vastness of the areas, as well as distances and the cost of travelling to the central point;
- Calls for village structures to feed into the formal structures should be addressed.
- Site-scale planning, focusing on safety and security

For these lessons to be adequately addressed, Bradshaw *et al.* (2003:3) emphasizes the importance of the reduction of poverty, the meeting of basic needs and the adoption of a comprehensive primary health care approach that should be handled with renewed vigour in the next few years for social challenges to be diminished in rural communities. These aspects as emphasized by Bradshaw *et al.* (2003:3) correspond directly with social challenges as discussed and included in previous sections of this chapter (i.e. Section 2.1.2.2 regarding rural safety challenges). Challenges corresponding and therefore identified as primary national challenges to be addressed through lively place planning (as is the objective of this research) include safety and security, the meeting of basic needs, poor living conditions, social provisions and other issues related thereto.

2.2.3 Frameworks guiding social dimension planning in South Africa

This section briefly looks at three legislative frameworks addressing or directing social planning in South Africa. The aim of this section is to identify what current approaches are implemented to address challenges and especially social challenges found within South Africa and, more specifically, the rural areas in this country. These are legislations that are of the highest value in South Africa (i.e. the Constitution of South Africa and the NSDP compiled and implemented by the Presidency of South Africa) and also legislations guiding planning and social planning internationally (Agenda 21).

In understanding and summarizing the objectives of each of the legislative policies, a greater conception of how challenges are aimed to be addressed will be obtained. It will contribute to further chapters of this dissertation by elevating the importance of including lively place and green space planning in addressing rural social issues – as is the aim of this dissertation.

2.2.3.1 United Nations (UN): Agenda 21

Within Agenda 21 (compiled and implemented by the United Nations), the first section is devoted to describing and addressing the social and economic dimensions regarding the environment and development (Section I: Social and economic dimensions). This section includes or addresses social challenges by focusing on certain strategies as solutions (Agenda 21, 1992:1), as summarized in the following table:

Table 6: Agenda 21 - Approaches to social dimension planning

SOCIAL CHALLENGE	STRATEGY/SOLUTION	DESCRIPTION
<p>i) International inequality (especially that of developing countries and rural communities)</p>	<p>International co-operation through the establishment of a new global partnership.</p>	<p>This refers to the establishment of a new global partnership in terms of trade i.e. a dynamic and supportive international economic environment and determined policies at national level (Agenda 21, 1992:4) aimed at providing (and accelerating) a supportive international climate for achieving sustainable and sound environment and development goals (Agenda 21, 1992:8) especially in developing countries, through the efficient planning and utilization of resources (Agenda 21, 1992:11).</p>
<p>ii) Poverty</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provision of an integrated factor enabling the poor to achieve sustainable livelihoods. • Changing consumption patterns and developing national policies and strategies currently aggravating poverty and imbalances. 	<p>This allows policies to simultaneously address issues of development, sustainable resource management as well as the eradication of poverty (Agenda 21, 1992:14). Includes programmes or areas on current unsustainable patterns of production and consumption (particularly in industrialized countries) in order to change them to rather emphasize the optimization of resource usage and minimization of waste (Agenda 21, 1992:20).</p>
<p>iii) Demographic dynamics and sustainability</p>	<p>Formulation of integrated national policies and programmes for environment and development with implementation at local level (taking into account the demographic trends and factors)</p>	<p>Strategy focuses on the development and dissemination of knowledge regarding the links between demographic trends and factors, and sustainable development and combining them in local level planning and implementation (Agenda 21, 1992:23).</p>
<p>iv) Health conditions including</p>	<p>Protecting and promoting human health conditions (especially in rural areas)</p>	

<p>1. Health care needs</p> <p>2. Diseases</p> <p>3. Vulnerability groups</p> <p>4. Urban health challenges</p> <p>5. Natural health hazards</p>	<p>focusing on:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Strengthening of rural health sector programme by building basic health infrastructures, monitoring and planning systems as well as supporting research and methodology development; 2. Each National Government to develop a national health action plan. 3. Initiating or enhancing of programmes addressing each of these groups' individual needs. 4. Developing and implementing municipal and local health plans. 5. Including nationally determined action programmes. 	<p>This will be done by national governments, local authorities, relevant non-governmental organizations and international organizations in the light of specific needs and conditions of a country.</p> <p>Includes appropriate international assistance and support in order to control communicable diseases (Agenda 21, 1992:35).</p> <p>Focuses on the protection and education of infants, youth, women, indigenous people, very poor and the health needs of the elderly and disabled through financing and cost evaluation, scientific and technological means, human resource development and capacity-building. (Agenda 21, 1992:36-39).</p> <p>Meeting urban health challenges by improving the health and well-being of all urban dwellers through included surveying and documenting of existing health, social and environmental conditions in cites and strengthening environmental health services</p> <p>Programmes include international assistance, support and coordination where necessary in order to reduce health risks from environmental pollution and hazards (Agenda 21, 1992:42).</p>
<p>6. Human settlements</p>	<p>Integrated inclusion and implementation of programmes like provision of adequate shelter for all, improving human settlement management, promoting sustainable land use planning and management, promoting the integrated provision of environmental infrastructure</p>	<p>Promoting of sustainable human settlement development including water, sanitation, drainage and solid-waste management, sustainable energy and transport systems, planning and management of disaster-prone areas, sustainable construction industry activities and the promotion of human resource development and capacity-</p>

		building for human settlement development (Agenda 21, 1992:45)
7. Integration	Integration at policy, planning and management levels with effective legal and regulatory frameworks, as well as systems for integrated environmental and economic accounting.	Creates an integrating environment and development in decision-making. Includes making effective use of government incentives and instruments and taking into account particular circumstances (i.e. developing countries and countries with transitional economies (Agenda 21, 1992:71).

Source: Own creation based on Agenda 21 (1992).

As can be deduced from the division of this section, the focus is on several corresponding social challenges as identified and summarized in Table 4 including poverty, health conditions, demographic and social issues (equality), etc. It also addresses the importance of including people (especially rural people) to participate in processes and decision-making regarding the development and modification of their land (Agenda 21, 1992:101)

Overall, this programme or integrated approach to the planning and management of land resources (as adapted in Agenda 21, (1992:86)) aims at (as broad objective) and focuses on the addressing of social challenges by including the development and/or modification of programmes aimed at allocating land in such a manner that the uses will provide the greatest sustainable benefits possible by also transitioning policies and programmes to a more sustainable and integrated means of land resource management. According to Agenda 21, this profound approach will simultaneously consider and address environmental, social and economic issues including the rights of indigenous people and their communities, the economic role of women in agriculture and rural development, private property rights, etc. (Agenda 21, 1992:86).

2.2.3.2 The Constitution (No. 108 of 1996)

The constitution (in summary), aims to heal the divisions of the past and focuses on establishing a society that is based on democratic values, social justices and fundamental human rights and to, therefore, improve the quality of life of all citizens by also freeing the potential of each of these individuals in the country (Constitution, 1996:1243). As can be derived from the above-mentioned aim, a number of aspects address social challenges as previously identified and discussed (directly or

indirectly). This section therefore aims to determine the Constitution's approach and proposals guiding social dimension planning by specifically addressing previously mentioned social challenges.

Chapter 2 of the Constitution is the Bill of Rights. This Chapter is the leading legislative body protecting the rights of the *people* in this country i.e. (as concluded in section 2.1.2.1) *social* planning. Therefore the Bill of Rights (as adopted in the Constitution) which focuses on the rights of *people*, is a legislative policy aimed at addressing *social* aspects and challenges, thus a framework guiding the planning and development of the social dimension in South Africa.

According to a conclusive remark of Gwanya (2010:7), the Constitution provides for a common South African citizenship wherein all citizens have equal access to rights, privileges and benefits. It is aimed at entrenching democracy, eliminating all forms of discrimination and it strives to attain socio-economic rights for all – including that of rural people. It therefore addresses or provides for social challenges like inequality, social exclusion, social development, poverty, rural development, etc.

The Rural Development Framework (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:30) specifically includes and refers to section 24 of the Constitution (which falls within the Bill of Rights) as a key area addressing the socio-economic concern for the environmental sustainability of rural development in South Africa. This inclusion of environmental sustainability does not merely focus on conservation and maintenance of natural resources, ecosystems and biological diversity (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:29) (aspects also addressed and tabled as key issues of social challenges), but also includes "...measures to help the poor to use and manage the environment sustainably; the management of the human living environment; and the understanding of the cultural, social and economic forces that define our relationship to the environment" (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:29). These environmental concerns include specific relations and contributions to the people, i.e. the human rights and concerns of rural people and are encapsulated under the environmental rights of the Constitution (Section 24) which states that everyone has the right to environments promoting their health and well-being of present and future generations (i.e. sustainable environment health) (refer to chapters 3 and 4 regarding lively place and green space planning aimed at enhancing well-being).

Another important social issue addressed in the Constitution is that of equality - captured in Section 9, (Constitution, 1996:1247).

According to this section of the Constitution, everyone is equal before the law and has the right to equal protection and benefit of the law regardless of race, gender, sex, ethnic or social origin, age, disability, religion, culture etc. (Constitution, 1996:1247).

It therefore directly addresses and prohibits any form of inequality, with equality even tabled as a NON-DEROGABLE RIGHT (Constitution, 1996:1265) – ‘derogate’ referring to making something seem less important (LDCE, 2003:495). As a human (i.e. social) right, it is of the utmost importance that any policy or programme regarding social planning and development should include a direct approach or inclusion of addressing unequal operations.

Other social challenges also addressed and included as a human right in the Constitution are captured in Section 27 (Constitution (1996:1255) and also part of Chapter 2: The Bill of Rights in the Constitution) with everyone having the right of and access to health care, food, water and social security (including social assistance – tabled as a social challenge in Table 4). Broadly speaking, this encapsulates (in most instances) all of the social challenges identified and tabled in Table 4 in Section 2.1.2.1 of this dissertation.

The implementation and execution of the Constitution and its corresponding human rights and laws addressing social challenges fall within the jurisdiction of the municipalities’ development duty and should be applied with the goal of promoting the social and economic development of every community (Constitution, 1996:1331) in order to promote socially viable communities.

2.2.3.3 NSDP (National Spatial Development Perspective, 2006)

The NSDP is South Africa’s attempt to construct a national spatial-development perspective with a three-fold purpose in mind. These purposes also form the three sections the NSDP is divided into and of which the first section especially contributes to the addressing of or adhering to social challenges and social planning principles.

As captured in the first part of the perspective, the NSDP identifies a number of key goals and objectives regarding the developmental state (NSDP, 2006:4). It is remarkable how these goals and objectives are specifically directed at addressing the social challenges (especially those experienced by the rural people) of the country as identified in section 2.1.2 Primary (social) rural challenges.

This is substantiated by the NSDP’s reference to persisting poverty and unemployment as the foremost challenges the country faces (NSDP, 2006:4). In addressing this particular social challenge, the government included the increase of economic growth and the promotion of social inclusion (another tabled rural social challenge) as core priorities in the Second Decade of Freedom (NSDP, 2006:4) as social dimension planning principles.

These two aspects are also described as “twin outcomes” and in order for them to be realized, a greater developmental role of the State is required in guiding and directing the needed social and economic

development in addressing social challenges. This includes decisive action to be taken for the country to experience faster and more efficient economic growth, job-creation, provision of (quality) services, increased social cohesion as well as the reduction of the current exclusion paradigm that currently prevails among certain sections of the society (NSDP, 2006:4) and enhancing the current situation of social challenges.

The problem of policy design in analysing and addressing challenges like social exclusion, poverty and inequality is that most policy analysts often focus on individuals and social groups but neglect spatial dimensions and manifestations (NSDP, 2006:4). The NSDP consequently compiled a set of five normative principles in order to address challenges. The principles and their approach to social planning and/or contribution to social challenges are tabled below:

Table 7: NSDP social planning principles

	DESCRIPTION	CONTRIBUTION TO SOCIAL CHALLENGES
Principle 1	Sustained and inclusive rapid economic growth.	Achievement of poverty alleviation as key policy objective.
Principle 2	Government's constitutional obligation to provide basic services to all citizens.	Provision of necessities like water, energy, health and education facilities lacking in rural communities.
Principle 3	Government spending on fixed investment to be focused on localities of economic growth and/or economic potential.	If focused on rural localities, contributions executed include investments, stimulation of sustainable economic activities and long-term employment opportunities (NSDP, 2006:5).
Principle 4 – especially focused on social challenges	Addressing inequalities focusing on people rather than places. In high poverty localities with economic potential much like that of the townships of Vaalharts (to be discussed in detail in Chapter 7: Case Studies)), fixed capital investments to exploit potential to be included; where this is not the case (i.e. low economic potential and poverty - like the rural township of Umgababa in KZN (Gopaul, 2006:69)), the focus to be on human capital development – i.e. education, training, social welfare, sound rural development planning,	Cilliers <i>et al</i> (2012:16): Their references include human scale of planning (i.e. social dimension of planning and development); alleviation of poverty through investment or human capital development by providing education and training, social transfers such as grants and poverty-relief programmes (NSDP, 2006:6).

	aggressive land and agrarian reform and the expansion of agricultural extension services, etc. (NSDP, 2006:5).	
Principle 5	Future settlement and economic development opportunities channelled into activity corridors and nodes adjacent or linking to main growth centres, supported by infrastructure investment in creating regional gateways to global economy (NSDP, 2006:5).	Addresses challenges regarding infrastructure, accessibility and travel and transport within rural communities.
Other planning principles/ focus areas – NSDP Part 2: Describing and making sense of the national space economy	Focused on the discussing and inclusion of people and the space they inhabit through discussing and including in-depth analysis and accounting of locality, growth, movement, and other social profiles of the population within future planning policies and development frameworks (NSDP, 2006:18).	Human or social aspect of planning as basis for understanding local needs including equally addressing and discussing challenges like growth, age and gender distribution, employment, poverty and education of the population.

Source: Own creation based in NSDP (2006).

In conclusion, the NSDP regards and focuses on poverty, unemployment and inequality (with all their corresponding and inclusive challenges discussed) as the foremost social challenges facing the country (NSDP, 2006:4). A failure to understand these challenges in terms of spatial development leads to analytical and empirical policy discussions which consequently lead to, for example, poverty indicators not enabling the spatially disaggregated and comparative analysis (NSDP, 2006:33) that is needed for sustainable and participatory social challenge enhancement. Therefore the NSDP uses the MLL (Minimum Living Level – which translates into a much higher ‘poverty line’) measure which allows for spatial representation and interpretation (NSDP, 2006:33) that contributes to the successful addressing and solving of (especially) rural social challenges.

When reflecting over this subsection, one should note that these policies and legislative measures are primarily conducted and implemented on national level – hence policies and legislation not directly including or focusing on the addressing of social challenges as policies are rather conducted on city or site plan scale, not on people or eyelevel scale (refer to Figure 3: Planning scales in practice).

In short, the legislative bodies or policies discussed in this section and their primary social focus can be summarized in the table below:

Table 8: Summary of frameworks

FRAMEWORK AND/OR PLANNING POLICY	PRIMARY SOCIAL FOCUS
RDF	Eradicating poverty.
ISRDS	Address and improve opportunities and overall well-being of the rural poor.
CRDP	Agrarian transformation (including social challenges like reducing poverty, meeting basic needs and adopting a comprehensive health care approach).
Agenda 21	Poverty, health, demographics and inequality.
The Constitution	Equality and access (or right) to basic services.
NSDP	Poverty, economic growth (i.e. unemployment) and social inclusion.

Source: Own creation (2013).

2.2.4 South African framework and legislation approach to social issues: safety and security

With specific reference to the above discussed legislations, the approaches of the NSDP, the Constitution of South Africa and Agenda 21 to the addressing of social and security as social issues will now shortly be identified.

According to the NSDP (2006:17), tourism (as a category of economic potential) can, amongst other issues, address safety challenges since safety measures regarding tourism should be further developed and improved as this is a product or experience tourists want.

The Constitution has an entire section (Chapter 11) devoted to that of security services; section 27 (in Bill of rights, 1996:1255) also states a person's right to social security. The Constitution also advises an annual revision of social security approaches to ensure that social security provides relevant measures. In order to do this, the South African Human Rights Commission must annually require relevant organs of state to provide the Commission with information on the measures that they have taken towards the realisation of the rights in the Bill of Rights concerning housing, health care, food, water, education, the environment and especially social security (Constitution, 1996:1331).

Agenda 21 addresses safety and security issues by ensuring that environment-related regulations or standards, including those related to health and safety standards, do not constitute a means of arbitrary or unjustifiable discrimination or a disguised restriction on trade (Agenda 21, 1992:8) as an aspect in making trade and environment mutually supportive.

Agenda 21 is also aimed at minimizing hazards and maintaining the environment to such a degree that human health and safety are not impaired or endangered, but that it can still encourage development to continue (1992:41) through the promotion of a “culture of safety” (1992:57).

As a means to address security and safety of vulnerable groups, the establishment of safety nets for the most vulnerable households is proposed by Agenda 21 (1992:115).

In order for this to be successful, governments (at the appropriate level), with the support of relevant international and regional organizations, the private sector, non-governmental organizations and academic and scientific institutions, should make the existing safety procedures widely known and available by collecting the existing information and adapting it to the specific needs of different countries and regions (1992:63). They also include the increasing of central government’s expenditure amount going to (amongst others) social security (Agenda 21, 1992:45).

Another approach to the addressing of safety and security challenges by Agenda 21 (1992:51) is to establish appropriate forms of land tenure that provide security of tenure for all land users, especially indigenous people, women, local communities, the low-income urban dwellers and the rural poor.

Gwanya (2010:15) includes sector-specific strategies regarding aspects such as rural sanitation, rural transport, rural housing, rural safety, rural education strategies etc. to address and answer issues of safety and security within rural communities.

The addressing of specifically water safety was adopted through Lifesaving South Africa’s (LSA) deliverance of water safety programmes in rural areas while Swimming South Africa (SSA) has concluded a partnership agreement to run the Rural Splash “learn to swim” programme for the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF) (Sewduth, 2006?:4).

However while these interventions are laudable, they may represent mere pockets of excellence. The solution lies in more sustainable programmes to meet the nation’s needs to become safe (in terms of water, social security, food security, etc). The biggest criticism is that a range of organisations (like LSA, SSA, etc), are all merely “doing their own thing” without co-ordination and joint ventures. There has to be value of joint initiatives, pooling of resources and especially working collaboratively rather than in competition and at cross purposes in order for safety and security to be addressed appropriately and sustainably (Sewduth, 2007:11).

Chapter 3: Planning of public and lively places

3.1 Introduction

As mentioned in Chapter 1, the main problem and therefore focus of this research is the rising social challenges in rural communities – especially that of safety and security - and the lack of efficient lively places and green spaces addressing or limiting these issues.

This lack of lively place planning and the provision of efficient public places contribute to policymakers' challenge of balancing a city (or community's) desirability and affordability (Philips, 2010:7). Worpole and Knox (2007:1) enhance the importance of public space within successful regeneration policies in order to plan for, or create, public spaces that will support sustainable communities. It is important that these policies should guide lively place planning by being inclusive of a variety of contributions and opinions in order to be applicable for any place in any community based on their needs and not merely try to 'solve' the antisocial problems found in communities by displacing them to other areas, as this may (in the long term) do more harm than good (Worpole & Knox, 2007:12). Policies or approaches to planning of lively places and public spaces should focus on the concept of localization (of culture, economy, decision making with localizing referring to the process of keeping everything local and from the community themselves (Cowan *et al.*, 2006?:11)) within their regeneration in order to contribute to creating a commencement or solid foundation for a more community-oriented and ecologically sustainable society (Cowan *et al.*, 2006?:9).

The regeneration of policies are not only important in balancing desirability and affordability, but promotes the planning for and creating of lively places, which is seen as a necessity in any community and, according to Worpole and Knox (2007:1), it also plays a vital role in the social and economic life of communities. The creation of these new kinds of public spaces and meeting places and their approaches (as will be discussed in this chapter) can be seen as important social resources in different cities, towns and especially in rural communities (Worpole & Knox, 2007:1) and might even be used to enlighten certain social challenges.

It is important to note that town planning and policy regeneration alone are not able to resolve all insecurity problems (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:30). The influence of intelligent planning, investment and innovative government also remains an important aspect in addressing the quality which draws people to places – its liveability (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:6).

In this section, the planning of a lively place will be discussed by first addressing and defining the two aspects (public spaces and lively places) separately and then discussing the entirety of the concept with specific reference to South African and international concepts of and approaches to planning lively communities to identify whether or not the planning of such places in rural communities can address social issues and contribute to the strengthening of sustainable communities. A section regarding place-making will also be included and discussed in order to understand the background theory.

3.2 Defining public and lively places

In order to plan for or apply lively public place planning, the concepts of 'public place' and 'lively place' will first be defined and discussed after which certain concepts or factors regarding these places will be named (locally and internationally) as approaches that include the entire, integrated planning of successful lively public spaces.

3.2.1 Creating a public place

When planning for a 'public place', the concepts should first be defined and distinguished separately and the important difference between a mere 'space' and a 'place' within lively place planning and place-making should be noted.

Harrison & Dourish, (1996:67) gives a clear and distinct difference between space and place when they refer to 'space' as the structural, geometrical qualities of a physical environment, whereas place refers to a concept that (other than a mere structural and geometrical space), includes the dimension of lived experience, interaction and use of a space by its inhabitants.

The definition of 'public' is very broad and inclusive, but for the sake of understanding this concept and for future reference within the dissertation, the meaning will be clarified.

As mentioned above, a 'place' is a space including dimensions of lived experience, interaction and use by inhabitants. These inhabitants can be defined or referred to as the "public", placing the focus and departure of lively places on public grounds; being inclusive for all and open to a wide range of user groups (Hobart City Council, 2011:1)

According to the Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English (LDCE, 2003:1543), the term "public" includes a wide range of user groups and contributes by referring to public as basically any human reference such as 'ordinary people', 'for anyone' and 'place with a lot of people'.

Based on the acknowledgements made by Loudier and Dubois (2001:1), a public space can therefore be seen or act as a meeting space, space for debate, controversy, discussion - in short: where democracy takes place, contributing to the necessary social cohesion and the forging of social and

political bonds. This definition is further substantiated by PPS (2011:2) referring to a public space as a secure and distinctive space which functions for the people who use them.

It is also a space that is accessible to all and that everyone is able to use. As mentioned in the previous definition of “public”, a public space should therefore belong to the public and includes all spaces to which the public has access (i.e. collective spaces such as spaces between buildings, shopping centers, stations, etc.) (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:2).

The clarity on “public” and the difference between “space” and “place” therefore lead us to the defining or adoption of the term “public place” as a space that is transformed into a place where all people can successfully work, play and socialize within a secure and distinctive environment (Philips, 2010:8).

Based on the definition and description of the term ‘public place’, it is important to note the following figure (Figure 5: Factors of successful public places) displaying important factors regarding and needed in the creation of public places:

Table 9: Factors of successful public places

FACTOR	DESCRIPTION OF SUCCESSFUL PUBLIC SPACE
Identity	Historically, public spaces were the centres of communities; traditionally they helped shape the identity of entire cities with their image.
Attractions	Great public spaces have a variety of smaller “places” within them that appeal to various people. Functions create attractions.
Amenities	A public space should feature amenities that make it comfortable for people to use. A good amenity will help establish social interaction.
Flexibility	The use of a public space naturally changes during the day, week, and year and should respond to natural fluctuations. Flexibility needs to be built in at the outset.
Seasonal	Successful public spaces need more than one design which can change with the seasons. Adaptive usage.
Access	A civic destination needs to be easily accessible, including crosswalks, lights timed for pedestrians, slow moving traffic and proper signage.
Visibility	The elements within space should be visible from a distance, and ground floor activity of buildings surrounding it should entice pedestrians to move.

Source: Adopted from Baltimore City Department of Planning (2010:170)

By including these factors in space planning, people-driven aspects and factors of lived experience become included and incorporated, thus the planning and creating of public places. Worpole and Knox (2007:9) support the concept of specific elements needed in the planning of public places and

correspond with Baltimore City Department of Planning's (2012:170) elements with the inclusion of features such as access and availability (including good physical and welcoming spaces as well as extended opening hours); having features that attract visitors to the site (i.e. attractions and amenities as identified by Baltimore City Department of Planning's (2012:170)); and avoiding over-regulation of design and space, as security and well-being are likely to rather grow out of active and flexible uses (refer to the element of flexibility as listed in Figure 5) (Worpole & Knox, 2007:9).

Other main features also included in or identified by Worpole and Knox's (2007:9) definition of successful social and/or public places include

- invitations by peers and others – embedded in social networks to encourage use, also supported by Hobart City Council (2011:1) mentioning the importance of creating invitations for a wider range of user groups;
- an exchange-based relationship in which the use of the space moves beyond traditional consumerism usage but rather move to participation regarding the exchange of goods and services;
- choreography of spaces by discreet and good management whilst still leaving room for self-organisation by the community and the people; and
- The concept of moving beyond the presence of, or focus on mono-cultures and rather encouraging diverse groups and various activities to be shared within these common public spaces.

Loudier and Dubois (2001:6) further support and strengthen the importance of certain elements by also including the following "town planning principles" contributing to lively and successful public places. These substantiate the above-mentioned authors' elements and features identified, by similarly including the following 'basic rules':

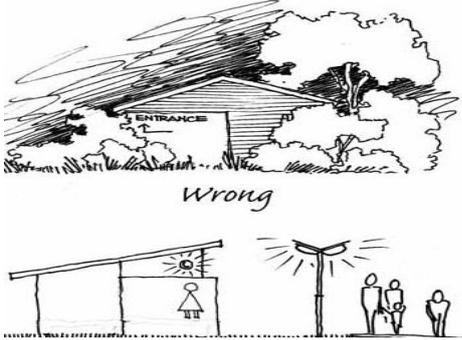
- 1) Visibility
- 2) Legibility
- 3) Reinforcement of territoriality
- 4) Natural surveillance
- 5) Socialising, activities
- 6) Presence of site managers
- 7) Natural access control
- 8) Contribution of landscaping

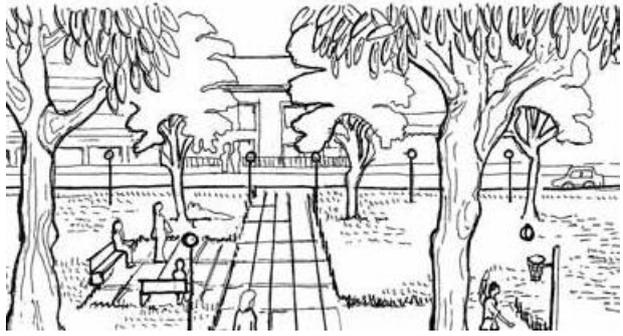
These principles strongly correspond (and therefore their applicability and relevance are substantiated) with basic principles as mentioned in Redbook (CSIR, 2000:248) including surveillance and visibility;

territoriality and defensible space; access and escape routes; image and aesthetics; and target hardening. As stated regarding the elements identified by Baltimore City Department of Planning's (2012:170), the above-mentioned features need to be incorporated in the development and planning of spaces in order to create a successful public place for all.

The following serve as visual representations and examples of the practical implementation of these planning principles:

Table 10: Visual examples of planning principles

	
<p>Visibility – entrances and buildings to be clearly visible (CSIR, 2000:252).</p>	<p>Legibility – clear and definite marking of private, semi-public and public spaces through planting and pavement (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:29).</p>
	
<p>Reinforcement of territoriality – barriers identifying different functions and use (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:13).</p>	<p>Natural surveillance – balconies overlooking the picnic area provide a natural surveillance (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:28).</p>
	
<p>Socialising, activities (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:20).</p>	<p>Presence of site managers (CSIR, 2000:249).</p>

	
<p>Natural access control – creating of thresholds or building entrances facing the street (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:19).</p>	<p>Contribution of landscaping – not too many trees, shrubs and other landscaping features, but selective and maintained features to ensure visibility (CSIR, 2000:249).</p>

Source: Own creation based on Loudier & Dubois (2001) and CSIR (2000).

As an overall inclusion and summary of these attributes and features regarding public place planning, Figure 2 (place-making elements) should be consulted. In order for these creations of ‘public places’ to be diverted into and referred to as great public places, these places should simultaneously include the above-mentioned elements and features of successful public places and they should be characterized by the four key attributes including access and linkages, comfort and image, uses and activities, as well as sociability (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:18).

Not only will spaces including these factors and elements be regarded as successful public places, but these inclusions will offer better interest and stimulation as well as a degree of comfort (Holland *et al.*, 2007:6) and a high degree of attractiveness (Soholt, 2004:28). It is still important to note that even beautifully designed public spaces (or contributory landscaping as identified by Loudier and Dubois (2001:6)) can be placed in the wrong location with poor connections to retailing, transport and public amenities where it will remain unused and empty (Worpole & Knox, 2007:11), therefore a mere space with no public realm in order to contribute to public place-making. In order to create truly successful public places, it is therefore not merely the aesthetic beauty of the space, but the integration and appropriateness of the functions and accesses that are important.

It is therefore important to include local communities and residents when planning for and creating successful public places, in order to create a sense of place and connectedness within a given space (Cowan *et al.*, 2006?:24).

3.2.2 Planning for lively places

The concept of lively places is best summarized and described in the following quote of Sohlt (2004:8):

“To create a lively place we need to focus on people. What planners and architects ought to do is to turn the conventional way of planning up-side down and introduce a more controversial planning process with the people and the life of the cities and public spaces in focus. Instead of starting with the buildings, we need to envision the future life of an area first. This way we can form nice spaces that are inviting for people and take in consideration people’s needs and behavioural patterns, and when the spaces are formed we can develop guidelines for planning of buildings.”

According to the above-mentioned statement, it is evident that the planning of lively places is a people or human driven process with their inputs and needs as drivers. Hobart City Council (2011:1) substantiates and supports the focus on the public realm by being more inclusive for all. These lively places, according to Cilliers *et al.* (2012:9), imply spaces with versatile, diverse and integrative functions, spaces which attract people and activities in order to create lived experiences (Harrison & Dourish, 1996:67).

Any space or public space can be regarded as a (successful or popular) lively place if and when different functions of community life take place and the people feel a sense of ownership and connectedness to the space (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:9). Where people are given good conditions – by including these aspects and initiatives such as attracting more educational institutions in the city centre as well as providing facilities and open spaces that make city living more attractive (Hobart City Council, 2011:1) within planning approaches, lively places will be created.

Considering this introduction to creating lively places based on the transformation of spaces into public places (as described in the previous section), the approaches of South Africa in creating these lively places as well as international approaches and initiatives to lively place planning will now be discussed.

3.2.2.1 International projects and approaches to lively place planning

On the international front, numerous lively and public place planning initiatives have been implemented. Some of the theory regarding the approach of these planning initiatives will be identified and discussed in this section, whereas Chapters 5 (International lively place and green space planning approaches) and 6 (Local lively place and green space planning approaches) will indicate how these theories and examples are implemented in practice and whether or not they are successful in terms of key theoretical measures – refer to Chapter 5, Tables 24 and 26 for the empirical evaluation of these approaches. Chapters 5 and 6 will also compare these different theories and practical implementations in order to identify the best practices regarding the planning of lively places and green spaces. In

Chapters 7 to 9, the application of these best practices as a means of addressing social challenges (especially safety and security) in rural communities will be determined (based on the case studies to be discussed in Chapter 7).

These international approaches (as well as the local approaches to be discussed in following sections of this chapter) are the approaches that will be used throughout this research in terms of lively place planning and place-making – in this chapter their background and overall challenges and approaches are discussed, whereas in the following chapters these approaches will be implemented as pilot tests aimed to empirically determine each of their successes in terms of practically implementing the theory to create successful lively and public places (as most of them aim to do). These specific approaches were selected as prospective pilot tests because of their versatile and diverse opinions, views and methods. They are also widely spread internationally and most of them are in successfully developed cities with good public and social planning legislation and principles present. They are therefore most relevant, especially in terms of determining their success based on the application of theory and to (prospectively) identify best practices all around the world, especially applicable to rural communities and that of the Vaalharts case study (Chapter 7).

In this section, some of the lively place planning approaches as found abroad will be discussed as separate ‘themes’, whereas, in the following section, the focus will be shifted to lively place planning in South Africa, and specifically South African rural communities, in terms of social (safety and security) approaches regarding lively place planning.

Some of these themes include policies or legislations aimed at creating lively places, others are examples of presence of lively places and some are frameworks with successfully created lively places.

(a) Toronto’s Creative City Planning Framework

The first international approach of lively place planning that was researched, is Toronto’s Creative City Planning Framework, a framework aimed at creating lively places but also with practical implementations of strategies and programmes in order to achieve lively places. These practical strategies include programmes such as the Toronto Culture Plan (a broad 10-year action plan guiding cultural development) adopted in 2003 and Imagine Toronto: Strategies for a Creative City (a multi-year project setting out plans to strengthen and enhance economy through creative assets and social opportunity) (Toronto, 2008:4). Toronto experienced numerous successes regarding the practical implementation of these approaches and plans (i.e. the establishment of major new and expanded facilities – ROM, AGO, Royal Conservatory of Music, National Ballet School, Gardiner Museum, Ontario

College of Art and Design – designed by world renowned architects; also the extraordinary success of Luminato – a major new festival created through private sector vision and leadership; the implementation of the Toronto International Film Festival – the largest and (many argue) most influential festival in the world; The Young Centre, the new home of Soulpepper Theatre Company and a visionary new theatre school, a partnership with George Brown College District and many more) (Toronto, 2008:2).

Regardless of these successful lively places or planning initiatives built over the past several years, it is important to note that the strategy's success didn't come easily. It was a result of strong plans and policies, as well as will and determination (Toronto, 2008:4) with prosperity, liveability and opportunity for all as the three underlying principles (Toronto, 2008:8).

(b) Project for Public Spaces

The Project for Public Spaces (New York) can also be included as a lively place planning framework or policy aimed at creating lively places (as the above-mentioned Creative City Planning Framework of Toronto), but with no specifically mentioned successes and lively places created. The frameworks, however, focus on the power of informal developments such as local markets to transform an area and create a vibrant and lively place that attracts both residents and visitors (Philips, 2010:23) as well as the Transition Towns of Ireland, unified (also) by the prominence of the communities themselves in the process (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:23).

(c) City Repair Project

The next international lively place planning approach to be discussed is that of the City Repair Project – a means or project initiative implemented in order to create lively places, not based on a framework or legislation as is the case with the previous two themes. This project consists of a non-profit organization based in Portland, Oregon, that was initiated because of a small initiative to legally (according to City Ordinance #175937, September 19, 2001) convert a street intersection into a neighbourhood public square (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:9).

This initial project or approach transforms a functionless open space into a lively place through participatory means. They leave the development and lively place planning in the hands of the community where the residents are allowed to paint and construct in the right of way on the street. According to the Ordinance, they must provide a written description of the proposed changes, including drawings depicting how the intersection will look when completed (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:13).

Based on this initiative, the Share-it Square began "... as a series of colorful painted concentric circles graphically connecting the four corners of the intersection". This also included permanent structures on each corner representing the kinds of functions that are found in public squares (i.e. a bulletin board, information kiosk, a 24-hour tea-serving station (known as the community "watering hole"), and a playhouse (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:18).

The reference to this initiative as being entirely community-based is substantiated by the involvement of hundreds of volunteers and activists as well as the fact that the financing of this square is done by people of the neighbourhood (backyards, garages); local business donations and neighbourhood groups (writing of grants, fundraisers, seeking of partnerships, etc.) (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:14) i.e. focusing on the theory of participation as mentioned in section 3.3.2 (Theories regarding place making).

Other lively place planning initiatives executed in Portland include:

- The Portland Public Place Master Plan (2000). This is a five year plan helping the 96 neighbourhoods of Portland to each create at least one public square (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:11).
- Community Visioning (2001 to present): It provides workshops that assist residents, businesses and visitors (in this case an inner-city commercial street (SE Division), a neighbourhood (Sunnyside), and a coastal Oregon town (Bay City)) to envision sustainable place-making opportunities (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:11).
- Village Building Convergence (2002 to present) – This initiative focuses on the synchronization of multiple projects (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:20). It is an annual ten-day event that reclaims urban spaces and transforms them into community places. Daytime hands-on workshops and evening events teach, inspire, and bring together thousands of people in local communities.

According to Cowan *et al.* (2006:21), the efficiency of this participation model and lively place planning approach is based on consciously negotiating between the community vision and each person's or group's interest in order to include the community and inspire places created by the community themselves.

(d) Regeneration

Another international lively place planning approach or project (thus not a framework but initiative as mentioned above) is the concept of 'regeneration' (as implemented in Paris, France within the Verger district). This district is situated to the North of the RER track, comprising of 850 housing units with very complex property division (e.g. the Chemin de la Surprise is a public pedestrian path running across

different private housing estates situated at the length of the district). The only public spaces are the school and a section of the track (E.P.A – Public Utilities Company). Strategies or approaches in the regeneration approach include the ‘redelineating’ of private and public space (refer to table 10 for visual examples of planning approaches also aimed at clearly marking and dividing change in use – private, semi-public and public); the closure of the above-mentioned Chemin de la Surprise and its replacement by a large tree-lined avenue the length of the RER and the restoring of the district to a grid layout (in order to incorporate it into its environment) (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:17).

This regeneration planning approach was also implemented in the town of Aulnay-sous-Bois (15km north-east of Paris), where the regeneration of public space as well as the re-composition of outdoor collective space occurred. This also includes the redevelopment of the highway, creation of a new grid, the improved differentiation of public and private space and the increase of ‘residentialisation’ of housing estates and management review (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:13).

This strategy or concept of ‘residentialisation’ is a relative new term and was coined to express the clarification of estates and the functions of each outside space, as well as the creating of residential spaces at the foot of buildings in the form of small yards featuring clear division of roles between local authorities and the lesser in terms of space management and maintenance (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:13).

Also in the north-east parts of Paris, a public space (the Parc de La Villette) also implemented significant lively place planning initiatives regarding feelings of insecurity by people within this space. According to Loudier and Dubois (2001:20) characteristics of the space like its attractiveness, openness, diverse range of visitors and activities might have led to this feeling of insecurity. Planning initiatives in order to create and plan for a more secure and lively place included a similar approach to that mentioned in the previous section focused on the redesigning of certain factors and layouts within the environment (CPTED – refer to following section).

The layout of this public space was redesigned in order to foster site security by planning wider, more open spaces with very little concealed space, ensuring the maximum visibility and deterrence of petty delinquency and crime. Useful implementation strategies include the maximization of social control with efficient surveillance systems and security agents (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:20).

Except for redesigning the layout, other key approaches or theories also aimed at improving security and planning of lively places include aspects as summarized in table 11 below:

Table 11: Regeneration approaches to lively place planning

LIVELY PLACE PLANNING APPROACH	DESCRIPTION
Guaranteeing effective location	The success key lies in quality running and management of the approach – i.e. improving of maintenance, repair and security provided in real and effective time.
Prevention of conflicts and misuse through usage management	Principle of non-appropriation and sanctuarisation refusal – prefers private users where the space belongs to no one in particular, but to everyone. Includes a negotiated arrangement between users and managers – certain types of usage at specific times (coincides with successful places factors in Table 9 i.e. seasonality and flexibility – a successful space being able to adapt according to time of day or week).
Responsive maintenance ensuring a quality welcome for visitors	Effective and on time management and maintenance by performing a daily damage inventory and rapid call-outs.
Association with neighbouring districts as a means of prevention	Promotion and development of interfaces between young people and the park's establishments through activities orientated towards access to employment, training, culture and events involving all neighbouring districts or communities in order to defuse tension and promote social peace and effective relationships.
Strong human presence and mediation principle to ensure area control	Constantly present security agents working in conjunction with police to prevent crime, to promote a welcoming image of the site and to identify damages for maintenance purposes.
Improvement of access	Combining access to these spaces with entrances to other amenities such as shops, stations, surrounding districts etc.

Source: Own creation based on Loudier and Dubois (2001).

These Greater Paris planning approaches correspond and support Toronto's idea of strong policies and plans when stating that any project or approach would be more effective if part of an overall strategy based on town planning principles were to be adopted and applied by all players involved in the design, operation and management of public spaces (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:6-7).

- (e) Upgrading of transport systems

Other significant lively place planning initiatives proposed and done in various international cities and/or communities focus on the promoting of cleaner and more efficient transport systems to be used as a catalyst for economic and social developments in cities (substantiated by the above-mentioned regeneration approach aimed at (amongst others) redeveloping the highway and street facades). This

is also rather an idea or project than a framework or policy and is supported or addressed through various initiatives such as the creation of a ‘cycling culture’ in Portland aimed at transforming the city (Philips, 2010:12) – therefore also the participative prominence of the community (Project for Lively Places).

The safety and restrictive issues regarding bicycles (as mentioned by Roelof Wittink, director of I-CE, or Interface for Cycling Expertise) can be overcome by initiatives like the London Cycle Hire Scheme or the banning of bicycles from all the main roads but including schemes making bicycles freely available to residents in the large residential district of Minhang, Shanghai.

Another approach to transport issues within lively place planning is that of Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) as initially implemented in Bogotá, Columbia. The high-capacity, centrally-controlled buses have a dedicated road segregated from the rest of the traffic which no other vehicle may use. The system consists of different stations where passengers pay before boarding, increasing throughput with bus stops looking a lot like subway stations (Philips, 2010:13).

Table 12: International lively place planning approaches

INTERNATIONAL LIVELY PLACE PLANNING THEMES	LIVELY PLACE PLANNING ELEMENTS ADDRESSED THROUGH PLANNING
(a) Toronto’s Creative City Planning Framework	Cultural development and economic enhancement through social opportunity and creative assets.
(b) Project for Public Spaces	Informal development through community presence and participation as means to create vibrant and lively places.
(c) City Repair Project	Participation as key in creating lively places.
(d) Regeneration	Legibility, design and development of environment addressing crime and creating lively places.
(e) Upgrading of transport systems	Cleaner and more efficient transport systems and surrounding environment.

Source: Own creation (2013)

3.2.2.2 South African approaches to lively place planning (focussing on safety and security challenges)

As mentioned in Chapter 2, about half of the country’s population resides in rural communities (Campbell *et al.*, 2008:4) and three quarters of the people also live below the MLL (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:4). Because of this enormous composition of the South African population and therefore, the high level of relevancy of this population-group, lively places (in terms of this dissertation) will focus on the approaches to addressing lively place issues or public places within these rural frameworks, especially those addressing the social challenge of community

space regarding safety and security. This is significantly explained by the Department of Community Safety and Liaison, (2010:2) when stating that the process of developing rural areas should especially consider safety as critical since ‘...very little development can occur in conditions of insecurity and violence’.

This rural development forms an integral part of lively place planning in South Africa, especially considering current safety and security statistics and issues (refer to previous chapter) in this country. With current safety and security statistics and challenges continuing, development within South Africa (especially in rural communities) would be impossible. Therefore one of the primary (and most relevant) approaches to lively place planning in South Africa is creating safe and secure community spaces to ensure people’s feelings of safety and therefore willingness to move about freely about and enjoy spaces provided for them.

This correlation between safety and rural development can be seen as a two-way relationship, as described by the Department of Community Safety and Liaison, (2010:7). On the one hand, where insecurity and crime prevail, development is obstructed and on the other, where there is a lack of development, insecurity and crime set in. This supports the idea that lively place planning is needed, with a simultaneous approach aimed at dually addressing and enlightening these issues by promoting development initiatives in order to prevent or reduce the presence of crime and other safety issues in order. It is therefore a necessity of the South African lively place planning approach to provide strategies aimed at safeguarding the environment and neighbourhoods for people to feel free to move around, to live, work and play (Philips, 2010:8) calmly within a quality life in terms of their surrounding safety.

For lively place planning instruments to be successful in creating safe environments, it is important for entire communities to participate when drawing up crime prevention strategies for rural areas or any other lively place planning initiative, and that a number of actions regarding crime prevention and strategy compilation should “...be completed by the people who live there” (Cowan *et al.*, 2006?:24).

Innovations or approaches in this regard (which need to be expanded, according to Department of Community Safety and Liaison, (2010:7)) include approaches to gender inequality, unsafe environments (including schools) and child protection (refer to Department of Community Safety and Liaison (2010:6, 25) for further discussions and details).

Even though these are primarily initiatives or approaches to be implemented by government, civil society (as mentioned above) should simultaneously take these steps to ensure that they (rural

dwellers) are able to live fulfilled and productive lives as well as be able to access the fruits of democracy (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:7). When successfully implemented, and the 'fruits of democracy' are accessed within lively place planning approaches, lively public places will be created (refer to Loudier and Dubois' (2001:1) short defining of a public place as a space where democracy takes place).

In the remainder of this section, these approaches or strategies aimed at lively place planning for South African communities will be discussed as themes, as well as other approaches or methods also implemented.

(a) Integrated planning

Another initiative launched by South African institutions and/or Government is that of the *Integrated Rural Development Strategy* (detailed discussion in Chapter 2, Section 2.2.2.2). This approach overall co-ordinates the efforts of various departments in improving rural areas with a rural development as priority. The lively place planning approaches include agrarian reform, food security and targeted renewal of rural towns as initiatives through grants such as the recently announced *Neighbourhood Development Grant programme* (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:8) and can therefore also serve as basis and introduction to other themes to follow. These initiatives fall under the umbrella approach of lively safety and security planning. This rural safety strategy (to be implemented over the period of 2011-2014) aims to enhance accessibility to policing, improve service delivery to the rural community and create a safe and secure rural environment. This newly designed and adapted strategy will be implemented focusing on an integrated and multidisciplinary approach (SAPS, 2011:4).

The *Integrated and Sustainable Rural Development Strategy (ISRDS)* also represented a new stage of concerted effort to improve opportunities and well-being for the rural poor (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:12) i.e. Schooling trends in rural areas.

A strategy regarding the discussion of these rural approaches to planning more lively places and communities is that of the Rural Safety Summit. Primarily the summit aimed at achieving consensus regarding a future process to deal with the issue of attacks against farmers and smallholdings, but also regarding more general rural insecurity issues. This summit (held on 10 October 1998) resulted in the adoption of 10 resolutions and led ultimately to the development and implementation of the Rural Protection Plan (RPP). The objective of this plan was to encourage all role-players involved in rural safety to work together in a co-ordinated manner by engaging in joint planning, action and monitoring in order to combat crime in the country's rural areas (Department of Community Safety and

Liaison, 2010:33). A similar project was also launched in the area of the Ekurhuleni Metropolitan, i.e. the Rural Safety Project focused on creating and enhancing awareness and assisting with the development of crime prevention activities suitable to the rural areas within the urban metropolitan regions (Dhlamini & Dissel, 2005:2). It also aims to explore inequality by focusing on resource allocation (particularly along gender lines) and by exploring traditional mechanisms for dealing with crime and violence in the rural areas (Dhlamini & Dissel, 2005:2).

In 1999 research mandated by the Rural Safety Summit was undertaken in order to evaluate the effectiveness of the implemented RPP and to develop a better understanding of the nature of crime, based thereon. According to the National Rural Safety Conference Report, the following was found:

- The effectiveness of the rural protection plan varied from area to area;
- In rural areas situated far from police stations and army bases, success depends on strong civilian participation;
- In rural areas, police do not have a rapid response capability and the community themselves should take greater responsibility for their safety and security needs;
- Main police contributions lie in detective and intelligence functions (i.e. investigative), yielding arrests and convictions. However, a weakness of this rural protection plan is that it is difficult for the police to gather intelligence in rural informal settlements and squatter camps (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:23).

The summit recognised that a mere secondary approach alone will not solve the problem of crime in rural areas in the longer term, but that existing strategies should also be strengthened and further action plans should be developed. Research into the probable causes and motives of rural crime and attacks therefore needs to be conducted in order to develop proper and effective preventative strategies.

Some of the key resolutions and strategies proposed or implemented by the Summit as means of lively rural planning include:

- All initiatives should ensure greater safety and security, in particular the Rural Protection Plan, and should simultaneously be more inclusive;
- The Rural Protection Plan to be utilized as the operational strategy to combat and prevent violent crimes.
- Recognition of the importance of requiring a sustainable focus in order to ensure long term safety in rural and farming communities (the Summit also committing itself as role player in the development of long-term policy framework for rural safety and security).

- Continued improvement of safety of rural areas (and therefore lively place planning) by government and the Criminal Justice System to ensure an effective system of deterrence (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:24).

Apart from regular crime awareness campaigns in rural areas, the DCSL has also targeted specific programmes which helps prioritise rural areas for implementation of lively place planning approaches and strategies. These are listed and shortly described and/or summarized in Table 13:

Table 13: Rural planning programmes by the DCSL

PROGRAMMES	SUMMARIZED DESCRIPTION
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Special Support Programmes for victims 	<p>The Department of Community Safety and Liaison has designed and implemented a Women’s Safety Audit Project (gather information from women about safety threats they experience), the first of its kind in South Africa. Led to development of a Women’s Safety Audit Toolkit (resource with which women can assess their safety in a particular community (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:26).</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Raising awareness of protective rights amongst vulnerable groups 	<p>Rights education and awareness-raising programmes targeting women, children, older persons and more recently, men. A comic book entitled <i>Kuyoze Kubenini?</i> (Meaning ‘Until When?’) has been developed which deals with violence against women and children. This has now been produced in DVD format for wider roll-out (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:26).</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Promotion of a Victim Support Network 	<p>Improving the Province’s Victim Friendly Facilities (VFFs) and has an ongoing programme to assess and upgrade facilities run by the SAPS and NGOs. An updated resource book with contact details of Victim Friendly Facilities, information on Domestic Violence as well as the Victims’ Charter is in production (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:27).</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Social Crime Prevention Programme 	<p>Youth Crime Prevention training programmes and Traditional Leadership (Amakhosi) training in crime prevention (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:27).</p>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Police Monitoring and the Promotion of improved Community- Police Relations 	<p>Rural Community Police Forums (CPF's) to mobilise local communities in combating crime and improving community police relations. The Department also intervenes to resolve protracted and serious disputes in rural areas through its Communities in Dialogue programme (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:27).</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volunteer Social Crime Prevention Programme 	<p>Overall, this programme aims to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Engage communities in social crime prevention; • Develop local knowledge of crime patterns and trends; • Engage in relationship-building with communities and key stakeholders; • Gain knowledge of localised social crime priorities, • participate in localised action against interpersonal crime; and • Support the work of the SAPS and other agencies (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:27).

Source: Own creation based on the Department of Community Safety and Liaison (2010:27).

Based on these above-mentioned principles or approaches, certain problems/faults within the strategy regarding practical implementation occurred.

These issues were particularly experienced in the towns of Nigel and Zonkizizwe, situated in the Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Area, therefore serving as a pilot study for the purpose of this research (local pilot studies to further be addressed and compared in Chapter 6, Section 6.5). These issues include: members of Community Police Forums not committed to their role and also not representative of all the organisations of the community, as well as not being completely functional; SAPS and EMPD to be understaffed; limited or lack of efficient and participating NGOs in certain areas; lack of policing in certain areas and access due to lack of infrastructure (Dhlamini & Dissel, 2005:17).

In reaction to these above-mentioned shortcomings or loopholes, a new revised rural safety strategy was adapted. This newly modified strategy (for implementation over the 2011-2014 period) aims to enhance accessibility to policing, improve service delivery to rural communities and create a safe and secure rural environment. The newly designed and adapted strategy implementation will focus on an integrated, holistic and multidisciplinary approach (SAPS, 2011:4), based on the principles of Sector Policing by involving all policing Units in an integrated and multi-disciplinary manner to provide for a

rapid response capacity and to ensure that the needs of the entire rural community are addressed (SAPS, 2011:4).

As mentioned, the revised strategy includes the importance of promoting effective and dedicated participation (refer to SAPS' (2011:2) integrated and multidisciplinary approach) and therefore contributes to lively place planning in South Africa through the establishment of partnerships and involvement of Government and external stakeholders in an integrated, joint and coordinated manner (SAPS, 2011:7).

(b) Gender empowerment and child protection

The first to be discussed and identified above as one of the main innovation approaches regarding lively place planning in South Africa, is that of gender empowerment and child protection (all of which are regarded as the social challenge of inequality experienced in rural communities – refer to Chapter 2 Section 2.1.2.2 on Rural Social Challenges). Therefore the approach to address women and children inequality and safety is a priority challenge to be addressed in order to ensure better lively place planning for all. The approach aims at improving basic living conditions and quality of life of women and children in order to improve their safety. This includes the provision of running water in homes to reduce the number of times women and children have to walk to rivers to obtain water, which will prevent and minimize their vulnerability in terms of victimization (i.e. women and young girls being raped) and instances of children drowning (also refer to previous chapter (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:8). This approach also includes projects by the SAPS to improve victim support facilities at Community Service Centres where exceptional high incidence of sensitive crimes (i.e. rape and women and child abuse) occur (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:9).

(c) Community crime prevention

Another approach to lively place planning within South Africa is that of the Community Crime Prevention Initiatives. These initiatives are generally understood to be community orientated activities supported by local police who aim to prevent crime. This includes activities such as patrol groups, street committees, neighbourhood-, street -, block-, farm-, business-, domestic- and flat watches (all activities in which regard the CPF should and can assist) (SAPS, 2011:37).

Another approach linking with previous approaches and principles aimed at lively place planning in South Africa includes an 'environmental design' approach, also aimed at reducing the risk of crime or the presence of unsafe environments. The Crime prevention through Environmental Design (CPTED) aims at changing the design of communities or their environment to curb potential criminal operations

be redesigning or upgrading existing designs to reduce these crime opportunities (SAPS, 2011:39). These upgrades include improved lighting, the cutting down of overgrown vegetation, engaging in clean-up programmes within the areas, identifying dangerous areas prone to make people feel vulnerable and the marking of residences for quicker and more rapid police response, etc. (SAPS, 2011:39). Other guidelines to also be included or considered within the environmental design approach to lively place planning are the freeing of roads/intersections/off ramps/stop streets from obstructions; avoiding bright and/or glaring lights that hinder the view and using closed circuit television (CCTV) cameras where window surveillance is impaired (SAPS, 2011:40).

(d) Rural planning legislation

Other South African policies or legislation guiding rural planning i.e. ISRDS, RDF and CRDP (refer to chapter 2 for in detailed discussions and descriptions) are also approaches implemented in order to develop rural communities and therefore included as possible programmes or approaches indirectly contributing to lively place planning in South Africa. These legislative documents in terms of their contribution or approach to lively place planning in South Africa will now shortly be highlighted (detailed discussions on these policies and legislations discussed in Chapter 2 Section 2.2.2 (with summary of social challenges they focus on listed in Table 8).

i. RDF (Rural Development Framework, 1997)

The RDF, for example, implemented the GEAR (growth, employment and redistribution) approach in order to address social challenges by:

- diversified job creation through local economic development;
- redistributing government expenditure to formerly deprived areas;
- proposing an expansionary infrastructure programme to address service deficiencies and backlogs, while
- delivering cost-effective infrastructure and essential services;
- social development in many fields, particularly education and health services, and through providing access to resources to improve household and national productivity;
- Integrating marginal rural areas where the majority of citizens have been cut off from the national economy (RDF, 1997:5).

The RDF also has a section focusing on the building of local economic development and rural livelihoods (Section 3 in the Rural Development Framework). This section (as mentioned and supported in section 3.3 on place-making approaches) includes lively place planning through "...the promotion of

as wide a range of activities as possible”, which is supported by Cilliers *et al.* (2012:18) referring to a great lively place as one which includes various uses and activities as well as Lanham (2007:3) describing place-making as a process in which the inclusion of different functions is needed and should take place in order to be a lively (and therefore public) place (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:11).

ii. ISRDS (Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy)

The next South African policy implemented to be considered a lively place planning approach is the ISRDS (Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy). According to this strategy, activities such as agriculture and other natural resource based activities provide a basis for many livelihoods (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:6) and therefore the addressing of issues regarding these activities can be identified as an approach to lively place planning.

This includes planning approaches such as the marginalization of agriculture (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:10), consultative processes by which rural people express their goals and priorities in accordance with the information base developed in the Deputy President's office (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:27), and community based income generation projects (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:33).

iii. CRDP (Comprehensive Rural Development Programme)

The last South African policy guiding rural planning, and which can be linked to the lively place planning initiatives and approaches, is the CRDP (Comprehensive Rural Development Programme). This programme focuses on intensifying the land reform programme to ensure that more land is made available to the rural poor, while providing them with technical skills and financial resources to productively use the land to create sustainable livelihoods and decent work in rural areas (Gwanya, 2010:18).

This policy also supports the ISRDS' strategy of marginalising agriculture by including and focusing on a three-pronged strategy with interrelated objectives based on agricultural initiatives in order to promote lively place planning:

- a co-ordinated and integrated broad-based agrarian transformation;
- strategically increasing rural development; and
- An improved land reform programme (Gwanya, 2010:13).

The following table serves as a summary of South African approaches or initiatives regarding lively place planning and development, and how these themes aim at addressing rural challenges – especially that of safety and security.

Table 14: South African lively place planning regarding safety and security

LIVELY PLACE PLANNING APPROACH OR THEME	ADDRESSING SAFETY AND SECURITY CHALLENGES
a. Integrated planning	Enhancing accessibility to policing services, improving service delivery and creating safe and secure rural environments through integrating different social aspects and coordinating role players involved in rural safety.
b. Gender empowerment	Improve basic living conditions, quality of life and employment opportunities in order to improve safety and independence of women and children.
c. Community crime prevention	Community oriented initiatives supported by police (e.g. Patrol groups, block watchers and street committees. Also environmental redesign prohibiting the environment to act as catalyst for crime i.e. dense vegetation, lack of natural surveillance, illegibility, etc (refer to table 9).
d. Rural planning legislation	Agrarian reform, food security and targeted renewal of rural towns – aspects falling under the umbrella approach indirectly contributing to lively safety and security planning by alleviating poverty and creating more vibrant communities.
i. RDF	
ii. ISRDS	
iii. CRDP	

Source: Own creation (2013).

3.2.3 Social benefits of public and lively place planning

Based on the previous discussions regarding public places and lively place planning, it can be derived that public gathering places are essential components for building vibrant neighborhood communities (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:12). The creation of safe and lively places contributes to the social reclaiming of people’s identities as neighbours and returning public squares—the heart of a community—to neighborhoods, one by one (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:12).

By planning these public and lively places by means of regeneration, intersection repair, environmental redesign, and other initiatives, social benefits within these newly designed lively places can be experienced through the hosting of social gatherings; places that encourage conversation in a general way about the neighborhood, and the will to simply spend time in public places (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:12).

Worpole and Knox (2007:1) also enhance the importance of public spaces that “play vital role in the social life of communities”. This social role of public spaces and the simultaneous development of lively places offer many social benefits including the ‘feel-good’ buzz from being part of a busy (yet safe) street scene; the therapeutic benefits of quiet time spent on a clean, maintained park bench (Worpole & Knox, 2007:2). It creates places where people can display, explore and live their culture and identities and learn awareness of diversity and difference. Opportunities for children and young people to meet, play or simply socialize are also contributory social benefits of lively public places (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:12).

These lively places can therefore provide opportunities which are needed by people in terms of social interaction, social mixing and social inclusion, and which can facilitate the development of community ties (Worpole & Knox, 2007:5). These necessities within spaces in order to promote lively places are supported by Loudier and Dubois’ (2001:30) inclusion of convenience, hospitality and user-friendliness as contributory social benefits that improve the community’s ambience by fostering these concepts of socialization in particular.

As has already been mentioned, the social benefit for young people also surpasses any social challenge as these lively places are a particular and distinct resource for young people looking to socialise with others (Worpole & Knox, 2007:2).

Demarcation of public and private space, as initiated by Loudier and Dubois (2001:17) includes the redesigning and paving of avenues to encourage speed reduction and the provision of lighting in the form of street lamps installed on public spaces that do not need to be maintained by the lesser (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:17). Therefore spaces are more approachable during night and day time, benefiting the social public in terms of creating safer public places.

In terms of these, steps in creating more frequented social spaces include having mixed urban functions. This social benefit fosters the frequentation of public spaces throughout the day, and as a result, prolonged usage into night-time as well with better social control (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:5).

Good public spaces also lead to better health and mental health with a sense or feeling of belonging and social capital (as previously mentioned) – i.e. the community feels a sense of responsibility as they use it more and value it more, thus they are more willing to devote time and energy into these spaces to therefore also create and enhance better social cohesion and public participation.

All of these have important benefits and help to create local attachments, which are at the heart of experiencing a sense of community (Worpole & Knox, 2007:2).

3.3 Place-making approaches

The previous sections focused on lively place planning and creating public places. This sections aims at defining the concept of place-making, as place-making is the process of creating lively places and public spaces. This section will thus also identify and discuss relevant theories regarding the process of place-making as well as identifying the possible effect of place-making (and its theories) on rural safety and security.

3.3.1 Elements of place-making

Place-making is as much about psychological ownership and reclamation of relationships as it is about a place. It reminds us that we still share common interests and own the power to manifest these interests (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:13). It is therefore the creation of a place whose structure and use are determined by the people who inhabit that place (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:9) and can be viewed as the process by which people transform the locations they inhabit into the places they live in (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:11).

Place-making starts from the premise that cultural institutions are viable representations of local pride or heritage (Lanham, 2007:3). It therefore supports the abovementioned definition and inclusion of the public and/or people in the place-making process.

The process of place-making should (as a means of positively influencing people's life satisfaction) include transparent governing, satisfaction with public policies, trust (i.e. addressing and improvement of safety and security) and good health conditions (Philips, 2010:25). When increasing transparency within place-making processes, the level of trust and support will increase (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:25). Therefore these elements need to be addressed and/or incorporated when creating a place, if the place aims to create a quality and inviting place to live, work and play.

For the further successful implementation of place-making processes, some of the strongest and most interesting concepts resulted from the process of addressing each person's concerns, opinions, and ideas (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:13) by transparently keeping the people informed on all activities, possibilities and place-making initiatives and including what they want and need within implementation.

The following key perspectives or lessons regarding lively place planning (as discussed in previous sections of this dissertation) by means of including the identified place-making elements (also refer to Figure 2: Place-making elements) can contribute to the clarification of what needs to be included or addressed within place-making processes (Philips, 2010:5):

- Cities or communities to be seen as places to live AND work – equally;

- Traffic and transport as executives' main concern;
- Improving life and facilities for elders;
- Cultural tolerance and good community relations are essential for a city or community to be attractive (work and live);
- Public place attractiveness (beautifying of the public environment) can lower crime rates and reduce traffic speed, contributing to pedestrian safety (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:132);
- Jobs market and cost of living as highly important in the attractiveness of any city and/or community.

Concluding the concept of place-making and its defining elements, place-making can therefore be defined as a socially constructed process (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:6) that shapes spaces by including different functions, aspects and even capital investment, designed to generate economic growth and promote cultural tourism in order to create a place worth living and working in (Lanham, 2007:3). Factors most important in creating these attractive places to live and work in, include public transport and roads, arts and entertainment, sporting events and social life, cultural and social attributes (Philips, 2010:7).

3.3.2 Theories regarding place-making

The place-making-approach starts from the premise that successful public spaces are lively places where the many functions of community life take place, and where people feel ownership and connectedness (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:11) as well as secure and distinctive places that function for the people who use them (PPS, 2011:10).

Many groups start with something small and doable so that the community can accomplish it together and engender a common basis for potential next steps (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:13) – therefore a theory of participation.

“If cities are for everyone, everyone needs to play a role in delivering city liveability” (Philips, 2010:3) and this liveability is to be assessed in terms of citizens' access to their city's services and culture (Philips, 2010:7).

Place-making is (as mentioned) mainly focused on public spaces and in creating places to socialise and interact. Public spaces are an extension of the community (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:11) and when incorporating the views, needs and opinions of the community, it improves neighborhood liveability and engages citizens in participatory democracy (whereas ‘fruits of democracy’ is the outcome of lively place planning (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:7) and a public place is regarded

as a space where democracy takes place (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:1) without having to spend a single dime on tax (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:14).

Therefore any theory regarding place-making requires policymakers to think of new ways to engage with the individuals who participated within the democracy i.e. who actually live and work in the area in order to make communities attractive and charming places to live in (Philips, 2010:3). The factors contributing and most important in creating attractive places to work and live in (according to Philips (2010:7)) include those of public transport and roads; arts and entertainment; sporting events and social life; as well as cultural and social attributes.

Mr. Brugmann (Philips, 2010:8) argues that a further factor in rating cities or other places should be that of availability, as it relates to what he calls “user transaction costs”. Any city or community or even a place might be known for its world-class concert halls, for example, but whether or not everyone has the correct means (i.e. money) or access to it is more important. “Living, working and playing are ideally much closer together than you often find,” he notes. “And where people feel cities are unliveable, it’s because of that loss of proximity.” Paul Bevan (Philips, 2010:8). This corresponds with and therefore sets the theory regarding place-making back on participation – not only what they want, but all which they can enjoy.

Sustainable development schemes represent a new opportunity in terms of planning safe, welcoming public spaces (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:9). Issues regarding place-making include the lack of public services and infrastructure and the doubt whether or not communities can cope with population swelling. The example of Tulou Collective Housing project in China’s Fujian province suggests that it is possible to house rapidly expanding populations without destroying communities (Philips, 2010:4). Therefore an overall theory or approach to create sustainable place-making processes is the inclusion of future planning. Issues to consider include (Philips, 2010:3-4):

- Keeping citizens moving

The most important aspect for people living and working is getting from A to B, i.e. accessibility and sufficient and effective transport systems (refer to international approaches to redevelop and improve transport).

Merely providing transport systems for rural communities is of no use if citizens cannot afford it, or it does not take them where they need to go, therefore, include people directly involved in the place-making process;

- Designs for living: balancing community with growth

Citizens have power if disapproving policy, policymakers must learn from them in order to apply more appropriate development and place-making approaches aimed at addressing specific local needs;

- Return of the city-state?

With cities and rural communities at urban fringe growing, more pressure is placed on municipal governments – still it remains the state that signs decrees and provides money for vital issues (i.e. public transport, health, environment, etc.); but with more than half of the world's population living in growing communities, it makes sense that people have a bigger say in national planning and resource policy and more power to implement their own policies and approaches, especially regarding place-making within their communities – refer to international lively place planning initiatives like Portland's Share-It Square where the neighbourhood inhabitants independently planned and created a neighbourhood lively place.

- A new social contract

As mentioned in the section on lively place planning, the importance of transparency is stressed. Many call for increased transparency in the way their communities are managed (Philips, 2010:14). Citizens who participate in civil society and the planning thereof have a greater degree of life satisfaction and therefore place less pressure on policy makers in order to keep them happy. In the long run, the most important alliance policymakers can have is with their own citizens (Philips, 2010:4).

3.3.3 Impact of place-making theories on rural safety and security

This section focuses on theories and approaches of place-making with specific reference to rural communities and the impact on the safety and security (social) challenge present in rural communities.

The concept regarding 'safety and security' will first be clarified within the rural context.

When referring to safety, it does not merely include the remit of a specialist service but rather refers to the object of a partnership with public safety rather regarded as public order and user-friendliness (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:19). Therefore public safety should be seen as a means or instrument rather than an end in itself. This 'instrument' of public safety should therefore be used and applied in all areas of developmental approaches or projects regarding rural place-making and lively place planning i.e. the functional, commercial, economic, aesthetic, town planning, amenities, architecture and other aspects of the projects (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:19).

In terms of security, the most predominant issue or derivation is that of human insecurity (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:1). This includes vulnerable situations like burglaries, physical attacks, snatches and

grabs, etc. as well as acts of incivility or aggression against public or official institutions (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:2).

The reason for these feelings of insecurity can be rooted in poor planning and vulnerable and unsafe open spaces i.e. the functional approach to space and the planning thereof with a drastic decline in the traditional neighbourhood (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:2); as well as street and public transport as a special source of insecurity (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:3). Other aspects promoting insecurity include environmental design failures or lacks regarding the provision of obvious amenities like lighting; as well as the presence of confined passages; damaged spaces; dirtiness; dead ends creating a mouse trap effect; overly-vast deserted open spaces exposing people to danger where no possible assistance seems to be present; and the creation of a malaise by establishing places with no precise vocation (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:4).

In order to implement successful place-making approaches (based on the theories discussed in the previous section); its mission should therefore be the creative transformation of the places where people live in a 'chaordic' (chaotically ordered) manner, where the prevention of the accumulation of power and resources in any one part of the organization occurs while maintaining a remarkable level of coherence and creativity in order to have a positive development effect and enhance the heart of villages (i.e. public places, plazas, lively streets, friendly exchange between passers-by, shared sense of ownership, food, kids, laughter, music, art, culture, etc) (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:9).

Regeneration strategies (refer to table 11) or policing approaches (as mentioned in the section regarding place-making approaches), intended to 'design out crime' can end up 'designing out' people, creating a negative effect on community development and social cohesion within rural communities. Approaches that strip public spaces of all features that are vulnerable to vandalism or misuse actively discourage local distinctiveness and public amenity (Worpole & Knox, 2007:3) – therefore place-making should be implemented in such a manner that it reduces vulnerability but does not strip a space of its distinctiveness i.e. the positive effect of *creative* place-making processes by means of encouraging local people to play a role in the evolution of activities and to help shape these spaces into the places they want (Worpole & Knox, 2007:8).

Strategies focused and designed to prevent this feeling of insecurity through planning involve several different types of initiatives, in particular the implementation of municipal schemes (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:25). When leveling place-making on municipal grounds, the public and their direct inputs and needs are more easily adhered to with the positive effect of the application of integrated town planning principles designed to foster security (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:25). The positive effect of this theory is

that of Toronto’s municipal urban safety policy, incorporating town planning through the design and/or construction of amenities like a street vendor, news stands with users sitting down on benches (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:25). The effect of this place-making approach can have significant benefits for and positive effects on safety and security, particularly in rural areas by means of constant human presence and therefore unintentional (yet effective) surveillance of the operators of these amenities.

When, for example, implementing a place-making system (like that of Tempe, USA, implementing a safety policy within planning activities based on CPTED, cross reference to SAPS (2011:39)) that is developed to combine a municipal decree and policy directives (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:26), the following attributes and corresponding effects on safety and security can be expected:

Table 15: Place-making effects on safety and security

PLACE-MAKING INITIATIVE	EFFECT ON SAFETY AND SECURITY	CONCURRENCE WITH PREVIOUSLY DISCUSSED APPROACHES AND/OR POLICIES
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lighting 	Enhances sight and decreases vulnerability at night.	Addressing previous issues regarding unsafe environments due to neglected design and maintenance leading to dark and crime-driven environments. South Africa’s community crime prevention approach also decreases vulnerability at night through the means of neighbourhood watches and other on-site patrol groups.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Landscaping (including planting) 	Ensuring neat and trimmed plants prevents the possibility for people to hide there.	Coincides with the regeneration approach in redesigning the environmental layout and managing and maintaining vegetation.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Signage & addressing 	Better signing and marking of addresses and street names ensure faster correspondence by police and other neighbourhood safety units.	Integration of South Africa’s community crime prevention groups and transport system upgrades contributing to faster responses.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Internal areas of buildings 	Creates a place linking all departments or areas of the building in order to reduce the presence of eerie and empty hallways and passages.	Includes aspects of the City Repair Project, regeneration initiatives and therefore integrated planning in order to convert eerie spaces into places (City repair project) by the community (projects for public spaces) and including crime prevention initiatives (community crime prevention and simultaneous police-enhancement).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Access control walls 	Ensures identification and signing	Not directly addressed in above-

and doors	in, facilitating the process of identifying perpetrators.	mentioned approaches, indirectly a means of crime prevention.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site plan for residential complexes featuring more than one structure 	Provides clarity on each person's location within the complex.	Regeneration especially in terms of redelineating private and public space.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Door transparency (glazed internal doors in commercial establishments) 	Improves visibility and possible pre-identification of suspicious actions or persons.	Promotes visibility and natural surveillance without any policy or specific planning approach (refer to Table 10 for a visual representation or example).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Car parks 	Location of planned car parks within the vision of the building (with corresponding door transparency) provides better and more visual clarity on the cars.	Same as mentioned above.

Source: Own creation based on Loudier and Dubois (2001:27).

Even though the planning and simultaneous inclusion of place-making elements on public spaces can play a preventative role and contribute to safety by complementing other safety prevention systems (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:4) and improving spatial ambience (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:5) the reduction of the sense of insecurity alone cannot be effective for all types of delinquency (e.g. Murder and other criminal offences) (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:5).

These require place-making approaches (as included in previous discussions) to promote the creation of strong alliances with other communities and/or adjacent towns or cities. This improves social aspects and potential, especially that of intercommunity safety and security (Philips, 2010:17). This place-making initiative includes positive effects like the sharing of ideas and resources as well as the sharing of experiences of innovation regarding crime and violence prevention (Philips, 2010:18).

Because of the implementation of these broader combat measures (like alliances) crime and related issues such as inequality, marginalization and poverty will be halted. One aspect of these alliances' initiatives includes random activities (like the promotion of sports activities within communities) as a means of preventing urban violence (Philips, 2010:20) - security is only partly achieved by putting more police officers out on the streets, therefore previously stated '*creative*' place-making approaches (as the above-mentioned sporting activity initiative) should be applied.

By means of applying place making processes and/or lessons, small actions could contribute to a huge extent to the addressing of rural safety and security as social challenge. These actions (for example)

also include activities like locating bus stops on a main street near shops and human activity rather than on a deserted road which avoids leaving people vulnerable while they are waiting for public transport. The presence of small businesses and street vendors in neighbourhoods (as mentioned in the example of Toronto's municipal urban safety policy), act as powerful deterrents to crime (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:20).

Improving citizens' visual literacy will make it easier for policymakers to design these spaces. This will then contribute to the architecture, and by improving or addressing architectural techniques or layouts, certain aspects of safety and security can also be improved. This creates the positive effect of "natural surveillance" i.e. creating sight lines down corridors and making sure that the windows of neighbours' homes overlook open areas (Philips, 2010:20). This visible presence on hand contributes and promotes the safety and security of a place (PPS, 2008:30).

In doing so it is also important to note (as mentioned in Chapter 2) that these spaces are planned for people and people have different needs and/or preferences. It is therefore important that these policies regarding lively place planning and place-making of policymakers need to adapt to these individual conditions, with architects and planners developing sets of qualities that shape the direction of designs and that tap into citizens' feelings about the spaces in which they feel most comfortable, otherwise a mere mass production with people feeling the loss of identity (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:21).

Overall reduction of rural poverty and inequality will, as a matter of course, result in a quality of life that will reduce numerous safety challenges which rural dwellers face at the moment. For example, if girls and women in rural areas had running water in their homes, they would not be vulnerable to the victimisation which they experience while travelling to and from rivers and communal water sources (Department of Community Safety and Liaison, 2010:8).

3.4 Planning of lively places to address social challenges

Attention to how planning of lively places are influenced by relations of class, caste, gender, ethnicity, religion and cultural identity (Scoones, 2009:16) is central in the addressing of social challenges, especially those experienced in rural communities. The success of incorporating this idea of creating a lively place into the addressing of social challenges does not solely lie in the hands of architects, urban designers or town planners. As discussed and referred to in Chapter 2, social challenges can be regarded as the challenges regarding the human aspects of planning (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:16) and therefore the success of a particular lively place relies on people adopting, using and managing this space – "people make places, more than places make people" (Worpole & Knox, 2007:2).

The creation of these places based on the place-making and lively place planning theories frequently includes (or aims at including) the public and inhabitants' inputs and creative contributions. This creates (as answer to rural social challenges as listed in Table 4) user-friendly and safe public places for the people (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:1) and a sense of comfort, contributing to the feeling of greater security (Lanham, 2007:19). Based on the relationship between public places and insecurities, the policy debate by the IAURIF started. This debate addressed the concern of a public space's (regardless of how good it is planned) ability to withstand deficient management (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:1) as poor management is a potential factor that fosters acts of delinquency or incivility, leading to a renowned feeling of insecurity (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:3).

Therefore the simultaneous inclusion and presence of on-site managers within the planning and sustaining of lively places is needed for the successful addressing of social challenges.

Even though planning does not directly generate crime, poorly designed town planning schemes can further foster the presence of insecurity among the people (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:4). In order to minimize the conditions that foster crime, effective lively place planning can be implemented as means of addressing this social challenge. By including lively place planning and place-making principles within these types of insecure areas, the environmental context (i.e. the improving of the environmental design and layout) will minimize the conditions that foster crime and contribute to the status, function, usage and management of the area to be more coherent (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:16).

The presence or creation of human activity within public spaces, the strengthening of human control, appropriation and the necessary respect and responsibility for the places (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:5) created by place-making initiatives all contribute to the addressing of social challenges (i.e. social exclusion, safety and security and ownership).

Social challenges can therefore be addressed in various ways in terms of place making. Previously, the role and importance of town planning within the planning of lively places was mentioned as well as the addressing of public safety issues in terms of town planning (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:7).

Selected town planning principles can be expressed in several types of initiatives on a range of levels i.e. planning, policy, regulations or operations (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:8), all of which are lively place planning components necessary for or contributing to addressing social challenges through awareness, participation of all residents and supervision (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:9).

To coax and wrestle the best out of a lively place in a community (i.e. wealth creation, innovation, artistic exuberance and architectural splendour) and contain its worst tendencies (i.e. social challenges including overcrowding, crime-riddled, polluted and unsanitary), policymakers and/or town planners

must themselves possess large measures of creativity and a wide innovative streak (Philips, 2010:6), combined with the creative participation and inputs of the community in order to successfully address social challenges by means of lively place planning. The contribution or effect of policies and town planning principles applied in public places solving social challenges like air quality, pollution, transport, access, etc. is that it simultaneously solves liveability issues (Philips, 2010:12).

The place-making or lively place planning approach regarding the devolution of power to local authority level would not only be beneficial, but will also become a practical necessity (Cowan *et al.*, 2006:26) in addressing social challenges like social assistance, social exclusion, social provision, etc. in places continuing to grow and becoming more complex. These local authorities often find themselves in opposition to national politics as it rather focuses on the public realm of planning and place creating. As places, communities, cities and townships grow, national and state governments will need to recognize the need for local solutions to everything from healthcare and air quality to urban transport, and to allow a greater degree of autonomy at a municipal level (Philips, 2010:17) in order to appropriately address social challenges through lively place planning.

When planning lively places and trying to convince and include citizens in order to play a greater role, policymakers need to learn how to relinquish their own control (Philips, 2010:19). Because crime and other issues of insecurity are also closely related to issues such as inequality, marginalization and poverty, the concept of creating alliances recognizes the importance of implementing far broader measures (Philips, 2010:20). The forming of alliances was previously identified as a place-making element with a positive effect on especially rural safety and security. Within lively place planning, the most important type of alliance policymakers can make in order to implement broader measures to successfully address social challenges, is with their citizens (Philips, 2010:19).

The success of implementing these citizen-centered initiatives (as mentioned with participation as place making element) often comes from the fact that they are driven from the ground up. 'If the people lead, the leaders follow', Fred Kent (founder and president of the Project for Public Spaces). This supports the success of power devolution to local authority and the creation of alliances in order to combat social challenges within lively place planning.

Because safety and security and any other social challenges are only partly achieved by putting more police officers out on the streets (Philips, 2010:20), the implementation or execution of planning frameworks (like that of the Rural Safety Strategy and others) successfully implements lively place planning elements aimed at successfully improving social challenges in rural areas (SAPS, 2011:7-8). These approaches are primarily based on three pillars including:

- 1) Enhanced service delivery (including lively place planning aspects such as access, communication, shared information, integrated resource utilization, safety and security)
- 2) Integrated approach (focuses on the participation and inclusion of all role players and stakeholders)
- 3) Community safety awareness (addressing social issues like the establishment of safety nets, creating awareness in communities and educating communities in terms of safety and security issues).

Types of crime vary according to the public space in which they occur (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:30) therefore when the public space is designed as a lively place with the simultaneous inclusion of lively place planning and public place approaches (as discussed in this chapter), crime (safety and security) within spaces and communities can be reduced and social challenges can be addressed.

Rural Development and its corresponding frameworks and policies (i.e. Guidelines on Rural Safety, Rural Safety Reports, etc) promote crime prevention through environmental design (i.e. designing and developing lively places; as well as implementing the CRDP) and (as discussed in chapter 2 and linked in this chapter), these frameworks sufficiently account for addressing rural social challenges through lively place planning, but the main concern or challenge, is for these frameworks to be practically implemented for any successful addressing of social challenges to become a reality.

Chapter 4: Green space planning

4.1 Introduction

This chapter aims to define and understand the concept and theory regarding green spaces – what they are, what they include and consist of and how they are currently planned for. Approaches internationally, as well as in the South African environment, will be identified and briefly described as case studies. These case studies will be used throughout the remainder of this research and especially in the empirical evaluations in following chapters. Conclusively, the role of green spaces in creating lively places, as well as their contribution to addressing social issues (especially that of safety and security), will be discussed in this Chapter.

4.2 Defining ‘green spaces’

Barbosa *et al.* (2007:188) defines a public green space as every parcel of land classified as a natural surface, judged to be publicly accessible. ‘Natural surface’ means the green space should be predominantly natural (i.e. earth, water and living things) with a sense of quality and the presence of several maintained facilities (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:107), therefore introducing green spaces as the ‘glue’ between buildings (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:121).

These green spaces fulfil a whole range of functions such as health functions, amenity and social functions as well as ecological functions (Lange *et al.*, 2007:245). The execution of these functions lies within the inclusion of certain aspects or areas. According to Barbosa *et al.* (2007:188) green spaces could include municipal parks, public gardens, cemeteries, churchyards, gardens associated with public buildings, and all school playing fields, with (to some extent) private gardens that may provide an alternative to access to public green space (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:193).

Shackleton and Blair (2013:104) coincide with these inclusions when considering urban green spaces to be outdoor places with significant amounts of vegetation, existing as either managed areas or remnants of natural landscapes and vegetation.

In order to understand the definition of green spaces (and be able to implement it in practice), it is necessary to note and emphasize the differences between private and public green space, as they play two very different roles. Public green spaces can provide social benefits by promoting community integration in a way that private gardens cannot, since social interactions in gardens are focused around a private social network (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:193) whereas private green spaces are for the sole enjoyment of the owner. Public green spaces include parks, forests, golf courses, sports fields and

other open nature areas and are seen as the key approach in areas where residential plot sizes are inadequate, or the housing stock is dominated by multi-storey buildings (McConnachie & Shackleton, 2009:244). Beachfronts are not regarded as green spaces as they do not fulfil the definition requirement of being vegetated spaces (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:105) (as previously defined by Shackleton and Blair (2013:106) and Barbosa *et al.* (2007:188)).

Public and private green spaces both play a critical role in supporting biodiversity and providing important ecosystem services in urban and rural areas. They also provide the primary contact with biodiversity and the ‘natural’ environment (refer to previous definition of natural surfaces as defined by Shackleton and Blair (2013:107)) for many people and may therefore influence the physical and mental well-being of those people (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:187) as well as contribute to their overall quality of life (Lange *et al.*, 2007:245).

Furthermore, Young (2010:313) significantly enhances the importance of managing green spaces in order to produce ecosystem services such as enhanced energy and climate management, water quality and habitat, and biodiversity - with ecosystem services regarded as more important than the traditional services associated with green spaces planning (like tree planting and maintenance, social outputs like beautification and the enhancing of public health). Other objectives contributing to healthier environments (and therefore creating more lively communities) are tabled in Table 16 below.

Table 16: Methods to enhance ecosystem services

OBJECTIVE	METHOD
Urban heat island effect	• Planting trees or vegetation to shade impervious surfaces
	• Planting trees or vegetation to shade buildings
	• Planting trees or vegetation to shade water bodies
	• Green roof plantings
Carbon neutralization/sequestration	- Using wood from municipal trees for fuel
	- Using wood from municipal trees for construction
	- Planting fast growing species as a carbon/air pollution sink
	- Planting long-living species as a carbon/air pollution sink
Water quality management	○ Increasing permeable surfaces
	○ Planting vegetated buffer strips
	○ Maintaining wetlands
	○ Increasing canopy cover for rain interception
	○ Engaging in watershed planning

Habitat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Constructing non-vegetative habitat (i.e. rock outcroppings)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Maintaining and expanding wild areas
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enhancing migratory habitat
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Planting species that provide food and/or shelter
Biodiversity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Planting native species
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Minimizing invasive species
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Using integrated pest management

Source: Adopted from Young (2010:318).

Based on the above, Young (2010:315) provides a clear and concise definition, regarding (municipal) green spaces as “...publicly managed natural resource assets in a city or town including street trees, parks, “natural areas”, cemeteries, utility rights-of-way, and the grounds of public buildings”. Young (2010:315) also agrees with Barbosa *et al.* (2007:193) that aspects such as privately held and managed land (including individual residences, private parks, corporate campuses and commercial and industrial areas) should also fall within the general definition of green space.

A further important concept regarding the understanding and conceptualizing of green spaces is their influence on and contribution to shifting the paradigm of spatial segregation of urban landscape functions into complete multifunctional landscapes (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:105) wherein ‘quality’ regarding these spaces are linked to the ‘value’ associated with spaces by recognizing the need of these spaces to reflect the changing social, economic and environmental conditions. This concept of ‘multi-functionality’ is defined by Natural England (2009:70) as “...the ability to provide multiple or ‘cross cutting’ functions, by integrating different activities and land usage, on individual sites and across a whole green infrastructure network”.

These ‘multiple functions’ (as previously mentioned by Natural England (2009:70)) include many (i.e. ‘multi’) ecological, psychological, social, and economic benefits (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:104). Odindi and Mhangara (2012:653) support this multifunctional aspect of green spaces, referring to their significance in economic benefits like the enhancement and provision of economic prosperity that becomes evident when preserving and enhancing natural ecosystems (like these public green spaces). Within the multifunctional concept, public green space (PGS) therefore also has a particular value and role to play in the sustainability and liveability of towns and cities, the provision of which requires appropriate planning approaches, implementation strategies and financial resources (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:105).

These public green spaces further address and therefore contribute (in many ways) to sustainable development beyond merely providing recreational value (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:121) but rather

making a valuable contribution across the spectrum of social, environmental and economic benefits (Swanwick *et al.*, 2003:103), as formerly mentioned by Shackleton and Blair (2013:105). Within the Sheffield City Council's (2008:1) approach to 'Valuing Attractive Landscapes in Urban Economy', three factors also need to be present in order to obtain successful green space outputs. These factors include (1) people (engaging stakeholders and access knowledge on green infrastructure and green space planning), (2) values (scoping valuation tools for application to green infrastructure investment in order to identify optimum evaluation techniques at city/regional scale and site scale) and (3) green spaces (innovations in green infrastructure management). This supports the multidimensional principal component analysis of Baycan-Levent (2007:1) as approach for the effective provision and maintenance of green spaces. It also encompasses Shackleton and Blair's (2013:105) similarity between the quality and value of green spaces as well as the contribution and relevance of people-driven, publicly participative green spaces to be discussed in the following sections.

The following table conclusively summarizes and reflects the full range of types of urban green spaces that together form the 'green fabric' or 'green infrastructure' of the urban area (refer to Table 2: Glossary for a clear definition of the concept of green infrastructure. They may be publicly or privately owned and managed, and may or may not be accessible for public recreation (Swanwick *et al.*, 2003:99).

Table 17: Typology of green space

MAIN TYPES OF ALL URBAN GREEN SPACE		
Amenity Green Space	Recreation Green Space	Parks and gardens
		Informal recreation areas
		Outdoor sports areas
		Play areas
	Incidental Green Space	Housing green space
		Other incidental space
Private Green Space	Domestic gardens	
Functional Green Space	Productive Green Space	Remnant farmland
		City farms
		Allotments
	Burial Grounds	Cemeteries
		Churchyards
	Institutional Grounds	School grounds (including school farms and growing areas)
		Other institutional grounds

Semi-natural habitats	Wetland	Open/running water
		Marsh, fen
	Woodland	Deciduous woodland
		Coniferous woodland
		Mixed woodland
	Other habitats	Moor/ heath
		Grassland
		Disturbed ground
	Linear Green Space	River and canal banks
		Transport corridors (road, rail, cycle ways and walking routes)
Other linear features (e.g. cliffs)		

Source: Adapted from Swanwick *et al.* (2003:97).

The definition of green spaces for the purpose of this research, is therefore similar to that of Shackleton and Blair (2013:106) and includes any formal or informal green areas (also including school grounds provided that they are accessible to the public after school hours), sports fields, designated parks and remnant patches of indigenous vegetation, but (other than Barbosa *et al.* (2007:193)) excluding spaces like private gardens, hard open spaces and green road verges or pavements within the boundaries of the town.

4.3 Challenges and understanding of the context of green spaces

The Department of Transport, Local Government and the Regions (2002:78) emphasizes the importance of parks and green spaces creating green infrastructure as a “popular and precious resource”. Valuable contributions made by these spaces include attractive neighbourhoods, health and the well-being of local people as well as the expansion of educational opportunities for children and adults alike. Sheffield City Council (2008:5) also emphasizes the importance of well-managed and guarded green spaces in contributing to urban and rural areas being more attractive for working and living.

Green spaces make valuable contributions as they play a crucial role in supporting urban ecological and social systems (a fact recognised in public policy commitments in both the UK and Europe). The number of green spaces provided within a town or city, the distribution of these green spaces and the

ease of access to such spaces are key contributors to social and ecological functions within urban and rural environments (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:187).

Despite these valuable contributions of green spaces (including the umbrella-term of green infrastructure) the Department of Transport, Local Government and the Regions (2002:78) stated that these invaluable resources are often neglected, resulting in a loss of potential and potential benefits. Therefore, in order to enhance the potential and benefits that the green spaces can provide, it is crucial to focus on the quality of the green spaces, and the management of these spaces.

In this sense, one of the most important aspects to recognize is the inequality or disparity regarding the presence of green spaces in affluent suburbs (i.e. urban context) compared to green spaces in previously racially defined townships (i.e. rural context) (McConnachie & Shackleton, 2009:244). This however, is not the biggest disproportion, since disparities exist within different suburbs as well. According to McConnachie and Shackleton (2009:244), an important approach regarding green space planning and provision is to notice and identify these inequalities or disparities in green space provision in order to provide and prompt for better planning processes and initiatives regarding the provision of green infrastructure within an area or community.

As mentioned above, the focus and essence of successful green space and infrastructure planning is the application of quality and efficient management. Equally relevant and important in green space planning is the ease of access to these public green spaces (as included by Barbosa *et al.* (2007:187)), an aspect that varies significantly across different sectors of society. For example, wealthy neighbourhoods can be more prone to losing private green space due to infill densification and paving of front gardens. This presence of green spaces thus increases the value and the influence of their existence and location, and can contribute to situations (like the one occurring in Zürich and described by Lange *et al.* (2007:245)) where the cost of renting a room is directly related to the quality of the view over the surrounding area and environment.

As mentioned, different types of households within different sectors of society value the success or efficiency of green spaces differently where, for example, those with young children apply additional access requirements such as safe routes to nearby green spaces (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:194).

According to Shackleton and Blair (2013:105), physical access refers to the distribution of public green space (PGS) within cities including the proximity of these public green spaces (PGS') to where people reside and work, with barriers that hinder access including long distances, unsafe routes and entrance fees.

Within accessible and quality public green spaces (as mentioned above), a huge number of social benefits and values can be offered when these green spaces act as meeting places, giving a shared focus to diverse communities and neighbourhoods (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:187).

The value of green spaces is further emphasized in the study of Shackleton and Blair (2013:108), wherein a survey resulted in the average of 93% of respondents stating that PGS are important (substantiated by Ward *et al.* (2009:53) with 99% of surveyors regarding urban green spaces as important). The reason for their decision and therefore the summary of values associated with green spaces in communities include (Shackleton and Blair (2013:108) and Ward *et al.* (2009:53)):

- Recreation and relaxation;
- Provision of jobs (creation of such spaces need to be maintained);
- Environmental benefits;
- Aesthetics (i.e. the contribution of the green space to the attractiveness of the community and/or environment);
- Conservation of biodiversity (including botanical gardens as green spaces);
- Attraction of tourism (also contributes to the potential provision of jobs);
- Promotion of human well-being;
- Open space and habitat corridors;
- Appreciation and exercise;
- Enhancing quality of life;
- Escapism and breathing space;
- Preservation for future generations;
- Events, concerts and alternative displays;
- Education and research; and
- Spiritual and moral functions.

(Refer to Annexure 6 for the detailed survey results of these values)

Improving attributes such as accessibility (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:187), proximity (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:105) and safety (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:194) contribute to the attraction of green spaces, increasing the frequency and duration of visits. By creating public green spaces which are fully maintained and cared for, the feeling of being unsafe is eliminated, contributing to the overall value and success of these public green spaces (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:110) which enhances the values of green spaces as listed above.

These above-mentioned values of green spaces can be regarded as subjective where, according to the New Labour Government, different understandings of the value and functions of urban green space can be identified. These different understandings also identify and reflect the broadening of discourse that has taken place. Discourses (according to Wilson and Hughes, (2011:223-225) regarding the values of green spaces can be summarized as follows:

- Quantity discourse

It reflects the value that everyone is entitled to a certain quantity of accessible green space (also refer to Barbosa *et al.* (2007:187) referring to the number of green spaces as contributory to social and ecological functions in a community). The quantity standards can support green space value in terms of health, well-being and social inclusion. This discourse is used as a basis towards the enhancement of existing or the provision of new green spaces, as well as for protecting green spaces from development. Baycan-Levent (2007:9) also emphasizes the importance of green space quantity as being "...a key issue among the success factors in planning and management of urban green spaces". It is important to refer and include the following discourses as well, as quantity differs between rural and urban areas (especially in South Africa). Rural areas are defined (refer to Chapter 2 and Annexure 1) as areas with large amounts of open space, but these spaces are not necessarily 'lively and quality public places', whereas urban areas might be more dense but open spaces provided have adequate facilities, parks, benches, etc. (refer to Chapters 5 and 6 empirically investigating the quality and relevance of current lively place and green space planning in terms of theory).

- Quality discourse

This discourse is used for the same principles as mentioned above, but, contrasting to the previous discourse, quality is more subjective to define and measure (also refer to previous references to quality by Shackleton and Blair (2013:105, 107 and 108), Lange *et al.* (2007:245), Ward *et al.* (2009:53) and the Department for Transport, Local Government and the Regions (2002:78)) which include qualitative aspects (as previously mentioned throughout this research) with function and lived experience. These attributes and amenities make people want to use the space – i.e. transforming 'space' to a 'public place' (refer to Chapter 3, section 3.2.1).

- Nature/Biodiversity discourse

The focus here is on the benefits of green spaces regarding biodiversity (Barbosa *et al.* (2007:187) and Young (2010:313)), as well as nature and climate change mitigation. It also includes planning or planning authorities identifying a hierarchy of protected sites, from internationally important conservation sites (such as European sites) to locally important sites (like local nature reserves) within

their development plan. It further requires a solid information base regarding biodiversity in terms of decision making regarding development – therefore overlapping with the quantity discourse above, except that the scope of green space of the nature discourse is broader (all urban green spaces potentially have nature or biodiversity value). It also contributes to the value regarding the linkage between green spaces as opposed to other discourses viewing green spaces as discreet spaces.

- Social/Community discourse

This discourse values community participation and community owned or managed green spaces. Robrecht and Meyrick, (2008:17) support the concept of participation referring to citizen and stakeholder participation as “...the key to success”. The social value of these community-led programmes is identified as the most beneficial outcome (even above environmental or recreational gains).

These discourses are increasingly being categorized under the over-arching umbrella of ‘green infrastructure’ (refer to glossary, table 2) and therefore green space planning, a new green space planning discourse recognizing the benefits and value of a linked network of multi-functional green space (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:226). Young (2010:314) further demonstrates the value of green space planning beyond the mere impact on air quality and its influence on social behaviour (through amenities such as beautification and shade) but refines and recognizes green space planning as a central component of a community’s overall “green structure” or “green infrastructure”. They are regarded as fundamental assets in a community’s infrastructure as well as important in addressing a broader range of environmental and societal issues (Young, 2010:314).

Consequently, urban green spaces improve urban environmental quality, urban tourism, public health and social integration among others, with these benefits felt beyond the mere borders of the urban area itself (Odindi & Mhangara, 2012:653). As previously stated, above-mentioned values of green space planning can be regarded as ‘subjective’. Based on the subjectivity regarding the planning and experience of green spaces it is important to include and focus on ethical and moral approaches.

The mention and inclusion of ethics and morals has become a recurrent theme in recent years and planning frameworks (Campbell & Marshall, 1999:464). Ward *et al.* (2009:54) support this importance when perceiving the user benefits and relevancy of green spaces regarding its ‘spiritual and moral functions’. These ethical and moral aspects are centred on an appropriate relationship between the state, society and the individual (Campbell & Marshall, 1999:464).

The issue for planning, as it seeks to secure its on-going legitimacy, is the search for frameworks which can assist in making appropriate choices in a fragmented and politicized institutional context (Campbell & Marshall, 1999:465).

Forester (1993:16) has argued that any theory of planning practice must be empirically fitting, practically appropriate and ethically illuminating, the latter implying that it should help 'planners and citizens understand and assess the ethical and political consequences of various possibilities of action, policy or intervention'.

Examples of ethical and political consequences (as mentioned above) are evident in Dasgupta's (2009:36) work. In this resource, the following moral is important: when designing the supply of household water and sanitation facilities, for example, the context matters. Therefore the moral or ethical approach is to supply communities and/or households according to their needs, facilities, capacities and capabilities. Dasgupta (2009:36) enhances and supports this morale by including that "...facilities would not be used if they are found to be inconvenient".

Dasgupta (2009:43) further continues with the moral importance of contexts when stating that, despite the caveats, the moral is that the macro-economic history of a nation looks very different when nature is included as a capital asset in economic activity.

The overarching moral therefore, is that development policies ignore people's reliance on ecological capital which is seriously harmful – they don't pass the mildest test for equity among contemporaries, nor among people separated by time and uncertain contingencies (Dasgupta, 2009:44).

The social well-being of people or communities can also be regarded as an ethical well-being of present and future generations (Dasgupta, 2009:21) – therefore an ethical approach refers to one of social inclusion of all – i.e. participation.

In terms of theory, the different forms of ethical frameworks informing theories of planning and assisting with current challenges confronting theory and practice (Campbell & Marshall, 1999:465) include the important distinction between teleological (focus on whether the actions in themselves are good or bad) and deontological (concentrates on the rightness of the action taken) frames of reference (Campbell & Marshall, 1999:466).

Singer (1993:14), in his work on practical ethics, places emphasis on the consequences of these above-mentioned actions in terms of the collective balance of interests i.e. interests of all affected by an action. This teleological approach morally addresses the inequality experienced, especially in rural

communities, by initiating a 'good outcome' based on treating individuals differently as a means to compensate for these existing inequalities (Campbell & Marshall, 1999:467).

In contrast, deontological approaches are rather concerned with whether the action itself is right or wrong, not with the consequences of an action. A positive moral outcome of such an approach is the achieving of consistent, universal and impartial decisions – therefore protecting individual rights (Campbell & Marshall, 1999:467). The focus on individual rights includes the above-mentioned morality of participation of each individual that is concerned or has interest in the matter, e.g. rural people in communities where lively place green space planning are considered.

Frameworks and approaches to ethical and moral planning can be diverse and even confusing. Campbell and Marshall (1999:474) therefore conclude that, within the focus on individual interests, the general preoccupation should be with *how* to plan rather than issues concerning ends and values. MacIntyre (1985:26) warns against the diminished significance of moral judgements as they are nothing more than '...an expression of personal preference'. It therefore suggests that planners should still be included in planning policy and frameworks in order to act as referees and therefore administering the rules of the game (i.e. standard procedures, professional judgement, policies, etc.) amongst multiple, diverse and unique situations and corresponding interests (Campbell & Marshall, 1999:475) in order for both individual preferences and interests to be included in ethical and moral planning of spaces and places within political and procedural correct and viable frameworks.

Therefore, ethical and moral approaches are based and driven by personal preferences, values and preconceived ideas and a single best ethical approach cannot be implemented. Campbell and Marshall (1999:476) conclude that in the final analysis of planning, it will be judged by its outcome. Therefore an approach or framework can be regarded morally defensible if and when both the action and the consequence (i.e. teleological and deontological aspects) of a planning approach will deliver a future that is 'better' for all (Campbell & Marshall, 1999:476). This is supported and simplified in the statement made by Baycan-Levent (2007:5) where the importance of sufficient efforts from both the urban decision makers as well as the public at large are needed in order to guarantee a desired provision and upkeep of green spaces and infrastructure within cities, towns and communities.

The entirety of efficient, quantitative and especially quality green space planning within a moral and ethically sound framework and approach is simplified but, nevertheless, summarized by Baycan-Levent (2007:7) in its reference and verdict that there is no simple panacea to create success stories for urban green policy. The core of successful green space planning lies in the variety of good practices implemented based on comparative analysis, leading to the identification of useful and transferable

policy lessons and/or effective coherent management strategies relevant and efficient to each unique situation and community. This approach combined with increased green space quantity and quality accompanied by an active involvement of the community in planning processes as well as important management and maintenance, can contribute to the creation of sound green spaces (Baycan-Levent, 2007:11).

4.4 Green spaces and social challenges

4.4.1 International context

As stated in the introductory paragraph of Chapter 3, section 3.2.2.1 (the discussion of international approaches to lively place planning and place-making), the following international and local case study areas (towns, cities and countries) with their corresponding green space planning initiatives and/or approaches are presented as part of the case study analyses used throughout this research to evaluate green space planning. This section aims to discuss the background and overall challenges and approaches of selected international green space planning case studies. In following chapters (Chapter 5) these case studies will be empirically evaluated in order to determine each of their successes in terms of practically planning for successful green space planning as theoretically discussed in prior sections. These specific case studies were selected as prospective pilot tests because of their various implementations, views and suppositions regarding the definitions, inclusion, aim and provision of green spaces within various areas. The inclusion of these specific cases therefore provides a relative comprehensive description and background in order to provide a detailed and informed descriptive and broad definition to successfully compare and determine the necessary aspects to be included in the planning of such space. They are also widely spread across the world with (most of them) having specific references and inclusions of 'green space planning' and corresponding initiatives within their policies and jurisdiction. They are therefore most relevant especially in terms of determining their success based on the application of theory and to (prospectively) identify best practices all around the world, especially applicable to rural communities and that of the Vaalharts case study (Chapter 7).

4.4.2 International case studies

(a) Europe

Currently, urban green spaces are disappearing with the lack of accessibility to these spaces as main reason for householders moving from specific communities (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:187).

Regulatory agencies recognise the importance of safeguarding the provision of green space in urban areas. In Europe, the European Environment Agency (EEA) recommends that people should have access to green space within 15 minutes' walking distance (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:188).

More stringently, English Nature (EN), a UK government agency, recommends that “people living in towns and cities should have an accessible natural green space less than 300m from home” (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:188). If a city or area lacks natural green spaces (like forests and other natural green vegetation areas), the creation of urban green spaces (i.e. human green spaces) can also play an important role in improving the quality of urban life as a substitute to natural green spaces (Baycan-Levent, 2007:11).

(b) The Netherlands

In the Netherlands, successful green space planning approaches are in place with an astounding 67% and 83% of neighbourhoods already having access to recreational opportunities for walking and cycling respectively.

(c) England

Another case study strategy originated in England and ensures biodiversity conservation to be an integral part of sustainable urban communities. England’s Biodiversity Strategy is implemented in towns, cities and other developments with ease of access as one of the main indicators directing this strategy (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:188).

After a significant decline in the quality of green spaces experienced in England since the 19th century, the New Labour Government (elected in 1997) saw to the development of a new urban policy discourse – one that recognizes the important contribution of green space planning to quality of life (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:207).

This includes an official report (evaluating the progress on urban green space policy under this New Labour Government) i.e. a National Audit Office (NAO) report in 2006 that looked specifically at the management, funding and quality of urban green spaces (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:208), with financial resources and funding highly regarded as a ‘success factor’ regarding green space management, according to Baycan-Levent (2007:12). This report also recognized that the issues regarding ‘quality’ do not merely lie within the lack of funding, but also with raising the profile of urban green space planning, achieving a more integrated governance approach, a cultural mind shift regarding the function of parks and other green spaces as well as a targeted approach recognizing the need to improve the quality of green space planning, especially in deprived neighbourhoods (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:212).

The New Labour Government focused on urban renaissance and compact cities as a means to sustainably transform the physical, social and economic aspects of cities. This created a political

environment conducive to identifying and addressing urban green space as both a challenge and an opportunity (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:201).

The Urban White Paper (DETR, 2000), as is included in planning approaches of England, was consequently implemented in order to set out the policy agenda with measures to improve the quality of urban green space planning.

These measures (amongst others) include:

- Urban Parks Initiative (aimed at restoring and improving parks and gardens);
- Taking environmental action (enabling or funding environmental and voluntary groups to improve the quality of local environments);
- Sustainable Communities Programme (aimed at the creation and improvement of green spaces important to local communities);
- Raising standards (improving the provision and management of parks and open spaces);
- Etc. (for detailed information regarding implemented measures refer to Annexure 8 – Policy measures and aims according to New Labour’s urban green space agenda, 2000)

Subsequently, the Urban Green Spaces Taskforce was established in 2001 and published the report ‘*Green Spaces, Better Places*’ in May the following year, including 52 recommendations regarding the improvement of green space provision, design, management and maintenance (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:213) – refer to Annexure 9 regarding Urban Green Spaces Taskforce’s recommendations and Government responses).

In order for these measures and frameworks to be implemented, Planning Policy Guidance (PPG now updated as PPSs) set out national objectives and considerations (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:213). The current PPG/PPS for open space is PPG17 Planning for Open Space, Sport and Recreation and sets out the following national objectives for open space, sport and recreation:

- Supporting an urban renaissance;
- Promotion of social inclusion and community cohesion;
- Promoting health and well-being; and
- Promoting more sustainable development (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:214).

These objectives were not specifically and solely for the purpose of green space planning and sport, but central in the government’s urban renaissance agenda and therefore highlights the central role of green space planning in urban regeneration (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:215). In order to provide a coherent structure for planning, local authorities are recommended to develop a green space planning

strategy as well as a set of relevant planning policies in order to ensure that the needs of the local community for green space planning were met (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:216). Communities can be engaged or included in various aspects including the setting of targets, agreeing on activities, the implementation of measures as well as in the evaluation of progress towards municipal sustainability (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:17).

As an approach to the overall challenge regarding the funding of green space planning as a cause of the declining quality, the Urban White Paper identified new funding measures through the Heritage Lottery

Fund and the New Opportunities Fund (now Big Lottery Fund (2008)) (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:217). The need for this funding to be 'ring-fenced' (i.e. ensuring funds are allocated and therefore only used for parks and green space planning and improvements) was also identified. These funding measures ran through 2001 to 2006 with several green space planning schemes included.

These funding schemes included aims and/or eligibilities like

- Regenerating public parks that are of national, regional or local heritage value;
- Transforming derelict land areas in less advantaged communities into community green spaces;
- Creating or enhancing Local Nature Reserves in disadvantaged communities lacking access to natural green spaces;
- Encouraging all people (especially socially excluded) to understand, access and enjoy the natural environment;
- Helping disadvantaged people through the creation or enhancing of local green space planning; and
- Empowering community groups themselves to get involved in improving public spaces.

(Refer to Annexure 10 for more details regarding the funding sources and other comments regarding these initiatives.)

A positive outcome found in the evaluation of the programme regarding the success of the schemes is that the schemes had been "... effective in engaging volunteers and community groups in disadvantaged areas or from disadvantaged communities, who had been neglected in the past by local authorities" (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:218).

Funding was not all successful and the following limitations were identified (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:219):

- Most funding was capital funding rather than revenue, which raises concerns regarding the long-term viability of the schemes;

- Some funding comes with strings attached, meaning they do not always match local principles;
- Funding is more 'opportunity driven' rather than needs-based;
- The complexity of funding schemes was also identified as an issue, along with the need for better coordination and information on funding raised;
- Limited amount of private-sector investment in urban green space planning.

In order to raise awareness, the Urban Green Space Task Force further established a new urban open space unit within CABE (Commission for Architecture and the Built Environment - established in 2000) aimed at enabling linkages between urban green spaces and the wider context of the surrounding built environment (Wilson & Hughes (2011:121) supported by Baycan-Levent (2007:5). Based on this, CABE SPACE was subsequently launched in 2003 aiming to "... bring excellence to the design and management of parks and public spaces in our towns and cities (CABE Space, 2004:1).

CABE Space produced good practice guidance (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:220) and contributed to New Labour's urban green space planning agenda through the implementation of participative local authorities regarding quality and quantity improvement of information in terms of green space planning, as well as improving the planning and design of parks and other green spaces (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:221).

Based on this improvement of quality and design, the Public Service Agreement (PSA) 8 on 'Liveability' was introduced in 2005. The aim was to deliver cleaner, safer, greener public spaces and improve the quality of the built environment in deprived and disadvantaged areas and across the country - with measurable improvement by 2008 (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:221).

Another good and motivating approach in England in order to promote green space planning and encourage their national profile is the execution of the Green Flag Award (launched in 1996). This award is annually made to green spaces regarded as being on 'excellent standard', based on indicators and criteria such as community involvement, facilities, management and maintenance and sustainability (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:222). The success, however, was seen as 'target driven', since the target amount of Green Flag Award spaces was reached, but satisfaction levels of the public either remained the same, or only raised slightly in comparison to the number of additional awards received (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:223).

(d) Käferberg (Switzerland)

One of the very successful implementations of green space planning is the case study of Käferberg in the city of Zürich, Switzerland. This case study is situated within the large greenbelt directly adjacent to the north of the city centre at the urban–rural fringe and fulfils ecological and agricultural production functions (Lange *et al.*, 2007:246). This provides valuable habitats protected by the neighbouring woodlands. In their approach to preserve this green open space, they zoned the site as ‘*Freihaltezone*’ (open space protection zone). It is mainly used for agricultural purposes by a farmer who lives on-site that farms the majority of the area, as well as by a neighbouring farmer (Lange *et al.*, 2007:246). Except for the agricultural activities, this site is also very popular for urban recreational purposes such as walking, jogging, cycling, etc. and (importantly) is easily accessible by public transport and also provides car parking nearby (Lange *et al.*, 2007:246).

In order to develop or investigate a prospective approach to further green space planning, surveys were sent out to citizen representative groups (*‘Quartiervereine’*), members of associations for protecting local heritage, walkers at the Käferberg site itself and people in the university restaurants in which they were asked to indicate their ratings for aspects regarding current green space planning as well as what they wanted or expected from provided green spaces (Lange *et al.*, 2007:249). These surveys included sections and questions aimed at understanding aspects like their landscape preference (‘How do you like the above landscape?’), recreation preference (‘Would you enjoy walking in the above landscape?’) and nature conservation (‘What value do you think the above landscape has in terms of nature conservation?’). These questions were answered or rated in terms of a series of 49 colour images they had to base their answers on (Lange *et al.*, 2007:249) – refer to Annexure 7 for a visual representation of the surveys.

The purpose and key of such an approach lies in the emphasis that the Rio Declaration on Environment and Development places on the importance of the integration of the local population into the decision-making process (Lange *et al.*, 2007:253) in order to potentially help improve real local environments and green space planning through the engagement of the public (Lange *et al.*, 2007:254). This concept of community involvement invariably contributes to the accomplishing of targets (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:17).

This community and stakeholder engagement should be implemented from the start and continued throughout the development process and/or programme (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:17). It can therefore be seen as, according to Lange *et al.* (2007:255), a basis for a continuous process of creatively designing and planning a green space at the urban–rural fringe in the light of public interest.

(e) United Nations (UN) – Sweden, India, Philippines

Another international case study's approach to green space planning is the implementation of the 'ecoBudget', as implemented by the United Nations Human Settlement Programme (UN HABITAT). According to Robrecht and Meyrick (2008:4), *ecoBudget* is an environmental management system (especially designed for local government) in which natural resources and environmental quality are measured and accounted for within a budget in order to assist sustainable local development and effective management of the urban environment (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:8).

The level of efficiency is measured by means of specific indicators, chosen to reflect the situation of the individual municipality and the ecosystems, and services on which these rely (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:4).

Ultimately, the *ecoBudget* aims to plan, control, monitor, report on, and evaluate the consumption of natural resources (such as climate stability, air quality, land, water, raw materials, and biodiversity) (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:9). It therefore mirrors the cycles and/or phases of a municipal financial budget and should be applied in the same familiar way in order to naturally become as much a part of local authority routines as the financial budgeting process (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:9). The benefit of environmental budgeting is the contribution and/or support it provides regarding the sustainable performance of local governments as well as better attention to natural resources and environmental quality being more sustained (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:16). This becomes evident in the practical implementation of the *ecoBUDGET* within the city of Växjö, Sweden where "*...the complete integration of the monetary and environmental budgets has given environmental issues and initiatives a higher status and resulted in greater environmental awareness among municipal councillors*" (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:21).

Another initiative based on the *ecoBUDGET* approach is that of Guntur, India. The city of Guntur has a growing air pollution problem because of illegal hawkers. The demarcation of 500 Green Vending Zones, 10 Amber Vending Zones and 12 Red Vending Zones including the issuing of identity cards forces hawkers to sell on environmental safe areas within certain guidelines in order to save and protect green spaces (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:23).

Tubigon in the Philippines kicked off their first *ecoBUDGET* cycle, focusing on the continuous inclusion of the public. This was done by including 15 local administrators as well as numerous representatives from the private and non-governmental sector. Then the Municipal Development Council short-listed specific environmental issues and concerns and looked at political priorities and the applicability regarding the capacity of the stakeholders to implement actions. Several dissemination events also

took place to ensure continuous public involvement and to keep them informed about the development of the draft Master Budget (Robrecht & Meyrick, 2008:17). According to Robrecht and Meyrick (2008:22) *ecoBUDGET* will not only address environmental issues within this town, but can also be used to address poverty alleviation and the MDGs (Millennium Development Goals).

(f) University of Wisconsin

The University of Wisconsin-Green Bay (2004?:1) as case study has a different approach and rather focuses on the economic benefit green space planning can provide when planned and implemented correctly. This includes the concept of 'native landscaping' where only local plants are planted in green spaces. This has numerous economic and environmental benefits including:

- Native plants are less expensive than conventional landscaping practices;
- Lower installation costs;
- Requiring of less water, therefore eliminating the need for (and costs of) irrigation systems;
- Requiring no pesticides or fertilizer applications;
- Reduction of mowing and other routine maintenance.

(g) North America

In North America, urban forestry is included as a component of green space management (Young, 2010:314). This concept of 'urban forests' (including its associated green spaces) is regarded as an important focal point for the delivery of social and environmental goods (including both the conventional air quality and social behaviour outcomes) as well as more recent expansions of green infrastructure (i.e. green spaces) as previously mentioned.

This 'urban forestry' approach of North America (Young, 2010:314) contributes to the addressing of wider social challenges through its "green infrastructure" or "green space" concept. According to Young (2010:319), the managing of urban forests and green spaces produces public benefits as well as environmental quality through ecosystem services (i.e. enhanced energy and climate management, water quality and habitat and biodiversity). These urban forests with its associated green spaces are regarded as fundamental assets in a community's infrastructure as well as important in addressing a broader range of environmental and societal issues (Young, 2010:314), therefore addressing a wider range of issues than conventionally seen.

In order to represent the municipal foresters (refer to glossary for a clearer definition) managing these 'urban forests', the Society of Municipal Arborists (SMA) was established. They are also the largest professional organization representing municipal foresters in the United States and include consultants,

commercial firms and citizens actively practising or supporting some facet of municipal forestry (Young, 2010:314). Their mission is “...leading the world in building the confidence, competence, and camaraderie of the family of professionals who create and sustain community forests” (SMA, 2010).

Responsibilities included in public sector SMA members’ portfolios are:

- Traditional services such as maintaining and replacing of street trees, beautification, protecting power lines and enhancing public health, recreation, and property values;
- The management of additional municipal green space planning assets including (large and small) parks, cemeteries, public buildings grounds, utilities rights of-way, and natural areas;
- Management of environmental services like water quality enhancement, energy and climate management and habitat and biodiversity enhancement (Young, 2010:316).

These SMA members also consider their departments and/or objectives as being very to moderately engaged in the management of municipal green spaces in order to produce ecosystem services (Young, 2010:316).

(h) Netherlands, UK, Belgium

An important and successful case study approach is one outlined in Sheffield City Council (2008:8) as the ‘Urban Habitats Project’. This project brings together approaches of the Netherlands, UK and Belgium in order to manage urban habitats. This includes the partners to share and develop their methods and experiences in cross-border cooperation and to therefore develop new ways of creating (and maintaining) high-quality green space planning in urban areas, as well as increasing public involvement and awareness in order to ultimately find the best practices and initiatives to apply to their green space planning.

The following table serves as a basic summary of the discussed case studies of different international cities and each of their different green space planning case studies and/or initiatives regarding green space planning, identifying their corresponding green space values and contributions.

Table 18: International green space case studies and their corresponding green initiatives

COUNTRY / PLACE	PROJECT / INITIATIVE	GREEN SPACE VALUE OR APPROACH
a) Europe	European Environment Agency (EEA)	Accessibility (15min walking distance)
	English Nature (EN)	Accessibility (within 300m of green space)
b) Netherlands	Walking and cycling opportunities	Better access; recreational and health value.

c) England	Biodiversity Strategy	Ease of access
	New Labour Government	Funding for green space management; urban renaissance and compact cities – improving quality as well as a cultural mind shift on what green spaces are
	Urban White Paper: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Urban Parks Initiative • Sustainable Communities Programme • Taking environmental action • Raising standards 	Restore and improve Create and improve Funding for quality improvement Improve provision and management
	Funding Schemes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Heritage Lottery Fund • New Opportunities Fund 	Regenerate, transform and enhance green space and Local Nature Reserves; Public participation; Accessibility.
	Urban Green Spaces Taskforce: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Report: Green spaces, better places • CABI (Commission for Architecture and the Built Environment) 	Recommendations for improving provision, design, management and maintenance; Better linkages between green spaces and built environment; Improve design and management; Participative; improved quality and quantity regarding information.
	Planning Policy Guidance (PPG17: Planning for Open Space, Sport and Recreation)	Regeneration; addressing of community needs and engagement of local community.
	Public Service Agreement 8 (PSA 8)	Clean, safe, greener quality spaces.
	Green Flag Award	Incentive for managing and maintaining green spaces at a certain standard.
d) Käferberg (Switzerland)	'Freihaltezone' (open space protection zone) Surveys	Protection of green spaces against potential development; addresses needs of people through survey participation; integrates local population in decision making.
e) UN (United Nations) Sweden, India, Philippines	ecoBUDGET	Protects and enhances potential of natural resources and management; public participation engagement; poverty alleviation.
f) University of Wisconsin	Native landscaping	Economic benefits of using and planting only local flora.
g) North America	Urban forestry	Management, maintenance and replacing of street trees.
h) Netherlands, UK, Belgium	Urban Habitats Project	Managing and exchanging ideas, approaches and best practices across borders for best practice implementation.

Source: Own creation (2013)

4.4.3 South African context

The challenges in planning and maintaining urban public green spaces in towns in the developing world such as South Africa differ remarkably from those of the developed world as discussed in the previous section on international approaches (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:104). Developing countries experience high levels of urbanisation and population growth prohibiting urban planning agencies to keep up and contributing to green space planning in areas which are rather being targeted for land invasion (McConnachie & Shackleton, 2009:245). South Africa, being a developing country, therefore provides an interesting opportunity to examine the distribution of public green space in a developing country in relation to wealth attributes – wealth being correlated to public green space attributes (McConnachie & Shackleton, 2009:245).

The majority of residents (as responded in a survey conducted in two small towns in the Eastern Cape Province of South Africa) agreed that there was insufficient public green space (PGS) in their respective towns and suburbs and that the local municipality did not do enough in providing efficient and sufficient PGS or maintaining existing spaces (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:104). Ward *et al.* (2009:53) agree with 55% of respondents stating that there is insufficient green space planning within urban areas.

Even though residents experience a high level of dissatisfaction with the amount and condition of current PGS and insufficient municipal commitment and funds to adequately maintain these PGS, there still exists a high level of willingness amongst residents to get involved (either through a commitment of time or funds) (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:104). The importance of understanding residents' needs and attitudes is therefore important in ensuring that planning and management objectives are grounded in local needs and desires regarding PGS (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:111) in order to create efficient and lively places and green spaces they want and would visit.

The following local case studies are to be discussed and further evaluated in forthcoming chapters:

a) Johannesburg

In comparison to the principles as mentioned in the previous section for green space planning according to the EEA and EN, Johannesburg's guideline states that 20–40m² of public green space should be available per capita (Johannesburg Open Space System, 2002), although distance and accessibility are not mentioned.

As was also initiated in Durban as part of their Buffelsdraai Landfill Site Community Reforestation Project (refer to the next case study), the City of Johannesburg also initiated a green project wherein 200 000 trees were planted ahead of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ (first tree planted on 1 September

2006). Within this project, the city set out to address previous imbalances in past development policies in order to provide a green Soweto (City of Johannesburg, 2012). The project saw businesses and rural community individuals participate in donating and planting trees in areas that were in need of regeneration in order to create a community and social cohesion, as well as a green and more inviting environment to enhance tourism of international soccer fanatics. In April 2010 the project came to fruition with the planting of the 200 000th tree in Dhlamini Eco Park (City of Johannesburg, 2012).

With the new democratic government (focused on post-apartheid planning and reconciliation), new and vigorous housing policies and programmes are implemented with emphasis on the delivery of large numbers of houses for the poor and previously homeless at a cost as low as possible – i.e. RDP (Reconstruction and Development Programme) houses (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:105) with these RDP suburbs having significantly higher housing densities, impeding the possibility of green space presence (McConnachie & Shackleton, 2009:246). These RDP houses were found to have (or use) green spaces the least in comparison to affluent suburbs and/or towns with a clear majority (60-80%) of people in these areas feeling that their municipality should do more (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:107) regarding the provision, management and quality of current green space planning. This is supported by McConnachie and Shackleton (2009:244) stating that they are poorly endowed with public green space planning, both in terms of size of spaces as well as the total proportion of the area under public green space (McConnachie & Shackleton, 2009:246). They currently feel the green spaces to be polluted, that there is no sign of the municipality cleaning the green spaces, that no political will or value is attached to these green spaces and that there are insufficient funds available for maintaining these areas (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:107).

The issue in many of South Africa's urban areas (for example the research done on Port Elizabeth as case study (Odindi & Mhangara, 2012:657)) is the rapid decline in green space planning as a result of rapid urban population influx associated with the transitional period (transitioning into a democracy after apartheid – also refer to Shackleton and Blair (2013:105) addressing the focus on post-apartheid planning and reconciliation). According to McConnachie *et al.* (2008:1) this led to the conversion of natural and green spaces into built environments with area reduction, fragmentation and surface transformation as results. Sheffield City Council (2008:1) also identifies the value of green structures not validated enough as a reason for green space planning giving in to construction of various built environments. McConnachie *et al.* (2008:2) continues by indicating informal settlement growth and other governmental efforts addressing infrastructure backlogs (like the previously mentioned RDP programme by Shackleton and Blair (2013:105) as particularly leading to a steady decline in urban green space planning.

b) Port Elizabeth

As part of sustainable urban living initiatives, most cities or towns include methods of conservation as well as improvements of the remnant green environments (especially those found at the urban fringe). Port Elizabeth, for example, is one of the four cities in South Africa which has adopted the Metropolitan Open Space System (MOSS). In addition to this greening initiative, the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (under the National Forestry Action Programme of 1997 and the White Paper on Forestry of 1996) included the stationing of two foresters in the city in order to establish and coordinate the city's urban greening and forestry programmes (Odindi & Mhangara, 2012:659).

c) Durban

Another South African city and therefore case study in this research adopting and changing to green space planning is that of Durban. The climate protection work they do, aims to create "... a safer, more sustainable, and responsive city" within the eThekweni Municipality (eThekweni Municipality, 2011:2), with SAPS (2011:4) supporting this aim by also referring to rural areas not having sufficient and rapid police response. This document or programme agrees with Young (2010:313) in the importance of climate change and therefore climate management and stability as one of the most significant challenges in South Africa (eThekweni Municipality, 2011:1) as local rural communities are considered to be vulnerable to climate change impacts because of the high levels of poverty and underdevelopment (eThekweni Municipality, 2011:6). These communities are still, according to the eThekweni Municipality (2011:4), directly dependant on ecosystem services (refer to Table 2: Glossary) and therefore provision of green infrastructure and useful and efficient green spaces are of importance. Not only will green space planning add to the contribution of ecosystem services, but they also have a beneficial social value in contributing to climate control (Wilson & Hughes, 2012:21 – also refer to Table 21 for other beneficial social values performed by green space planning). Therefore the eThekweni Municipality (2011:4) implements and supports an ecosystem-based adaptation-model of climate protection also aimed at engaging communities in a mutually beneficial relationship that can provide a basis to develop a new "green economy".

Numerous interventions related to climate change were instigated as a direct consequence of hosting mega-events (i.e. 2010 FIFA World Cup and United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change COP 17/CMP 7). These interventions included reforestation projects with mitigation, adaptation and social uplifting co-benefits, as well as urban greening initiatives and raising awareness. It has also catalysed the development of novel approaches such as the CEBA (Community-Ecosystem Based

Adaptation) concept (eThekweni Municipality, 2011:5). The following table indicates a summary of some of the approaches and benefits of these initiatives.

Table 19: Summary of Durban greening initiatives

GREENING INITIATIVES	APPROACH	BENEFITS
Greening Moses Mabhida Stadium	Yielding significant cost savings through reduction in energy and water consumption by means of efficient architectural design, technologies and fittings; as well as setting off carbon emissions through local reforestation and renewable energy interventions.	Climate change awareness, resource and energy efficiency contributing to more sustainable, healthier environments.
Greening of Training Stadia for the 2010 FIFA World Cup	Upgrading of the three training venues in a manner that minimised energy and water consumption and utilised green space technologies and building materials. This reduced operating costs for the venues and demonstrated green space technologies in previously disadvantaged areas of the city.	As mentioned in the section defining green spaces, sports fields and similar recreational areas are included in the concept or provision of 'green spaces' and therefore this approach specifically provides energy efficient and 'clean' green spaces in disadvantaged (i.e. rural – refer to Chapter 2's defining of rural) communities.
COP17/CMP7 Event Greening Programme.	This programme aims to reduce the ecological impact associated with hosting the COP17/CMP7 event. Also includes an awareness campaign regarding responsible accommodation and tourism approaches through the provision of event greening guidelines.	The hosting and greening of mega events can be used to improve the understanding and progress on critical environmental and developmental issues like various social issues and to provide a platform for generating new transformative ideas to create more useful, sustainable and green public spaces for rural communities.
Buffelsdraai Landfill Site Community Reforestation Project.	Restoration of ecosystem services by planting indigenous trees sourced from adjacent indigent communities where community members collect seeds and grow trees which are then traded for food, school fees, building	The reforestation creates employment and vocational training opportunities (i.e. addressing poverty, unemployment and educational needs of rural communities) and addresses the climate change challenge as well

	materials etc.	as resulting in social upliftment, mitigation, adaptation co-benefits and human well-being needs in most disadvantaged regions.
Paradise Valley Reforestation Project.	Removing alien plant species and planting local indigenous tree species.	Links community and ecosystems in such a way that it focuses on the provision of funding for local ecosystem-focused community employment opportunities that provide the foundation of a green economy.
Community Adaptation Plans (CAPs).	<p>The CAP project had three sub-projects:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Social vulnerability and adaptation planning study conducted in Amaoti, Ntuzuma and Ntshongweni to understand impact of climate change on exacerbating daily challenges and risks in vulnerable (rural) communities. 2. Assessing climate impacts on maize and productivity of alternative staple crops and their social acceptability. 3. Water harvesting options and a local level project improving a community garden (initiated at a school in Luganda). 	Social cohesion and inclusion of rural inhabitants' needs and opinions in order to create lively and opportunistic communities in terms of employment, environmental upgrading and addressing of potential issues regarding staple crops.
Durban Green Corridor.	The main activities are invasive alien plant and pollution control, catchment and wetland rehabilitation, indigenous tree planting, environmental education, youth development through sports and the promotion of outdoor sports.	Rehabilitation and management of open spaces promote adventure sports, nature-based recreation and eco-tourism.
Durban Botanical Gardens: A Climate Change and	A number of awareness raising, informative and interactive initiatives	The interactive displays in the biodiversity and grasslands gardens

<p>Biodiversity Awareness Centre of Excellence.</p>	<p>have been developed at the Durban Botanical Gardens addressing issues related to climate change, including the value of biodiversity, water conservation, food security and renewable energy.</p>	<p>provide an excellent educational experience for learners.</p>
<p>South Durban Basin (SDB) Biodiversity and Greening Programme and Recycling Pilot Project.</p>	<p>A general improvement of the SDB included the upgrading of green spaces around the school using indigenous plants, the development of a cultural garden, use of rainwater harvesting tanks, education and awareness and a reduction in the amount of recyclable waste that goes to landfill sites through recycling initiatives.</p>	<p>Enhances and uplifts previously environmentally degraded rural areas, undermining the inhabitants' quality of life resulting in community mobilisation. Environments therefore more liveable and lively for local community inhabitants.</p>

Own creation based on eThekweni Municipality (2011).

Previous work in South Africa has also shown marked disparities between and within towns with respect to the provision and selected ecological attributes of PGS, concluding that more attention needs to be given to the distribution of PGS by planners, municipal officials and researchers (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:105) with most RDP residents even indicating their willingness to help by contributing time towards maintaining these public green spaces (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:108).

d) Potchefstroom (Botanical Gardens)

Another South African case study initiative can be seen as the inclusion of the use and appreciation of botanical gardens as part of urban green space planning (like the one present in Potchefstroom) with this garden providing numerous benefits in terms of conservation, education and recreation (Ward *et al.*, 2009:49). The inclusion of botanical gardens in the defining of a 'green space' adds more values associated with green space planning in communities (as listed in the previous section based on Shackleton and Blair (2013:108)) with the inclusion of education, conservation and research programmes as values.

The following table serves as a basic summary of the discussed case studies of different local cities and their green space case studies and/or initiatives regarding green space planning, identifying their corresponding green space values and contributions.

Table 20: Local green space case studies and their corresponding green initiatives

CITY / PLACE	PROJECT / INITIATIVE	GREEN SPACE VALUE OR APPROACH
a) Johannesburg	Open Space System, 2002	Quantity and (indirectly) accessibility (20–40m ² of public green space should be available per capita)
	Green project (tree planting)	Green space planning provision and inclusion of public; regenerating areas to enhance social cohesion and tourism.
b) Port Elizabeth	Metropolitan Open Space System (MOSS)	Providing, conserving and improving remnant green environments.
	The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry	Stationing of foresters for maintenance, management and up-keeping of green spaces; establishing and coordinating urban greening and forestry programmes.
c) Durban	Greening Moses Mabhida Stadium	Enhances green space planning aspects for tourism benefits and purposes.
	Greening of Training Stadia for the 2010 FIFA World Cup	Providing green spaces (sports fields listed as a type of green space); enhancing green space planning aspects for tourism benefits and purposes; promoting greening technologies in terms of minimising energy and water consumption.
	COP17/CMP7 Event Greening Programme.	Promotes greening technologies and awareness.
	Buffelsdraai Landfill Site Community Reforestation Project.	Providing green space planning elements (tree planting); enhancing economic entrepreneurship and

		employment.
	Paradise Valley Reforestation Project.	Promotes and protects the sustainability of indigenous plant species; promotes green space economy initiatives.
	Community Adaptation Plans (CAPs).	Regeneration and sustainable resource provision and insurance; addressing of community needs and engagement of local community.
	Durban Green Corridor.	Clean, managed, safe, greener quality rehabilitation spaces; promoting diverse social opportunities and nature based activities
	Durban Botanical Gardens	Provision of quality and managed green spaces with educational potential, awareness and opportunities.
	South Durban Basin (SDB) Biodiversity and Greening Programme and Recycling Pilot Project.	Regenerating and uplifting previous environmentally degraded rural areas.
d) Potchefstroom	Botanical gardens	Providing quality and protected green spaces with the inclusion of education, conservation and research programmes and/or opportunities.

Source: Own creation (2013)

Even though some of these case studies and their approaches or initiatives have been included and discussed, it is still evident that municipalities (the primary providers of local green space) should do more in terms of planning, creating, providing and maintaining green spaces throughout cities and townships. Another issue is that none of the South African planning frameworks of especially rural areas (ISRDS, RDP, the Constitution, etc. – refer to Chapter 2) includes a section on providing green space planning. This highlights the importance of municipalities in this regard to take initiative in

including green space planning in their current town planning schemes. As mentioned, green space planning is not only beneficial in terms of its social enhancement and promotion, but creating efficient and quality green spaces has numerous other health, environmental (protecting natural land) and economic benefits (tourism and native landscapes).

4.5 Comparative study

4.5.1 Comparing factors of successful green space case studies

In sections 4.2 and 4.3 respectively, some issues or lacks regarding current green space planning have been identified and briefly addressed. In the previous section (section 4.4) case studies with current approaches and/or projects or initiatives directing green space planning locally and internationally have been addressed.

This section aims to conclusively compare and identify factors present in most of these case studies as 'successful factors' regarding green space planning. This serves merely as a theoretical and concise summary of previously discussed case studies, whereas Chapter 5 aims at providing a more detailed empirical description and discussion on international lively place and green space planning with Chapter 6 providing a detailed empirical description and discussion on local (South African) lively place and green space planning both of which are aimed at identifying best practices regarding the successful planning and implementation of green spaces and lively places.

In numerous previous references, the lack of sufficient and quality green spaces and especially the management and maintenance thereof are highlighted as important in planning for and developing successful green spaces (Young (2010:313); Sheffield City Council (2008:5); Baycan-Levent (2007:9); Wilson & Hughes (2011:208); DETR (2000); Shackleton and Blair (2013:107); McConnachie & Shackleton (2009:244) and the Department of Transport, Local Government and the Regions (2002:78)).

Green space planning should not only include good quality and diverse amenities, but should be managed properly with necessary routine maintenance and replacing of dilapidated amenities and facilities (Young, 2010:314).

One of the most referred to and included attributes or success factors regarding green space planning locally and internationally is its proximity and accessibility with regards to the surrounding community. Policies or programmes (as mentioned) include guidelines regarding the proximity of green spaces with Johannesburg Open Space System (2002) stating that 20–40m² of public green space should be available per capita and the EEA and EN recommending that people should have access to green

space within 15 min walking distance (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:188) or less than 300m from home (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:188). According to Shackleton and Blair (2013:105), accessibility also includes the non-presence of entrance fees, an attribute hindering the definition of green spaces as 'freely available to all'.

Another important aspect or success factor worth mentioning is the need for green space planning to be safe - safety in terms of violence and crime inhibition, as well as safety in terms of child safety measures and providing for the needs of the elderly and disabled (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:194).

Other success factors include the regeneration of former green or open spaces, provision of human made green space, conservation of natural green spaces (forests, reserves, etc.), clean and safe places, on-site management, opportunities for a variety of activities and others (refer to Chapters 5 and 6 for detailed discussions regarding successful practical implementation of these factors).

4.6 Role of green spaces in enhancing social benefits

Swanwick *et al.* (2003:103) refer to the social benefits of urban green space planning as having both "...an existence value, because people know it is there, and a use value for a wide range of different activities." This is further supported by Barbosa *et al.* (2007:194) referring to green space planning as providing purported social benefits by bringing diverse communities together and promoting interactions between people from different socio-economic and ethnic groups, but also warns against the potential to function as green walls that keep different communities apart (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:194).

The importance of creating green spaces at individual level and for the use of the people in order to provide opportunities for physical and psychological rejuvenation and well-being and a sense of social place (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:104), as a means or 'factor' for creating quality of life (Lange *et al.*, 2007:245) is therefore emphasized (refer to Table 22 for more green space planning contributions on various groups or levels). This is supported by De Jong *et al.* (2012:1374) perceiving green space planning values or qualities to be associated with neighbourhood satisfaction, physical activity and general health. In order to achieve these effective green space planning values, five green space planning qualities needed and associated with successful green spaces should be included. These green space planning qualities (according to de Jong *et al.* (2012:1378)) consist of:

- Culture (historical remains);
- Serenity (silence such that sounds of nature can be heard);
- Lushness (richness in animal and plant species);
- Spaciousness; and

- Wild (with spaciousness and wild rather only preferred by people restoring from stress as these qualities might also be negatively perceived i.e. being desolate, not cared for properly and unsafe (de Jong *et al.*, 2012:1379)).

Factors such as proximity and physical and social accessibility to the nearest PGS have a direct influence on the use of such spaces (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:105) and hence determine whether or not this green space can become a lively place enhancing the frequency of its social usage. When including amenities and natural elements like trees within these areas (aspects which are currently lacking in township green space planning, as derived from Walton *et al.* (2011:30)), more people will feel the urge and need to visit these spaces, as it will contribute to their well-being (a result of effective green space planning as mentioned previously in this chapter and also a social value contributing to the addressing of social challenges).

When providing sufficient areas of green space that are also accessible, these PGS will promote connection with the places in which people live and work – therefore eliminating long travel distances and improving accessibility, providing relative easy means for recreation, exercise, relaxation and other human health and well-being related challenges. This is reflected in the perceptions they form about green spaces and will also influence their maintaining and respecting the use of these public green spaces (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:110), therefore motivating them to personally get involved and contribute in such a manner that they feel a sense of ownership and inclusion within their community.

The preservation and maintenance of these green spaces in urban environments are crucial aspects of fulfilling environmental quality goals and attaining a 'liveable' and socially enhanced and valuable community – one that is environmentally, economically and socially sustainable (Ward *et al.*, 2009:49), therefore indirectly addressing and alleviating social challenges connected with the natural environment and protection for future generations to use.

Benefits of green space planning to human well-beings include livelihood provision, health improvements, stress reduction, rejuvenation and recreational activities, as well as providing a sense of peace and tranquility (Ward *et al.*, 2009:49). Conclusively, the value of green space planning (especially regarding its contribution to lively place planning) and social challenges can be summarized as seen in Table 21 (Beneficial social values as a result of green space planning).

Table 21: Beneficial social values as a result of green space planning

GREEN SPACE PLANNING VALUE	BENEFIT
Spatially	Better defining and separation of urban areas, better linking of town and country, providing for recreation needs over a wide area and addressing the challenge of far travel distances and lack of proximity especially in rural communities, as identified in Chapter 2.
Urban quality	The provision of visually attractive green spaces through the regeneration of current open spaces (refer to Table 11 on regeneration approaches to lively place planning) in close proximity to where people live supports the improving of the quality of life for communities. It also enhances the value of land and the environment, boasting the value and quality surrounding the people.
Health and well-being	<p>Providing opportunities to people of all ages for informal recreation. Allotments may provide physical exercise and other health benefits which also contribute to potential social interaction and inclusion of different groups, genders and ages.</p> <p>It contributes to child development by means of outdoor, energetic and imaginative play and may further influence the behaviour of both individuals and wider society positively.</p> <p>Engagement in healthy outdoor exercise and psychological effects stemming from the escape to a less stressful, more relaxing environment in which people can engage in similar activities, discussion groups, sports teams and other relevant interactive groups.</p>
Community resource	<p>A place for congregating, socializing and hosting community events, religious festivals, fetes and travelling fairs.</p> <p>Contributes significantly to social inclusion as it is free and available for all to access.</p> <p>Provides neutral ground that is available to all sectors of society and can become the focus of community spirit because of the various opportunities provided for social interaction.</p>
Visual amenity	<p>Provides an outlook, variety in the urban and/or rural scene or as a positive element in the landscape.</p> <p>Contributes to landscape and cultural heritage with a means of enhancing cultural diversities and creating closer and more intimate communities.</p> <p>Places with a sense of good maintenance and good management enhance surveillance and therefore contribute to the feeling of safety and security within the social place.</p>

Environmental benefits	<p>Maintains biodiversity through the conservation and enhancing of urban habitats.</p> <p>Reduction of pollution, moderating extremes regarding climate change and contributing to cost-effective sustainable urban drainage systems also enhancing the living environment and provision of clean and efficient services.</p> <p>Provides habitats for flora and fauna as a haven for wildlife and also includes corridors or stepping stones from one habitat to another.</p>
Economic benefits	<p>Direct employment and revenue generation.</p> <p>Affects nearby property prices.</p> <p>Attracts businesses and tourists.</p>
Education	<p>Offers numerous environmental education opportunities (including activities run by park rangers and WATCH groups - children's environmental clubs affiliated to Wildlife Trusts) also contributing to the creation of safe, usable spaces.</p>

Source: Adapted from Wilson and Hughes (2011:217) and Swanwick *et al.* (2003:103).

Another important aspect noted by Wilson and Hughes (2011:219) regarding the successful addressing of social issues through green space planning, is that funding should not only be allocated for new green spaces planning, but should also contribute to improving existing green spaces. This creates lively places where liveliness was inefficient or completely lacking, thereby contributing to overall environment development.

4.7 The role of green space planning in creating lively places

Green space planning has the ability and potential to contribute positively to some of the key agendas in social and lively challenges including social inclusion, health, sustainability, and urban renewal (Swanwick *et al.*, 2003:94). Based on the description of lively places in Chapter 3, Section 3.2.2 it is evident that lively places are created by focusing on the people (Soholt, 2004:8) and, as is concluded in Section 2.1.2.1 of Chapter 2, the diverse and complex concept of “social” can be associated with “people” (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:16). Green space planning (as identified in above sections and definitions) is focused on creating a social function for people, therefore if green spaces are planned and implemented efficiently with the necessary quality, inclusion of various functions, good access and sufficient management the social aspect of green spaces will be improved, consequently enhancing the liveliness of the area which forms nice spaces that are inviting to people (Soholt, 2004:8).

Public green space planning can also provide social benefits by promoting community integration (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:193) (as mentioned in the introductory section regarding the difference between public and private green spaces).

The following table illustrates different levels and the corresponding contribution of green space planning in addressing social issues (cross reference to Table 4: Summary of rural social challenges).

Table 22: Contribution of green spaces on different social levels

LEVEL	CONTRIBUTION OF GREEN SPACES
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Individual level 	Offer opportunities for physical and psychological rejuvenation (i.e. energy, anxiety, anger, fatigue and sadness – De Jong <i>et al.</i> (2012:1379)) and well-being and a sense of social place.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Family level 	Provide a space for interaction, joint learning and relaxation.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Community level 	Offer opportunities for social contact and so contribute to a sense of place, thereby adding to community identity, solidarity and security
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Children 	They offer a different experience of the world, a place of awe, imagination and a place for learning about issues rarely encountered in the more structured environments at work, school or home
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ecological 	Provide many benefits including offering habitats for animals and plants (which sequester carbon dioxide and produce oxygen necessary for life); they reduce noise pollution and alleviate the urban heat island effect, therefore contributing to urban ecosystem services.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Other 	Provide tangible products such as shade, fuel, wood, fruits and medicinal plants.

Source: Own creation based on Shackleton and Blair (2013:104)

Within affluent suburbs or towns, these green spaces contribute to valuable lively place planning by including lively place planning elements or necessities in terms of being “nearby, safe, of suitable size, well maintained and having lots of vegetation or good facilities” (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:109).

The same can unfortunately not be said for townships and RDP residents (based on surveys in the towns of Fort Beaufort and Port Albert in the Eastern Cape Province) where the lack of safety, good maintenance and sufficient facilities are the overall experience of current public green space planning (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:109).

As mentioned by the same source (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:109), municipalities or other appointed organs can add exceptional value to the occurrence of public green space planning and especially to their contribution to social challenges by improving security, facilities and the quality of these spaces as well as eliminating the hindrance regarding access because of the lack of proximity (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:109).

Urban green space planning also provides social and psychological services to urban inhabitants thereby improving the liveability and quality of cities and towns, as green space planning provides relief from crowded, stressful urban lifestyles (Ward *et al.*, 2009:49).

Botanical gardens as a green space are also used to tackle social problems through improving urban environments - this is demonstrated in South Africa through greening projects run by the NBGs (National Botanical Gardens - a vital component of the urban green space system) (Ward *et al.*, 2009:54).

Because of the significant difference in the provision of green spaces for wealthy (urban) and poorer (rural) communities, inequality becomes exacerbated contributing to social challenges especially in the rural communities (refer to Chapter 2 on rural social challenges). Therefore the value of creating and planning for more proportioned and equal access and opportunities to the experiencing of specific functions of green space planning can reduce and address the challenge regarding inequality between different sectors of society.

Wilson and Hughes (2011:212) also recognize and therefore substantiate Ward *et al.*'s (2009:54) reference to the contribution of green space planning towards improving the quality of the urban environment, improving health and well-being, as well as providing opportunities for sport and recreation. In terms of Table 4 (Summary of rural social challenges) these contributions address identified challenges such as social provisions (sport and recreation facilities), malnutrition, welfare and sanitation services (health and well-being) and poor living conditions (improving the environmental quality).

The inclusion of shading impervious surfaces by planting trees or other vegetation is seen as a very important action in the SMA department of urban forestry's efforts to mitigate the urban heat island effect currently contributing and worsening pollution and other natural disasters (Young, 2010:317). Therefore the inclusion of urban forestry and its implementation of trees as ecological service and especially the management thereof will reduce social issues such as unhealthy and polluted environments.

The important influence of green space planning on lively place planning can be concluded in the statement made by the Department for Transport, Local Government and the Regions (2002:71) that “...the right approach for serving the needs of people is to develop a diverse mix of types and sizes of spaces designed for and accessible to different social groups, within a general green space planning network for the wider area”. Therefore, the most significant value of green space planning is its diverse approach, based on what the local people want and need i.e. planning for the people.

In planning such diverse and participative green spaces, a sense of pride is engendered with an appreciation by people of all ages. Therefore, benefits gained by creating green spaces include the provision of “...vibrant towns and cities, better personal health, a stronger sense of community and a more prosperous economy” (House of Commons, 2003:3).

4.8 Rural communities and the social benefit of green space planning

In rural areas, the social challenge of providing adequate entertainment for children is recognized. In creating green spaces that include public amenities and activities like jungle gyms, playgrounds and sports fields, entertainment is provided for families and children in townships that cannot afford to provide these themselves, or do not have the necessary available garden at home (Walton *et al.*, 2011:33). Therefore the following section aims to understand the impact of green space planning on rural areas, especially on the challenge of safety and security experienced in these communities. As mentioned by Walton *et al.* (2011:33), the provision of and access to green spaces as well as the quality thereof vary significantly from that of urban (or more affluent) areas, and therefore the effect and value of these green spaces also vary. The following section aims at understanding the specific values in rural areas as a means of addressing safety and security.

4.8.1 Impact of green space provision on safety and security of rural areas

Rural areas (especially with the implementation of high density RDP housing – refer to Chapter 2) are poorly endowed with public green spaces (McConnachie & Shackleton, 2009:244) with less than half of the inhabitants (43%) feeling safe using these public green spaces in townships (Walton *et al.*, 2011:17).

As already discussed, green space planning potentially has a significant number of social benefits and values if managed and maintained to a certain quality. If not, the environment and society may experience negative effects where green spaces become vacant spaces for dumping and littering as well as possible security threats (Walton *et al.*, 2011:2) and safety issues (Walton *et al.*, 2011:17) (as experienced in small towns in the Eastern Province of South Africa including Zwelitsha, Butterworth,

Bisho, King-Williams town etc.) or become green walls that keep different communities apart (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:194). This is supported by De Jong *et al.* (2012:1397) stating that the feelings of safety and accessibility and green space planning values as key aspects determine whether residents will visit, use and benefit from these rural green space surroundings. Hence the value of rural green spaces as a clean, maintained and managed public space can reduce and/or inhibit the potential of these safety and security threats. This is supported by Baycan-Levent (2007:5) when stating the importance of managing and maintaining rural green spaces and amenities to address current quality decay and dereliction in order to create ‘...attractive, clean and safe places to enjoy’.

As already mentioned the quality of green space planning including safety, multi-functionality, accessibility and on site presence of managers is one of the major determinants regarding the frequency of usage especially in rural areas where safety and neglected green spaces (as previously referenced) are common. Negative aspects including litter, signs of vandalism and lack of management can give (or in the case of rural communities, enhance) the impression that sites are potentially unsafe, which in turn reduces visitation rates (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:194). A potential recognition regarding the solution of ‘quality’ problems does not merely include the increase of funding, but also raising the profile of these rural green spaces and achieving a more integrated government approach, enhancing urban-rural connection and integrating various other approaches to addressing rural challenges. This includes a cultural change in peoples’ perception regarding what parks and other green spaces are used for, as well as targeted approaches that recognize the need to improve green space planning quality in deprived or unequally provided neighbourhoods (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:212) like the rural and underdeveloped green space inequality between rural areas in the Eastern Province and the more affluent areas within the urban context (i.e. parks, botanical gardens, etc. located within city boundaries).

Provision of lighting (brightening of rural green spaces and parks during at night), fences around the green space and the presence of any form of security will enhance the overall feeling of safety, especially for surrounding households – where, for example, households in Grahamstown that are closer to green spaces have decreasing property values, as security risks in this area bordering the public urban green space are higher (Walton *et al.*, 2011:6).

The contribution of public provided green space planning (rather than private green space planning) also has a higher social value in terms of certainty of its continued existence as the persistence of privately provided green space may be less secure (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:193). For example, wealthy neighbourhoods might be more prone to losing private green space due to infill densification as well as

the paving of front gardens, thus fewer private green spaces are secured and given, since privately owned green spaces can be erased or changed by the owners as they please. Developing and rural communities have higher density housing schemes, also inhibiting the future provision of green space planning, unless they are included in rural planning and housing projects like that of the RDP scheme (refer to Chapter 2).

Psychological access is also a valuable aspect regarding green space planning and relates to PGS being attractive (or not), to be safe for potential users and the fulfilment of the purpose for visiting a PGS (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:105).

Given the high incidence of crime in South Africa (a developing country in which about half of the population resides in rural areas (Campbell *et al.*, 2008:4)), safety is also a key criterion in choosing and using public green space (Ward *et al.*, 2009:54) as mentioned above by Shackleton and Blair (2013:105). With more open, maintained green spaces, a visual space is created that looks cleaner and more carefully planned. Reducing densely vegetated green spaces minimizes the possibility and opportunity for criminals to hide (Walton *et al.*, 2011:14) and therefore provides for better safety within the green space.

The creation of green spaces with the adequate and efficient presence of on-site staff, maintenance and management decreases public safety fears regarding crime and vandalism in parks (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:110) and as a result of effective maintenance, coordinated management, public participation and user responsibility, secure and attractive green spaces within sustainable communities are provided (Baycan-Levent, 2007:5) with baseline data emerged from pilot engagements in Riemvasmaak in the Northern Cape and Muyexe Village in Giyani, Limpopo as compiled and piloted by the CRDP (2009:3).

The provision of human green spaces is also conducive to good behaviour, limiting children and young adults from partaking in negative behaviour like criminal activities, underage drinking, drugs and fighting associated with open spaces in townships (Walton *et al.*, 2011:32). Human-made green space rather allows these children and young adults to embrace nature and its associated recreational functions, inhibiting their partaking in these negative activities and bad habits.

It is vital for communities to include green space planning as part of any regeneration initiative in order to successfully plan lively places (House of Commons (2003:9); Swanwick *et al.* (2003:104). Green space planning that lack any form of regeneration or improvement is perceived as unsafe and therefore create a poor image, resulting in the lack of investment potential and possibilities (House of Commons, 2003:9). In creating safer spaces through green initiatives and approaches, potential for investors will

rise, potentially contributing to more lively places and green spaces and overall qualitative rural communities.

4.9 Collaborate: Lively place and green space planning relevance in rural communities

This chapter on the defining, planning and creating of green spaces and the preceding chapter on the planning of lively places can be seen as two parallel and supportive concepts with regards to one another. As mentioned (and therefore supporting this previous statement) in the previous section on the role of green space planning in creating lively places (section 4.7) lively place planning aims at providing places for and by the people whereas green space planning aims at providing safe and natural functions for people – an element regarded as key in order for lively place planning to be regarded as ‘successful’.

This section will therefore aim to collaborate and intertwine these different yet supplementary concepts with the focus and relevance to be completely diverted and focused on the premise of local rural communities – i.e. identifying the applicability of previously discussed lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies in addressing social challenges (such as safety and security) in rural communities.

In order to address the lack of quality in rural communities (as a result of numerous challenges faced – refer to Table 4) social challenges should be the target. These social challenges could be addressed by means of implementing best practice approaches and international successful approaches and initiatives regarding lively place and green space planning (to be discussed, evaluated, measured and determined in subsequent Chapters 5 and 6), adopted to address the unique rural challenges.

In order to initiate a successful comparative study in terms of the international and local approaches (lively place planning – Chapter 3) and case studies (green space planning – Chapter 4) to be done in Chapters 5 and 6 respectively, the context (as mentioned in the introductory section of this chapter) needs to be focused in order to determine the applicability of the previously discussed lively place planning approaches in terms of addressing the challenges primarily faced by rural communities.

This section therefore aims to comprehensively combine the theory discussed in Chapters 2 (rural communities and development), 3 (lively place planning) and 4 (green space planning) to create a rural based background and basis for the empirical investigation to follow in subsequent chapters. This section places the focus of lively place planning and green space planning on the rural realm as introduction to the following empirical chapters aimed at identifying (Chapters 5 and 6) and applying (Chapter 7) successful international theories and local approaches in order to determine how these

successful approaches to lively place planning and case studies of green space planning can address the social challenges faced in rural communities (discussed and tabled in Chapter 2). These identified successful approaches will be compared in order to determine best practices regarding the creation of 'lively and green public places' in rural communities (refer to Chapter 9 for the detailed recommendation). These best practices will then be locally evaluated based on two local pilot tests as a means of improving the quality of their community and overall quality of life by improving and/or addressing social challenges faced to be applied in the primary research case study of Vaalharts in Chapter 7.

4.9.1 Background: Rural challenges and lively place and green space planning

As discussed in detail in Chapter 2, rural communities are defined as sparsely populated areas with various natural elements present (farms, natural resources) with small towns dispersed through these natural areas (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:21). Therefore the presence of various unused open spaces exists, with these desolate areas mostly regarded as unsafe and unfriendly in terms of human attraction and presence, especially depending on the time of day (Statistics South Africa, 2011:8) as a "fear of crime" (Statistics South Africa, 2011:2) is prevalent in such areas with a lack of human presence as a reason for these safety and security threats (Loudier & Dubois, 2001:25).

With about half of South Africa's population living in rural areas (Campbell *et al.*, 2008:4), the concept of developing rural areas is not only an approach, but a necessity. Veenhoven and Ehrhardt (1995:3) provide a direct potential for lively place planning in rural areas when including that rural communities experience an overall lack of quality living environments and therefore life. Rural development aims at improving quality of life in rural areas (Farber, 2009:22 – also refer to Table 2, Glossary) whilst lively place planning and green space planning aim at addressing the quality which draws people to places (i.e. its liveability - Loudier & Dubois, 2001:6) as well as providing and improving the sense of quality through the presence of maintained and managed spaces, facilities and amenities (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:121).

As mentioned in Chapter 2, new and innovative approaches to rural development should receive more attention (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:4) based on the current lack of development in rural communities (NSDP, 2006:39). Numerous challenges and issues within rural communities provide for difficult planning and development environments. These challenges include conditions directly linked to living sound and happy lives (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:3) – conditions also directly linked to lively place and green space planning. Rural challenges include health care,

social exclusion, social provision (functions and activities), poverty, safety and security, poor living conditions and accessibility amongst others (refer to Table 4 summarizing rural social challenges). When comparing these challenges to the theoretical aims and purposes of planning for lively places and spaces (refer to Chapters 3 and 4 for detailed discussions regarding lively place planning and green space planning) these challenges are (directly or indirectly) included as core aspects of lively place and green space planning – creating better environments, social cohesion, including the public, addressing their needs, including the inhabitants as part of maintenance, management and creation (planting, building, decorating, etc.) of public and green spaces.

4.9.2 Evaluating the concept of lively place planning in terms of rural development

As mentioned by the ISRDS (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:2) in Chapter 2, the pervasiveness of poverty and poor service delivery in rural communities constrains the development of the country overall (about half of the South African population lives in these poverty-stricken, poor service delivery communities (Campbell *et al.*, 2008:4)).

In order to improve development, new innovative and creative approaches to rural development should be developed to provide what previously failing rural development projects (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:2) aimed to accomplish: quality and sustainable living environments with good economic potential and growth (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:19), (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:29). In order to do so, social challenges (as defined and discussed in Chapter 2) should be reviewed, understood in terms of the local rural reality and planned for, based on the needs and inputs of the rural inhabitants.

As mentioned and tabled in Chapter 2, Table 3, certain concepts are included within the concept of social (social capital, society/people, social services and political factors). Based on this table, it can therefore be concluded that in order for social development to be successful or to create a socially viable community, certain factors need to be included and (in terms of rural development) planned for to create a living and working environment regarded as socially sound (NSDP, 2006:5). These factors include the planning and inclusion of cultural relevancy, local needs, quality of life, social networks and benefits, services (food, water, transport, shelter, safety and security, etc.) and employment (amongst others) and are all important factors and challenges specific to that of rural communities with high priority and rurally-unique challenges including inequality (social exclusion of women and children in rural communities (Gopaul, 2006:73)), vulnerability issues (poverty, health, living conditions (Cannon, 2005?:36) and limited access (to health, safety, employment and educational services (Campbell *et al.*, 2008:3 and Gopaul, 2006:20)).

Based on the above-mentioned factors needed for social planning and development (see Chapter 2, Section 2.1.2.1) it is evident that these determining factors are directly similar to rural specific challenges as discussed in Chapter 2, Section 2.1.2.2 and tabled in Table 4. A parallel line can therefore be drawn wherein the social dimension of planning addresses those challenges regarded as important issues in rural communities, and those considered as constraints in terms of the development of the entire country (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:2).

The social dimension of planning was introduced as the third equal dimension needed for sustainable development alongside the environmental and economic dimensions (Mulalic, 2004:4) in order to include people and therefore human inputs and aspects (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:16) in planning and social development in order to address local needs and cultural contexts (Scoones, 2009:9).

When referring to Chapters 3 (lively place planning) and 4 (green space planning), it is evident that lively place planning and green space planning are both innovative and controversial planning processes aimed at placing people in focus (i.e. up-side down planning) (Soholt, 2004:8). This statement is substantiated by the theoretical derivatives where both of these individual yet similar planning processes place undeniable emphasis on the PUBLIC – i.e. creating useable public functions (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:9) grounded on the local needs (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:111) and soliciting human lived experience (Harrison & Dourish, 1996:67).

Because of the important grounding of lively place and green space planning on the local needs, it is evident that this bottom-up approach (first planning for the needs and behaviour of the people, then develop and plan the buildings accordingly – Soholt (2004:8)) is essential regarding rural planning in order to understand the unique, rural-specific challenges (as tabled in Table 4 and shortly summarized above) faced by these individuals and communities.

As mentioned above, social planning and rural challenges are parallel concepts in the sense that social planning is a human-driven (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:18), needs-based (Soholt, 2004:8) planning approach and rural challenges are social challenges or issues (also referred to as vulnerability issues by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:34) that arise due to the lack of adequate and successful social aspects i.e. social capital (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:34), services, equality (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:20), and exclusion (van der Ploeg *et al.*, 2000:394), etc. In short: social planning provides and plans for what is lacking in rural communities – quality societies. As discussed in Chapters 3 and 4, lively place planning and green space planning are forms or approaches regarded or included as social planning approaches. This

statement is substantiated by the collaborative importance of planning FOR the people BY the people within these approaches – thus proving them to be social planning approaches.

This therefore substantiates the overall objective of this research aimed at addressing these social challenges specific to rural communities by planning for (and improving) lively places and green spaces within rural communities (refer to Chapter 1, Section 1.4). This section proves the undeniable correspondence and visible independence regarding rural (social) challenges and social planning like lively place planning and green space planning.

As mentioned, rural communities are unique in various ways and the challenges experienced and the resources available differ substantially from those of urban communities (which most of the previously discussed lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies plan for). This is substantiated by Scoones (2009:2) mentioning “...how different people in different places live”. Even though most lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies discussed are based on urban development, the relevance of the lively place and green space planning theory is inevitable in terms of rural development with livelihood approaches able to be applied to “everything” (according to Scoones (2009:8)) including livestock, forestry, agriculture, health, urban development and more. Rural communities still remain unique and challenging and therefore not all approaches to lively place and green space planning case studies (Chapters 3 and 4) will be applicable. Chapters 5 and 6 therefore aim to determine which of the international and local approaches and case studies are successful in terms of lively place and green space planning. The remainder of this chapter aims to discuss and clarify the relevance of lively place and green space planning in being regarded as successful and applicable in terms of addressing or solving rural specific social challenges (as discussed and tabled in Table 4).

4.9.3 Success aspects in terms of rural development

As mentioned previously, the term ‘rural challenges’ is synonymous to social challenges or issues as well as to human vulnerability issues (as referred to by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1), 2000:34). As stated by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1) (2000:34) these challenges in rural communities arise due to the lack of certain successful and adequate social aspects like social capital (trust, norms and networks), social services (food, water, shelter, health, education, transport, safety and security), equality (equal life chances between urban and rural, social security, gender equality and income equality (Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:7)) and social exclusion (van der Ploeg *et al.*, 2000:394 – also refer to Gopaul (2006:69) illustrating the

practical example of Umgababa in KwaZulu-Natal (to be discussed as pilot test in Chapter 6) displaying social exclusions as "...a major challenge").

In order to successfully address these unique and consisting rural challenges, a sound living, working and playing community (NSDP, 2006:5) needs to be planned for or created through the correct and applicable implementation of lively place and green space planning (theory discussed in chapters 3 and 4 and empirical application and success to be discussed and identified in Chapters 5 and 6). The success aspects regarding this lively place and green space planning in terms of addressing rural challenges include the planning for and inclusion of aspects (as discussed in the theoretical chapters describing the main focuses and objectives of lively place planning and green space planning) such as cultural relevancy, local needs, quality of life, social networks and benefits, services (food, water, transport, shelter, safety and security, etc.) and employment (all of which are regarded as important factors and challenges specific to that of rural communities like inequality (social exclusion of women and children in rural communities (Gopaul, 2006:73)), vulnerability issues (poverty, health, living conditions (Cannon, 2005?:36) and limited access (to health, safety, employment and educational services (Campbell *et al.*,2008:3 and Gopaul, 2006:20)).

This section determines specific aspects to be included as basis to determine whether these theoretically successful approaches (or aspects of approaches) or case studies can also be successful regarding rural development and especially in terms of addressing social challenges (all of which are discussed and identified in detail in Chapter 2). These aspects to be regarded as 'basis' are aspects included in rural development programmes and/or initiatives aimed at improving rural life as well as other lively place and green space planning elements applicable to rural social challenge addressing.

As mentioned in the introductory section of this chapter, one of the main reasons for challenges like safety and security, social exclusion and inaccessibility in rural communities is that of vastly unused open spaces with no human attraction and presence needed to create a feeling of belonging, socializing and safety. In Chapter 3, section 3.2.1 the creation of a successful public place (an accessible and inviting space provided with a variety of well maintained and managed functions, activities and attractions with a unique identity and flexibility supported by good visibility (Baltimore City Department of Planning, 2010:170 and Worpole & Knox, 2007:9 – refer to Chapter 5 section 5.2.1.1)) was discussed. This section includes certain main features (identified by Worpole and Knox (2007:9)) needed to create a successful green space and lively place, serving as aspects to be included in planning for spaces to create humanly attractive places attracting human presence and therefore creating a sense of lasting safety. These features include:

- invitations by peers and others – embedded in social networks to encourage use, also supported by Hobart City Council (2011:1) mentioning the importance of creating invitations for a wider range of user groups to create useful and sociable spaces;
- an exchange-based relationship in which the use of the space moves beyond traditional consumerism usage but rather move to participation regarding the exchange of goods and services – i.e. presence of people and economic activity to provide mere open spaces with function and activity and therefore prolonged human presence and safety.
- choreography of spaces by discreet and good management whilst still leaving room for self-organisation by the community and the people in order to create a place where the inhabitants have a sense of ownership and connectedness (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:9); and
- The concept of moving beyond the presence of, or focus on mono-cultures and rather encouraging diverse groups and various activities to be shared within these common public spaces.

These features directly correspond with the key aspects or values theoretically necessary to include in planning initiatives or projects aimed at creating lively places and green spaces.

As mentioned in Chapter 3 and defined in Table 2, rural development refers to policies and programmes that aim to improve the economy and quality of life in rural communities. In South Africa such programmes includes the RDF, ISRDS, CRDP, NSDP, Agenda 21 and the Constitution (amongst others). These approaches primarily aim at eradicating poverty, alleviating unemployment and meeting basic needs (refer to Table 8 for a summary of these frameworks and/or programmes).

In terms of addressing safety and security, these programmes include the following:

- Tourism (NSDP) - promoting tourism as potential catalyst for addressing safety and security through the development of visitor safety measures for enhanced experience;
- Social security (the Constitution) - providing each person with an annually revised right to social security;
- Environmental regulations (Agenda 21) – making trade and environment mutually supportive to prevent human health and safety being impaired or endangered through the promotion of a “culture of safety” (Agenda 21, 1992:57); and the establishment of safety nets for the most vulnerable households (Agenda 21, 1992:115);

When comparing the rural challenges (as discussed and summarized in Chapter 3) to the approaches and case studies regarding lively place and green space planning (discussed in detail in Chapters 3 and 4 respectively), it is evident that much of these green space planning case studies and lively place planning approaches correspond directly to the addressing or providing of areas (places) that are able

to improve rural social challenges (as was potentially identified and tabled in Table 4 opposing each identified rural challenge).

This is evident in and substantiated by South African and international approaches and case studies also implementing certain actions or initiatives aimed at addressing safety and security and other social challenges in rural communities. These approaches are discussed in detail in Chapter 3, and summarized in Tables 13, 14 and 15 which include programmes and legislative policies like the RDF, ISRDS and the CRDP as mentioned above).

These approaches aim at creating lively places to reduce and inhibit the potential of unsafe environments by means of creating better visibility of places (Baltimore City Department of Planning, 2010:170) and Loudier and Dubois (2001:6) with specific reference to CSIR (2000:252) emphasizing the importance of visible entrances and buildings as well as the contribution of maintained landscaping rather focusing on less than more to prevent and deter the potential for petty delinquency and crime (Loudier and Dubois, 2001:20).

4.9.4 Effect on safety and security of a rural area

This section aims at broadly identifying how these approaches and case studies (directly or indirectly) address or plan for improving the safety and security of an area. As mentioned and discussed in Chapter 2, safety and security has been identified as one of the primary social challenges experienced in rural communities. As stated in table 4 (Summary of rural social challenges) this challenge is also identified as one that can most definitely be potentially improved through lively place planning, as lively places create a sense of 'used space' (or lived experience as referred to by Harrison and Dourish (1996:67)), reducing the potential for unsafe activities. Therefore the effect of these approaches on addressing safety and security overall will be summarized.

The importance of planning for safe and secure communities can first be seen in the inclusion of 'safety and security' as primary rural social challenge (Table 4). It is further substantiated by case studies (to be discussed in Chapter 6) aimed at renewing rural townships that include "the provision of *security and social infrastructure* to create a safe and secure environment for residents to live, work and play in" as a key project objective (South African Cities Network (1), 2009:5). This supports the aim of lively place planning in creating places where people can live AND work (Philips, 2010:5) as discussed and referred to a number of times in Chapter 3.

Social infrastructure includes and/or refers to a variety of lively place planning elements as is discussed in detail in the preceding chapters. It includes basic services, education and social facilities identified not only as rural social challenges or lacks, but also included as aspects needed to create lively places. According to Worpole and Knox (2007:12) basic social infrastructure includes schools, medical

services, shops, transport connections and community facilities. TTRI (2009:65) and the ISRDS (2000:12) include community halls, recreation facilities and social investment as part of the social infrastructure concept; all of which are also key aspects found as a necessity for planning lively places (Chapter 3).

It can therefore be derived that the provision of these social aspects (social infrastructure also included as lively and successful place-making elements – Figure 2) can create safe and secure lively environments (for residents to work and live in).

When referring to Figure 2 regarding place-making elements (place regarded as a core concept in both lively place planning and green space planning) 'crime statistics' is included as measurement determining whether or not the key attribute regarding comfort and image is achieved in order to create a successful place. Other key aspects included in figure 2 similar to safety and security issues (as identified throughout the research - specific reference to Chapter 2) include evening use (people in rural communities' feeling of safety dependent on the time of day (Statistics South Africa, 2011:8), safe (feeling of "unsafe" because of a "...fear of crime" (Statistics South Africa, 2011:2) and accessible (growing distance or time from nearest police station (Statistics South Africa, 2011:21) places. This therefore substantiates the statement made in Table 4 that safety and security can "most definitely" be addressed and improved through lively place planning as all of these issues, challenges and fears regarding safety and security in rural communities (identified and discussed in Chapter 2 section 2.1.2.3) are all aspects aimed to be improved or created through lively place and green space planning.

After narrowing the focus of preceding chapters regarding lively place planning and green space planning and provision (Chapters 3 and 4 respectively) to that of rural communities (done in previous section 4.8 with associated subsections) the following chapters (Chapters 5 and 6) aim to empirically identify the best (and relevant) lively place planning approaches and green space planning case study approaches and/or initiatives based on their theory in order to identify best practices to be applied to the research case study of the Vaalharts in Chapter 7.

Chapter 5: International case studies of green space planning and approaches to lively place planning

5.1 Introduction

In Chapters 3 and 4, the theory regarding lively place planning and green space planning was discussed and the relevance and applicability in terms of addressing social challenges (as defined and discussed in Chapter 2 with specific reference to rural social challenges) was identified.

This Chapter aims to analyse the international approaches to lively place planning and green space planning as part of the empirical investigation by means of pilot tests. The practical execution of these approaches was investigated and measured in terms of aspects or 'success factors' needed (based on the theoretical aforesaid chapters) in order to determine whether or not these approaches correspond to the theoretical necessities needed for the successful planning of lively places and green spaces. This Chapter therefore aims to achieve the above-mentioned in terms of the international approaches discussed, whilst Chapter 6 will focus on the success of local approaches in terms of the measurement of its practical implementation regarding the theory.

In both international (Chapter 5) and local (Chapter 6) cases the objective is to determine the best practices and to identify whether or not these practices can be implemented in the local context to address social challenges of rural communities, as mentioned and discussed in Chapter 2, by testing and applying these best practices on the case study of the local Vaalharts area, as presented in Chapter 7.

5.2 International lively place planning: Approach analysis

This section will use the theory of lively place planning and place-making of Chapter 3 in order to determine key measurements needed in order to comply with the standards identified in previous theoretical chapters. The case studies (discussed in detail in chapter 3) will then be evaluated in terms of these measurements in order to determine whether or not these previously discussed approaches can be regarded as successful in terms of their practical execution of the lively place planning and place-making theory, from which best practices will also conclusively be derived. International approaches will therefore be described and evaluated based on their empirical approach linking theoretical objectives to successful implementation in practice.

5.2.1. Point of departure: planning lively places.

In order to evaluate the selected case studies as pilot tests, it should be clear what can be defined or regarded as successful lively places. In this sense, this research focused on three underlying and crucial concepts (public, place and lively – as discussed in detail in preceding theoretical chapters). These issues will form the foundation against which current international lively place planning case studies will be evaluated. First these concepts (public, place and lively) will be described to determine aspects needed to successfully create these concepts, after which these aspects will be listed as ‘measurements’ for the empirical analysis to be executed. The approaches will then be measured and/or evaluated in order to determine which of the necessary measurements are present, which will consequently determine their measurable success in terms of applying the necessary theoretical aspects in their practical implementations.

The methodology in terms of these evaluations can be summarized or introduced in the following steps:

1. Determine key components or aspects as derived from the theoretical discussions (Chapter 3) that can be regarded as core aspects of planning for lively places.
2. Summarize and group these key theoretical concepts and determine associated components to be applied as measurements or evaluation tools (Table 23 below).
 - a. Lively place planning has 11 identified measurements, therefore the applicable lively place planning approach will be evaluated in terms its score out of 11 – i.e. how many of the 11 measurements are present.
3. Table the different lively place planning approaches (as introduced and discussed in Chapter 3) to be evaluated (Table 24 below).
 - a. The measurement table as introduced in step 2 will be included in this table with a column included in which it will be identified (with an ‘X’) if this specific measurement is present in the approach.
 - b. The presence of these measurements is based on the previous detailed discussions regarding what the different approaches are, what they do, what they aim to do, how they are (or are to be) implemented and (in some cases) whether or not they are currently successful in their own environments. If it is stated or can be clearly derived that these measurements are included or present, the associated measurement of the applicable lively place planning approach will therefore be regarded as ‘successful’ and be marked with an ‘X’.
 - c. A third column will also be included to discuss these evaluations (i.e. why these approaches did or did not receive an ‘X’ and to what extent they can (overall) be regarded as successful.

4. The scores (i.e. number of measurements present in each lively place planning approach) will be further tabled and discussed in Table 27 and further analysed to determine what can be regarded as best practices – i.e. what initiatives or approaches were present that did include and plan for the measurements/ key theoretical concepts.
5. Based on the score (expressed as a percentage), all approaches scoring 50% or higher will be regarded as successful approaches.
6. The best practices (as discussed in step 5 above) of these successful lively place planning approaches (i.e. those that scored 50% or higher) will be used and conclusively applied to the two local pilot tests in Chapter 6 in order to determine their relevance and applicability on rural scale.
7. Furthermore, successes based on the determined rural relevance (Step 6) will then be empirically compared to the primary case study (Vaalharts) of this research. Finally, a summary will conclude how (successful) lively place and green space planning (i.e. including the measurements identified in step 2; successfully found (present) in approaches and case studies as evaluated in steps 3-4 and successfully scoring higher than 50% as determined in steps 5-6) can address social challenges determined in Chapter 2.

The same steps and actions will be taken for green space planning in section 5.3 of this study and will also be conveyed to and executed in the same manner for lively place approaches and green space planning case studies locally in the following Chapter 6.

The rest of this chapter (and Chapter 6) will therefore be granted to the execution of these above steps for lively place planning and green space planning internationally, starting with the first step in determining and discussing key components or aspects as measurements:

i. Measurement 1: 'Public'

As mentioned in Section 3.2.1 of Chapter 3 it is evident that the defining of 'public' is very complex and diverse and varies, based on different perceptions, different situations and varying needs. Therefore for the sake of this paper 'public' refers to any ordinary people (LDCE, 2003:1543) inhabiting the specific space and creating dimensions of lived experience and interaction within this space (Hobart City Council, 2011:1) i.e. any given person that uses the space for the function it is provided for. The specific case study will therefore be evaluated in terms of the level of public provision and how the public is included and planned for in terms of providing sufficient and efficient activities and functions through which interaction and lived experience are evoked.

ii. Measurement 2: Successful 'place'

An accessible and inviting space provided with a variety of well maintained and managed functions, activities and attractions with a unique identity and flexibility, supported by good visibility (Baltimore City Department of Planning, 2010:170 and Worpole & Knox, 2007:9). The approaches will therefore be regarded as successful places (i.e. marked with the 'X' as discussed in Step 3.a. above) in terms of specific aspects like whether this place is open and available for any user; if it shows unique and peculiar traits, activities, functions, facilities, etc. These places will also be regarded as successful in terms of whether or not these areas are well managed and if their facilities are well maintained and in good condition.

iii. Measurement 3: 'Lively'

Focus on the people (Soholt, 2004:8) as the process of lively place planning is a human-driven process (Hobart City Council, 2011:1). It focuses on the inclusion of the public in creating, managing and maintaining the space as a means to ensure their needs are met and to prevent declining use of spaces. In contributing to lively place planning versatile, diverse and integrative functions (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:9) should be provided which will attract people to be a part of this planning process and make them willing to engage in activities in order to create the lived experience (Harrison & Dourish, 1996:67) needed to provide a lively and public place. The case studies will thus be measured in terms of liveliness, taking into account if these places provide in the needs (social, physical and psychological) of the people regarding the presence of integrative, diverse and versatile functions and activities that evoke social interaction and integration as well as providing the feeling of human activity and presence throughout the day.

Therefore, for the purpose of this research and especially this chapter, the successful planning of lively places will be regarded as the planning of a **place** for all people where different **functions** and **activities** take place (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:9) based on the needs and inputs obtained through the **participative** inclusion of **the public** (inhabitants of the area) themselves, with good and sustainable **maintenance** and **managing** services or approaches included (either by inhabitants or public; or through external sources).

The following table groups these different concepts and their measurements in order to provide the basic analysis-tool to which the success of the case study approaches will be evaluated.

Table 23: Evaluation tool for lively place planning and place-making

THEORETICAL CONCEPT	ASPECTS AS MEASUREMENTS
PUBLIC	1. People/ Inhabitants included
	2. Lived experience/ Interaction
'PLACE'	3. Accessible
	4. Unique identity
	5. Visibility
	6. Maintenance and Management
	7. Attractions
LIVELY	8. Meets the needs of people
	9. Integrative
	10. Diverse activities
	11. Versatile functions

Source: Own creation (2013)

5.2.2 International case studies: Lively place planning and place-making

The following table indicates and briefly summarizes the main focuses of the approaches to lively place planning as discussed in Chapter 3. This table therefore aims to analyse whether or not these case studies successfully address and plan for lively places based on the theory regarding lively place planning (Chapter 3) according to the three main theoretical concepts captured in the analysis-tool.

This table also serves as an empirical evaluation wherein the different international lively place planning approaches (as theoretically introduced and discussed in Chapter 3) will be measured and evaluated based on whether or not above discussed and listed measurements are (efficiently) present in each approach.

Table 24: Approach analysis: Success and failure in terms of international lively place planning

APPROACH TO LIVELY PLACE PLANNING	SUCCESS OR FAILURE IN TERMS OF MEASUREMENTS - Checklist		DISCUSSION
TORONTO'S CREATIVE CITY PLANNING FRAMEWORK <i>Cross reference to theoretical introduction and discussion of following approaches: Chapter 3, subsection 3.2.2.1 (a)</i>			
Includes programmes such as <i>the Toronto Culture Plan</i> guiding cultural development and <i>Imagine Toronto</i> for economic enhancement through social opportunity and creative assets.	PUBLIC People/ Inhabitants included Lived experience/ Interaction	Successful X	Successful in terms of providing various cultural buildings for cultural purposes (music, ballet, art, etc.). Even though “opportunity for all” (Toronto, 2008:8) was identified as an underlying principle, the execution seems focused on one aspect (culture) and fails to deliver diverse and versatile functions for people not enlightened by cultural activities. The absence of including the public in creating these functions also enhances the failure to create a successful lively place as the concepts of ‘public’ and ‘lively’ (to some extent) are somewhat excluded.
	'PLACE' Accessible Unique identity Visibility Maintenance and Management Attractions	X X X X	
	LIVELY Meet the needs of people Integrative Diverse activities Versatile functions	X	
PROJECT FOR PUBLIC SPACES <i>Cross reference: Chapter 3, subsection 3.2.2.1 (b)</i>			
Informal development (e.g. local markets)	PUBLIC People/	X	In terms of including the ‘public’ this project is extremely successful with

<p>through community presence and participation as means to create vibrant and lively places attracting residents and visitors.</p>	<p>'PLACE'</p> <p>Inhabitants included Lived experience/ Interaction X</p> <p>Accessible Unique identity X Visibility Maintenance and Management Attractions X</p> <p>LIVELY</p> <p>Meet the needs of people Integrative X Diverse activities X Versatile functions X</p>	<p>“local entrepreneurship and the local intuitive” (Philips, 2010:23) as catalyst for citizen-driven place-making. Therefore also fairly successful in terms of ‘place’ (creating a unique identity based on local innovations and produce) and ‘lively’ IF these markets provide a variety of diverse and versatile functions and activities for all as they aim – “spaces... that everyone can use and enjoy...” (Project for Public Spaces, 2008:3).</p>
<p>CITY REPAIR PROJECT; includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Portland Public Place Master Plan; - Community Visioning - Village Building Convergence <p>Cross reference: Chapter 3, subsection 3.2.2.1 (c)</p>		
<p>Participation as key in creating lively places when converting a street intersection into a neighbourhood public square by allowing residents to paint and</p>	<p>PUBLIC</p> <p>People/ Inhabitants included X Lived experience/ Interaction X</p> <p>'PLACE'</p> <p>Accessible X</p>	<p>Referring to the previous definition of a ‘lively place’ this approach seems extremely successful in terms of enabling the community and residents to create a space based on their own unique combined ideas and needs. It holds a small variety of functions for</p>

<p>construct in the right of way including functions like a bulletin board, tea serving station and a playhouse.</p>	<p>LIVELY</p> <p>Unique identity X Visibility X Maintenance and Management X Attractions X Meet the needs of people X Integrative X Diverse activities Versatile functions X</p>	<p>different ages (tea, playhouse) but more varieties may be beneficial. Overall it can be regarded as very successful in terms of community participation, lively and inviting activities and functions for all managed and maintained by the community themselves. The provision of workshops and convergences contributes to the ensuring of quality, legally and practically possible places, functions and activities.</p>
<p>REGENERATION <i>Cross reference: Chapter 3, subsection 3.2.2.1 (d)</i></p>		
<p>Legibility, design and development of environment addressing crime and creating lively places – includes redelineating private and public spaces, closure of areas by a tree-lined avenue, restoring to grid layout, redesigning layout factors for better safety.</p>	<p>PUBLIC</p> <p>People/ Inhabitants included X Lived experience/ Interaction 'PLACE' Accessible X Unique identity Visibility X Maintenance and Management X Attractions LIVELY Meet the needs of people X Integrative X Diverse activities Versatile functions</p>	<p>Although the overall strategy aims at improving spaces and especially the security of those places, the lack of community input and participation is evident and can only be seen in terms of creating security agents preventing crime and identifying site damages for maintenance purposes. Upgrading or clear defining of different activities or functions is improved but there is no reference or inclusion of planning diverse and versatile functions within one space. Therefore, overall, this initiative rather focuses on upgrading physical aspects and issues experienced rather than transforming spaces into lively places.</p>

UPGRADING TRANSPORT SYSTEMS			
<i>Cross reference: Chapter 3, subsection 3.2.2.1 (e)</i>			
Cleaner and more efficient transport systems and surrounding environment to catalyse economic and social development; also includes the introduction of bicycle schemes in cities – “cycle culture” (Philips, 2010:12) and Bus Rapid Transit (Philips, 2010:13).	PUBLIC		As with the previous regeneration strategy, the upgrading of transport poses potential benefits for a mere aspect of lively places (as discussed in Chapter 3) i.e. accessibility. The definite lack or exclusion of ‘public’ and ‘place’ is evident and therefore the success of this approach in terms of creating lively places is limited or failing. It includes the public in terms of providing for (only) their travelling needs, therefore providing integration between different communities, shops and houses, employment, etc. by promoting better tools for transport and access.
		People/ Inhabitants included X	
		Lived experience/ Interaction	
	‘PLACE’		
		Accessible X	
		Unique identity	
		Visibility X	
		Maintenance and Management	
		Attractions	
		LIVELY	
	Meet the needs of people X		
	Integrative X		
	Diverse activities		
	Versatile functions		

Source: Own creation (2013).

The table analyses the approaches discussed in previous chapters. It identifies which of these international approaches were successful (or failed) in terms of the issues of measurement, obtained from the theoretical investigations (Chapter 3) regarding the planning and provision of lively places.

5.3 International green space planning: Case study analysis

This section will provide a short recap on the theory of planning for green spaces (detailed discussion and research done in Chapter 4). This will provide concise groundwork for green space planning to which the different approaches will be evaluated in terms of measurements determined in the subsequent section in order to determine whether or not the specific case studies are successful in creating green spaces in practice– as determined and required by theoretical objectives.

5.3.1. Point of departure: planning of green spaces

As was done in section 5.2 on international lively place planning, this subsection will also firstly aim to conclusively discuss the separate underlying concepts associated with and relevant to 'green space planning' (green, space, and private and public green space) – all concepts discussed in detail in preceding theoretical chapters, with specific reference to Chapter 4 on green space planning. The summary and collaboration of these different concepts or aspects regarding green space planning will serve as a basis or foundation against which current green space planning case studies will be measured to determine their success in practice. The following serves as a succinct description of the creation of green spaces, after which the key theoretical concepts with their corresponding aspects are to be implemented as measurements in order to determine the success of the pilot studies in terms of the theory regarding the planning of green spaces. The same methodology steps identified in subsection 5.2.1 will be used but with respect to green space planning case studies (introduced and discussed theoretically in Chapter 4 subsection 4.4.2) and therefore the evaluations are also done based on the detailed study of these case studies in order to determine and identify their trends.

i. Measurement 1: 'Green'

A parcel of land classified as a natural surface (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:188) with significant amounts of vegetation (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:104). Thus a space will be evaluated and regarded as successful if and when the space proves to include the presence and/or variety of vegetation as well as the maintaining and/or conservation of present natural (and indigenous) surfaces.

ii. Measurement 2: 'Public' and private green spaces

Refer to 'space' as the structural, geometrical qualities of a physical environment (Harrison & Dourish, 1996:67), physical facilities and functions – not yet a place as no lived experience is yet included (refer to Chapter 3, section 3.2.1 on the difference between 'space' and 'place' and the creation of a public place (also the summary to be found in this chapter, section 5.2.1.1).

Private: includes mostly gardens for the sole enjoyment of the owner and private social networking (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:193) – i.e. personal domestic garden (Swanwick *et al.*, 2003:97).

Public: Promotes integration in a way private gardens cannot; includes parks, forests, golf courses, sports fields and other open nature areas (McConnachie & Shackleton, 2009:244) accessible to the public.

For the purpose of this section and therefore the following discussions and chapters of this research, 'public green spaces' will only include public spaces (as identified above and in Chapter 4, section 4.2) with the exclusion of private gardens, as the purpose and aim of this research (refer to Chapter 1, section 1.4) focuses on addressing social issues of rural communities by planning for lively places and green PUBLIC spaces.

As presented in the previously determined lively place planning measurements, the successful presence of 'public' within green space planning is measured in terms of whether this place is accessible for any user and if it integrates the public in a variety of functions and possibilities in order to create a human presence and lived experience. Another important aspect is also whether or not the public is included by means of participating in the provision, creation and/or maintenance of these spaces.

iii. Measurement 3: 'Quality' green space

A parcel of land classified as a natural surface (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:188) with a sense of quality and the presence of several maintained facilities (Shackleton & Blair, 2013:107) and variety of functions (health, amenity, social, environmental - Lange *et al.*, 2007:245) – the 'glue' between buildings (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:121).

The evaluation will therefore be based on the physical appearance of these spaces – is it merely an open strip of land or grass; or are the facilities (buildings, restrooms, benches, vegetation, grass, etc.) managed and maintained, creating a sense of better safety as well?

Therefore, green space planning refers to the planning and/ or development of a specific parcel of accessible green (vegetated and natural surface) land presenting several quality functions and maintained facilities producing a sense of public inclusion, participation and lived experience; including well managed (Young, 2010:313), maintained (Young: 2010:317) and safe (Barbosa *et al.*, 2007:194) municipal parks, public gardens, cemeteries, churchyards, gardens associated with public buildings, and all school playing fields (also refer to Table 17 for different and various types of spaces included as 'green spaces' with the exclusion of private green space – domestic gardens).

The following table classifies and groups these key concepts and their corresponding aspects together to provide the basic measurement-tool to which the success of approaches will be measured accordingly.

Table 25: Evaluation tool for green space planning

THEORETICAL CONCEPT	ASPECTS AS MEASUREMENTS
GREEN	
	1. Vegetation
	2. Natural surface
	3. Various types in terms of diversity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Municipal parks - Public gardens - Cemeteries - Churchyards - Public building gardens - School playing fields
PUBLIC	
	4. Accessible
	5. Integrative
	6. Public inclusion and participation
	7. Lived experience in terms of attracting regular human presence and activity
QUALITY	
	8. Managed and maintained facilities
	9. Functions
	10. Safety

Source: Own creation (2013)

5.3.2 International case studies: Green space planning

The following table indicates and briefly summarizes all the approaches to green space planning discussed in Chapter 4. This table therefore aims to determine whether or not these case studies successfully address and plan for green spaces based on the theoretical objectives regarding green space planning (Chapter 4) as summarized above in section 5.3.1.

Table 26: Case study analysis: Success and failure in terms of international green space planning

APPROACH TO GREEN SPACE PLANNING	SUCCESS OR FAILURE IN TERMS OF MEASUREMENTS - Checklist		DISCUSSION
<p>EUROPE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - European Environment Agency - English Nature (EN) <p><i>Cross reference to theoretical introduction and discussion of following approaches: Chapter 4, subsection 4.4.2 (a)</i></p>			
<p>Providing accessible green spaces in urban areas within 15 min walking distance or (recommended) less than 300m from home</p>	<p>GREEN</p> <p>Vegetation</p> <p>Natural surface</p> <p>Various types</p> <p>PUBLIC</p> <p>Accessible</p> <p>Integrative</p> <p>Public inclusion and participation</p> <p>Lived experience</p> <p>QUALITY</p> <p>Managed and maintained facilities</p> <p>Functions</p> <p>Safe</p>	<p>Successful</p> <p>X</p> <p>X</p>	<p>In terms of the above-mentioned summary or defining of green space planning, this approach is successful in terms of recommending the addressing of access to green spaces. Although they also propose and recognize the creation of urban green spaces (human created green spaces as opposed to naturally existing green spaces) to improve quality of life, no practical guidelines or initiatives are mentioned on HOW to establish these green spaces and therefore not necessarily fails in creating green spaces, but lacks the necessary guiding and support of green space planning.</p>

NETHERLANDS				
<i>Cross reference: Chapter 4, subsection 4.4.2 (b)</i>				
The Dutch government requires sufficient opportunities for access to outdoor recreation, providing 67% and 83% of neighbourhoods with recreational opportunities (walking and cycling respectively).	GREEN	Vegetation		As mentioned above, this opportunity or initiative accounts for the accessibility and functionality of open spaces and also contributes to creating public recreation opportunities, but other important aspects (variety of functions for all, the 'green' element and other more contributory aspects regarding use by the public (sitting, eating, relaxing, interacting, etc.) are neither planned for nor provided. This approach is therefore a successful 'starting phase' with the potential to create a green space as defined and explained by theory.
		Natural surface	X	
		Various types		
	PUBLIC	Accessible	X	
		Integrative	X	
		Public inclusion and participation	X	
		Lived experience		
	QUALITY	Managed and maintained facilities		
		Functions		
		Safe	X	
ENGLAND				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Biodiversity strategy b) New Labour Government c) Urban White Paper (refer to Table 18 for specific initiatives included) d) Funding schemes e) Urban Green Spaces Taskforce f) PPG17: Planning for Open Space, Sport and Recreation g) Public Service Agreement 8 h) Green Flag Award 				
<i>Cross reference: Chapter 4, subsection 4.4.2 (c)</i>				
a) Ensuring biodiversity conservation with ease of access as one of the main	GREEN	Vegetation	X	As seen, England includes a wide variety of programmes and initiatives, therefore introducing a multidisciplinary
		Natural	X	

<p>indicators directing this strategy.</p>		<p>and multifunctional approach to green space planning (refer to Scoones (2009:10) identifying social planning as one with multiple outcomes and influences; as well as SAPS (2011:4) introducing an integrated, holistic and multidisciplinary approach to lively place planning). The success of such an approach in England, is that each of them focuses on specific and mostly multiple aspects of public green space planning which, therefore, provides England with a successful overall approach and practical implementation of theory in terms of the following inclusions or aspects addressed:</p>
<p>b) Launching of reports evaluating the management, funding and quality of urban green space planning (Wilson & Hughes, 2011:208).</p>	<p>PUBLIC</p>	<p>b. Recognition of the importance of more targeted approaches improving quality and achieving a more integrated governance approach to initiate a cultural mind shift on what green spaces and parks are for in order to enhance their use and importance.</p>
<p>c) Set measurements to improve the quality of urban green space planning by various initiatives and programmes mostly focused on providing, improving and/or restoring parks and open spaces.</p>	<p>QUALITY</p>	<p>c. Initiatives and programmes addressing the issue regarding the lack of green space planning or the degrading quality thereof. Environmental action taken by voluntary groups and enabled or funded by these programmes and/or other funding schemes provides potential for including the local community in upgrading by encouraging and empowering communities to get involved themselves and as such, create space with a raised standard.</p>
<p>d) Funding schemes ensuring funds to be allocated and used only for parks and green space improvements.</p>	<p>surface Various types Accessible Integrative Public inclusion and participation Lived experience Managed and maintained facilities Functions Safe</p>	<p>X</p>
<p>e) Provides recommendations in order to improve the provision, design, management and maintenance of current green spaces</p>		
<p>f) National objectives set out for open spaces, sport and recreation.</p>		
<p>g) Aimed to deliver cleaner, safer, greener public spaces and improve the quality of the built environment through CABE Space providing</p>		

<p>good practice guidance and implementing participative local authorities regarding quality and quantity, planning and design improvement.</p> <p>h) The Green Flag serves as motivation for authorities to provide green spaces specifically including community involvement, facilities, management, maintenance and sustainability.</p>		<p>Funding still has certain limitations and therefore also provides for certain potential issues regarding sustainable and long-term viable green spaces.</p> <p>f. The supporting of urban renaissance and especially the objective of promoting social inclusion and community cohesion as well as health, well-being and sustainable development, contribute largely to the aim and function of green space planning. The inclusion of planning policies ensures needs of local communities are included in green space regeneration and that green spaces are created with community engagement on various levels and aspects in order to achieve success.</p> <p>g and h. When providing direct guidelines for creating green spaces it becomes part of the planning principles and frameworks. It also ensures certainty regarding what green spaces are and how to plan for them, empowering municipalities and local community to engage in the planning and creating of successful green spaces. With the 'Green Flag' initiatives they ensure that green spaces are not simply provided, but that the providers thoroughly research and understand the guidelines for creating these spaces in order to ensure they create successful spaces qualifying them to obtain this prestigious award.</p>
---	--	---

KÄFERBERG (SWITZERLAND) - 'Freihaltezone' (open space protection zone) <i>Cross reference: Chapter 4, subsection 4.4.2 (c)</i>			
Provides and protects valuable habitats and fulfills ecological and agricultural production functions (Lange et al., 2007:246). Provides for urban recreation (walking, jogging, cycling) easily accessible by public transport. The integration of the local population's input and needs into the decision-making process (Lange et al., 2007:253) by means of surveys.	GREEN	Vegetation X	The most successful aspect of this approach is the inclusion of public inputs, ideas and preferences. Combined with an accessible and multi-functional green space this approach significantly and successfully includes all of the measurements regarding 'Green' and "Public'. The 'Quality' aspect can also be regarded as successful. Even though no specific steps have been taken in terms of applying management, maintenance and safety service, the on-site presence of the farmer provides a sense of management and safety, but is not included in the checklist as this is not specifically included in the approach but merely indirectly noticeable.
		Natural surface X	
		Various types X	
	PUBLIC	Accessible X	
		Integrative X	
		Public X	
	QUALITY	inclusion and participation X	
		Lived experience X	
		Managed and maintained facilities X	
		Functions X	
Safe			
UNITED NATIONS (UN) – SWEDEN, INDIA, PHILIPPINES - ecoBUDGET <i>Cross reference: Chapter 4, subsection 4.4.2 (e)</i>			
Implementing 'environmental budgeting' aimed to plan, control, monitor, report on, and evaluate the consumption of natural resources (such as climate stability, air quality, land, water, raw materials, and biodiversity). This is created	GREEN	Vegetation X	Practical implementations included focuses on the continuous inclusion of the public; demarcation of green vending zones forcing hawkers to sell in environmentally safe areas; addressing of environmental issues and the possibility of addressing poverty alleviation. Although only three (3) measurements
		Natural surface X	
	Various types		
	PUBLIC	Accessible	
		Integrative	

<p>by mirroring the cycles or phases of financial budgets in order to also naturally become part of local authority routines to improve sustainable performance of local governments.</p>	<p>QUALITY</p> <p>Public X inclusion and participation Lived experience Managed and maintained facilities Functions Safe</p>	<p>are included or addressed in the ecoBudget, the emphasis and success of this approach lies within the ‘How’ regarding the implementation thereof. The examples (Sweden, India and Philippines) prove that this approach rather focuses on the protection of current green areas (natural resources) rather than creating green spaces accessible and functional to the public, therefore being unsuccessful in terms of green space planning (as per theory).</p>
<p>UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN - Native landscaping <i>Cross reference: Chapter 4, subsection 4.4.2 (f)</i></p>		
<p>Focuses on the economic benefit of green space planning by means of planting only local plants in green spaces (less expensive, lower costs, etc).</p>	<p>GREEN</p> <p>Vegetation X Natural X surface Various types</p> <p>PUBLIC</p> <p>Accessible Integrative Public inclusion and participation Lived experience</p> <p>QUALITY</p> <p>Managed and maintained facilities Functions Safe</p>	<p>Although the sustainable aspect of economy is included, and the provision of green infrastructure (e.g. trees) is initiated, it might also seem relatively successful in terms of theory regarding the provision of ‘green’. Other aspects focusing on public use, diverse functions and amenities, and accessibility are not included and addressed. Therefore the approach is successful in increasing ‘green’, but not necessarily providing space attracting human activity i.e. not in terms of measurements corresponding to ‘Public’ and ‘Quality’. As was the situation with the ecoBudget, the native landscaping approaches primarily aim at creating (and protecting) native and local vegetation without particularly including or planning for human activities and social interaction and</p>

		functions i.e. unsuccessful with regards to theory.		
NORTH AMERICA - Urban forestry <i>Cross reference: Chapter 4, subsection 4.4.2 (g)</i>				
Addressing wider social challenges by managing urban forests and green space planning, producing public benefits and environmental quality. Also includes responsibilities like maintaining and replacing street trees, enhancing public health, managing parks and environmental services	GREEN Vegetation X Natural X surface Various X types	This approach values already existing natural green spaces by implementing managing and maintenance aspects which improve public attraction and benefits i.e. better health and more quality spaces. The inclusion of public needs and inputs as well as the provision of or planning for activities and diverse functions are not included and therefore (according to the theory regarding green space planning – as summarized above) this is not completely successful or inclusive.		
	PUBLIC Accessible Integrative Public inclusion and participation Lived experience			
	QUALITY Managed X and maintained facilities Functions Safe			
	NETHERLANDS, UK, BELGIUM - Urban Habitats Project <i>Cross reference: Chapter 4, subsection 4.4.2 (h)</i>			
	Collaboration of these approaches in order to develop new, broader, inclusive ways of creating and maintaining urban habitats (high-quality green spaces in urban areas) with increasing public		GREEN Vegetation Natural X surface Various types	In terms of theory, green spaces (natural or human) are present and/or improved in a public inclusive and participative manner. Therefore success is achieved in terms of green space, public and planning with a wider and therefore more inclusive perspective, enabling more diverse
			PUBLIC Accessible X	

involvement and awareness.	Integrative	X	perspectives, inputs and ideas. Despite these successes, the reference or inclusion of activities and various functions is not mentioned and therefore influences the level of success achieved by the project.	
	Public	X		
	inclusion and participation			
	Lived experience	X		
	QUALITY			
	Managed and maintained facilities	X		
Functions				
	Safe			

Source: Own creation (2013)

The table analyses the approaches discussed in previous chapters. It identifies which of these international approaches were successful (or failed) in terms of the issues of measurement, obtained from the theoretical investigations (Chapter 4) regarding the planning and provision of green spaces.

5.4 Discussion and implications of findings

This section will table and summarise the results of the evaluations completed in sections 5.2 and 5.3 above and is the execution of step 4 of the methodology steps in subsection 5.2.1 (i.e. counting the number of measurements present). It also delivers comments and identifies best practices relevant that can and will be applied to the primary local case study captured in this research (Vaalharts) as presented in Chapter 7.

Table 27: Success summary - International lively place planning

Pilot test	Scores in terms of measurements	Comments and Best Practices
Toronto's Creative City Planning Framework	5 out of 11	It was most successful in terms of planning a successful 'Place', but key 'Lively' and 'public' components like diversity and versatile functions, with the inclusion of public participation are lacking. Best practice is the creation of a vibrant and unique place that is well managed and maintained with the provision of various attractions.
Project for Public	7 out of 11	The highest success rates are in terms of 'public' and 'lively'.

Spaces		<p>The best practice is based on the high priority placed on public inclusion and participation – the creation of ordained local markets and other informal developments. These can become an even more successful practice if elements of maintenance, management and accessibility for all are ensured and enhanced.</p>
City Repair Project	10 out of 11	<p>Highly successful in terms of all three key aspects. It lacks a sense of diverse activities for all.</p> <p>This can overall be regarded as a successful practice, if and when the community leads the initiative in a sustainable and guided manner.</p>
Regeneration	6 out of 11	<p>The success of the regeneration strategy might seem extremely relative because of its focus on improving current spaces, not the creation of community-included projects for creating places. It mostly lacks the human aspects – participation, diverse activities and functions, attractions, lived experience, etc. whilst physical aspects of the space are addressed, i.e. Accessibility, visibility, maintenance, etc.</p> <p>The best practice lies in the sense that planning for and including the upgrading of current space (especially their security, accessibility and maintenance) is a necessity, although it cannot stand alone.</p>
Upgrading of Transport Systems	5 out of 11	<p>As mentioned in the measuring table previously, this approach should not be included as a singular approach to create lively places. Therefore the success is limited to a certain aspect of ‘lively’ and ‘place’ – accessibility and its associated impacts.</p> <p>However, the best practice lies in the evidence that, even though not successful on its own as a lively and public place planning approach, it received a 50% rating when simply focusing on a single subdivision of an aspect of a key concept in planning for lively public places – i.e. emphasizing the importance of including the upgrading or provision of accessibility and/or efficient and affordable transport opportunities within any space.</p>

Source: Own creation (2013)

In the same manner as Table 27 above, the number of measurements was determined in table 25 (i.e. 10 measurements). Then (as per step 4 of the methodology steps discussed in subsection 5.2.1) the number of measurements successfully present in each of the international green space planning case studies was counted and expressed as a score out of 10 with relevant comments and discussions in order to identify each study's best practice elements.

Table 28: Success summary - International green space planning

Pilot test	Scores in terms of measurements	Comments
Europe (EEA and EN)	2 out of 10	Only successful in terms of addressing access to green spaces, but excluding the importance of other public, green and quality measures. The approach cannot be seen as a best practice when only planning for one aspect of green spaces.
The Netherlands	5 out of 10	This approach receives similar critique as above with the focus on improving access and not green space planning overall. However this approach includes access on a recreational, publicly inclusive manner by providing safe and integrative opportunities for walking and cycling. Best practice in this approach lies in the fact that it is a good starting point for creating public green spaces. The inclusion of better 'quality' and 'green' aspects would suffice in uplifting the approach's success ability.
England	8 out of 10	A very successful approach in terms of including necessary and relevant 'green', 'public' and 'lively' aspects. The success factors of best practices in England lie within their diversity in terms of approaches, projects and objectives. The inclusion of eight (8) different projects or approaches to creating green spaces ensures that most aspects needed for creating successful public green space planning (i.e. 'green', 'public' and 'quality' and their corresponding measurements) or included in various projects that can be regarded as 'phases' are contributory to the overall vision of public green space planning. Specific (and unique) best practices include the provision of an 'incentive based approach' – i.e. the green flag award in which people are motivated to create quality green spaces worth of the award, rather than merely providing green open spaces.
Käferberg (Switzerland)	8 out of 10	Equally successful in terms of the successful provision of necessary green aspects with regards to public green spaces as England. Whereas England's overall approaches lack lived experience and adequate functions, Käferberg lacks the DIRECT inclusion of

		<p>management and safety (although these aspects are still indirectly provided in terms of permanent on-site farmers).</p> <p>The best practice noted in this approach is the surveys distributed to a wide and diverse range of users to exactly determine the community's needs and wishes in terms of green space planning in order to compile and plan successful spaces in terms of what the people want whilst protecting the natural environment and promoting a safe and accessible recreational environment for any user.</p>
<p>UN (Sweden, India, Philippines - ecoBUDGET)</p>	<p>3 out of 10</p>	<p>ecoBUDGET is, as was the concern of previous unsuccessful approaches, an approach directed at monitoring, controlling and protecting natural resources as opposed to planning for public green spaces.</p> <p>Practices that can be noted are the continuous inclusion of the public and the creation of a standard to be included as part of local authority routines to protect (potentially successful planned) green spaces.</p>
<p>University of Wisconsin (Native landscaping)</p>	<p>3 out of 10</p>	<p>The economic use of green spaces is not included as a primary necessity for the successful planning of green spaces, but by including the sole vegetation of local plants within best practices, numerous unmentioned but potentially relevant aspects may be addressed i.e. protection of local vegetation against endangerment, potential tourist attraction, sustainable environment, etc.</p>
<p>North America (Urban forestry)</p>	<p>4 out of 10</p>	<p>The lack of including or providing for public activities and/or functions hampers the mere protection of green spaces to be regarded as successful. Even though the replacing of street trees and management are good features and need to be considered in the planning of green spaces, the importance of 'public' cannot be excluded and should remain one of the primary aspects of green space planning and provision.</p>
<p>Netherland, UK, Belgium (Urban Habitats Project)</p>	<p>6 out of 10</p>	<p>As mentioned previously in terms of the success of England's diverse approaches and initiatives, the collaboration of different ideas, approaches and methods is successful based on the generating of a broader and therefore more accurate concept of best practice – what works successfully and what does not. The importance (as is lacking in this approach) of including functions and provoking human activities and interaction are key aspects of successful green space planning and should therefore not be overlooked.</p>

Source: Own creation (2013)

5.5 Chapter conclusion

As can be seen in the summarizing sections 5.2.1 and 5.3.1 determining the success of the approaches regarding the planning of lively places planning and green spaces respectively (according to the predetermined measurements consisting of a number of the key elements (according to theory) needed to create lively places and green spaces), the key aspects are very similar and corresponding.

This part of the study investigated different case studies and their corresponding planning approaches aimed at providing or creating these green spaces and lively places on an international front and evaluated each of their successes (or failures) in terms of theoretical measurements (refer to Tables 24, 26, 27 and 28). The following chapter similarly investigates and determines success of lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies regarding previously determined measurements with regards to local (South African) approaches. Subsequently, Chapter 7 will narrow the focus to local rural communities in particular. This will serve as an introduction and basis for identifying best practices (determined by the successful approaches of this chapter as well as the successful approaches to be measured and identified in the next chapter) applicable to rural communities, which will be evaluated and tested in terms of the research case study – Vaalharts – in Chapter 7.

Chapter 6: Local case studies of green space planning and approaches to lively place planning

– Pilot tests

6.1 Introduction

The previous chapter ended with an introductory section identifying the importance and relevance of lively place and green space planning in contributing to overall environmental quality and quality of life as seen in the different international case studies discussed and evaluated in terms of key theoretical aspects for providing successful lively places and green spaces. Within this chapter, the same approach, layout and method will be used as in Chapter 5 to evaluate the success of approaches to lively place planning and green space planning as applied locally within the South African context.

This Chapter aims to analyse and evaluate different local case studies in terms of the theoretical concepts of lively planning and green space planning and to compare the local approaches to international ones as addressed in Chapter 5. The aim is to identify best practices and social benefits that can be applied to rural communities and specifically relevant to the addressing of social challenges (such as safety and security) in rural communities in the next Chapter. The contribution of lively place and green space planning will be evaluated in terms of the contribution to the strengthening of communities and other social benefits it may offer, especially in terms of addressing specific social challenges like safety and security. These findings will then be adapted to suit the local rural environment, applied to the rural community of the Vaalharts (focus case study to be discussed in detail in Chapter 7).

6.2 Local lively place planning: Approach analysis

This section aims to evaluate the successes of the local case studies and will use the same measurements as discussed and identified in Chapter 5, Section 5.2 and listed in Table 23 (international evaluation). The different case studies with their accompanied approaches (discussed in detail in Chapter 3) will be evaluated in terms of these objectives. Local approaches will be described briefly and measured, based on the success of their empirical approach aimed at making the theory realize in practice, from which best practices will also conclusively be derived.

The same steps used and identified in Chapter 5, subsection 5.2.1 for evaluating international lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies, also apply to the evaluations to be done in this chapter for local lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies.

It therefore entails the identification of a number of key theoretical measurements. The case studies and lively planning approaches will be evaluated or measured in terms of whether or not these key measurements are present or included in the case studies and approaches (if successfully present, the associated measurement will be marked with an 'X'). The number of 'X's will then be accumulated to present a score (number of 'X's out of the number of identified measurements) which will determine the overall success or failure of the approach or case study (50% or higher to be regarded as successful and used for further comparisons and case study analysis to be done in Chapter 7).

6.2.1 Point of departure: Planning lively public places locally

As mentioned above, the same tool for analysis as used in Chapter 5 subsection 5.2.1 will be used in the local evaluation, based on the objectives needed to create and plan for successful lively places.

The local approaches of the case studies will be evaluated in order to determine which of the theoretical objectives are present within these cases, thus determining their success in terms of implementing theoretical objectives. The aspect of safety and security is included as an integral part of the evaluation, focusing on the visibility and accessibility (i.e. improving access to policing services and improving visibility of house numbers, streets, etc. to ensure services can arrive without restraint within efficient time) as well as in 'meeting the needs of people' to provide for a safe environment for all genders and ages.

For any further definitions and clearance regarding what is included in the forthcoming measurements, refer to the discussions and descriptions of each measuring aspect as is stated in the bullets i – iii in subsection 5.2.1 of the previous chapter.

6.2.2 Local case studies: Lively place planning and place-making

The following table indicates and briefly summarizes the main focuses of the local approaches to lively place planning and place making as discussed in Chapter 3. This table aims to analyse whether or not these local case studies and approaches successfully address and plan for lively places based on the theory regarding lively place planning (Chapter 3) according to the three main theoretical concepts and the corresponding measurements as identified, namely public, place and lively.

Table 29: Approach analysis: Success and failure in terms of local lively place planning

APPROACH TO LIVELY PLACE PLANNING	SUCCESS OR FAILURE IN TERMS OF MEASUREMENTS - Checklist	DISCUSSION - Overall approach successes and failures regarding local lively place planning
SOUTH AFRICAN APPROACHES		
INTEGRATED PLANNING <i>Cross reference to theoretical introduction and discussion of following approaches: Chapter 3, subsection 3.2.2.2 (a)</i>		
Enhancing accessibility to policing services, improving service delivery and creating safe and secure rural environments through integrating different social aspects and coordinating role players involved in rural safety.	Checklist PUBLIC People/ Inhabitants included Lived experience/ Interaction 'PLACE' Accessible Unique identity Visibility Maintenance and Management Attractions LIVELY Meet the needs of people Integrative Diverse activities Versatile functions	Addressing specific lively place planning issues (poverty, unemployment - as identified in chapter 2) is the main focus of South African planning legislation and therefore the provision adheres to governmental structures, excluding the direct involvement of the community themselves. These South African strategies focus on the development of an integrated and multidisciplinary approach which includes relationship building with communities and key stakeholders. Even though the strategy is successful in including the community's insets and needs, the inhabitants themselves are not necessarily included in the creation or development of public places. The promotion of safer communities includes inhabitants as part of 'surveillance groups', but overall these policies aim at an overall lively place development framework with little or no direct initiatives, approaches or projects
GENDER EMPOWERMENT <i>Cross reference: Chapter 3, subsection 3.2.2.2 (b)</i>		
Improve basic living conditions, quality of life and employment opportunities in order to	PUBLIC People/ Inhabitants included	The promotion of safer communities includes inhabitants as part of 'surveillance groups', but overall these policies aim at an overall lively place development framework with little or no direct initiatives, approaches or projects

<p>improve safety and independence of women and children.</p>	<p>'PLACE'</p> <p>Lived experience/ Interaction</p> <p>Accessible Unique identity Visibility Maintenance and Management Attractions</p> <p>LIVELY</p> <p>Meet the needs of people Integrative Diverse activities Versatile functions</p>	<p>enabling communities to create places they want to live in.</p>
<p>COMMUNITY CRIME PREVENTION <i>Cross reference: Chapter 3, subsection 3.2.2.2 (c)</i></p>		
<p>Community oriented initiatives supported by police (e.g. Patrol groups, block watchers and street committees). Also environmental redesign prohibiting the environment to act as catalyst for crime i.e. dense vegetation, lack of natural surveillance, illegibility, etc (refer to table 9).</p>	<p>PUBLIC</p> <p>People/ Inhabitants included Lived experience/ Interaction</p> <p>'PLACE'</p> <p>Accessible Unique identity Visibility Maintenance and Management Attractions</p> <p>LIVELY</p> <p>Meet the needs of</p>	<p>X</p> <p>X</p> <p>X</p> <p>X</p> <p>X</p> <p>X</p>

	<p>people</p> <p>Integrative</p> <p>Diverse activities</p> <p>Versatile</p> <p>functions</p>	
<p>RURAL PLANNING LEGISLATION</p> <p><i>Cross reference: Chapter 3, subsection 3.2.2.2 (d)</i></p>		
<p>Agrarian reform, food security and targeted renewal of rural towns – aspects falling under the umbrella approach indirectly contributing to lively safety and security planning by alleviating poverty and creating more vibrant communities.</p>	<p>PUBLIC</p> <p>People/ Inhabitants included</p> <p>Lived experience/ Interaction</p>	<p>X</p>
	<p>'PLACE'</p> <p>Accessible</p> <p>Unique identity</p> <p>Visibility</p> <p>Maintenance and Management</p> <p>Attractions</p>	
	<p>LIVELY</p> <p>Meet the needs of people</p>	<p>X</p>
	<p>Integrative</p>	<p>X</p>
	<p>Diverse activities</p>	<p>X</p>
	<p>Versatile functions</p>	

Source: Own creation (2013).

The table analyses the approaches discussed in previous chapters. It identifies which of these local approaches were successful (or failed) in terms of the issues of measurement, obtained from the theoretical investigations (Chapter 3) as identified and discussed in Chapter 5 regarding the planning and provision of lively places.

6.3 Local green space planning: Case study analysis

This section will also use the same measurements determined and used in Chapter 5 Section 5.3.1 to which the different approaches will be evaluated in order to determine whether or not they are successful in creating green spaces in practice– as determined and required by theory.

6.3.1 Point of departure: Planning of green spaces locally

As mentioned above, the same measurement identified in Chapter 5 subsection 5.2.1 will also be used as these are universally applicable measurements based on the necessities and primary aspects needed to create and plan for successful green spaces – as identified, discussed and derived from theory.

The approaches will therefore be measured in order to determine which of the necessary measurements are present, which will consequently determine their measurable success in terms of including these aspects in practice.

For any further definitions and clearance regarding what is included in the forthcoming measurements, refer to the discussions and descriptions of each measuring aspect as stated in bullets i – iii in subsection 5.2.1 of the previous chapter.

6.3.2 Local case studies: Green space planning

The following table indicates and briefly summarizes all the approaches to green space planning discussed in Chapter 4. This table therefore aims to empirically determine whether or not these approaches (case studies) successfully address and plan for green spaces based on the theory regarding green space planning (Chapter 4).

Table 30: Case study analysis: Success and failure in terms of local green space planning

CASE STUDIES AND ASSOCIATED INITIATIVES TO GREEN SPACE PLANNING	SUCCESS OR FAILURE IN TERMS OF MEASUREMENTS - Checklist	DISCUSSION
<p><u>South African approaches</u></p> <p>Developing countries like South Africa with high urbanization and population growth levels rather target open spaces for construction and building of residential units (i.e. RDP housing development), prohibiting the provision of green spaces (McConnachie & Shackleton, 2009:245) leading and contributing to the already</p>		

insufficient public green space situation. This situation will continue since the provision of public green spaces lies within the responsibility and jurisdiction of local government, who rather focuses on providing shelter and constructional development for the continuously growing population.

The fact that green space planning depends on subjective local governments and not the public or legislative national policies, explains the lack of sufficient and efficient green space planning initiatives to be found across the country. Some cities' local governments have taken the initiative to create programmes or projects for green spaces and will be summarized in the remainder of the table.

JOHANNESBURG

- Open Space System, 2002
- Green project (tree planting)

Guideline states that 20–40m ² of public green space should be available per capita	GREEN			Successful in terms of providing guidelines to improve accessibility and quantity of green spaces within a specific area as well as the enhancing of an area by providing a green space planning aspect – trees – planted by (and therefore including) the community themselves. Failure in terms of providing variety, diversity and activities and functions to evoke social interaction and therefore lived experience within a space.
		Vegetation	X	
		Natural surface		
		Various types		
	PUBLIC			
		Accessible	X	
		Integrative		
		Public inclusion and participation	X	
		Lived experience		
	QUALITY			
	Managed and maintained facilities			
	Functions			
	Safe			

PORT ELIZABETH

- Metropolitan Open Space System (MOSS)
- The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry

Includes the stationing of two foresters in the city in order to	GREEN			Successful (as mentioned by the international approach ((mentioned in the previous chapter)) of North America's urban forestry) in
		Vegetation	X	

<p>establish and coordinate the city's urban greening and forestry programmes (Odindi & Mhangara, 2012:659).</p>	<p>Natural surface X</p> <p>Various types</p> <p>PUBLIC</p> <p>Accessible</p> <p>Integrative</p> <p>Public inclusion and participation</p> <p>Lived experience</p> <p>QUALITY</p> <p>Managed and maintained facilities</p> <p>Functions</p> <p>Safe X</p>	<p>terms of maintaining and managing green spaces in this area. However, as mentioned previously, South Africa (overall) lacks green space planning (as described and defined by theory) and therefore merely maintaining and managing current 'open spaces' do not suffice as a 'public green space planning approach'.</p>
<p>DURBAN</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Greening of Moses Mabhida Stadium - Greening of Training Stadia for the 2010 FIFA World Cup - COP17/CMP7 Event Greening Programme. - Buffelsdraai Landfill Site Community Reforestation Project. - Paradise Valley Reforestation Project. - Community Adaptation Plans (CAPs). - Durban Green Corridor. - Durban Botanic Gardens - South Durban Basin (SDB) Biodiversity and Greening Programme and Recycling Pilot Project. 		

<p>Mostly interventions related to addressing and reducing influences of climate change where initiated.</p>	<p>GREEN</p> <p>Vegetation X</p> <p>Natural surface X</p> <p>Various types X</p> <p>PUBLIC</p> <p>Accessible</p> <p>Integrative X</p> <p>Public inclusion and participation X</p> <p>Lived experience</p> <p>QUALITY</p> <p>Managed and maintained facilities X</p> <p>Functions X</p> <p>Safe</p>	<p>As mentioned with the various plans implemented in England, Durban’s broad and varying approaches also create diverse projects and initiatives to address and improve the various aspects of public green space planning. Even though focus is mainly placed on climate change and environmental aspects, the inclusion of various projects enhances this green space case study.</p> <p>These strategies or projects are successful in including public participation in project construction and execution (using the communities to plant native trees for example) as well as the protection and upgrading of current green spaces like botanical gardens. This also contributes to the successful provision of various functions, including academic opportunities and excellent educational experience as well as youth development through recreational outdoor sports (see Durban Green Corridor in Table 19.) Also successful in terms of providing alternatives that correspond with the needs and culture of the local community (Community Adaptation Plans – refer to Table 19) also creating opportunities in terms of economic development with the creation of employment opportunities by asking local people to help in executing these initiatives. Provides successful opportunities for social cohesion, community participation and sense of ownership when enabling the community to use these planned green spaces to plant seeds and trees for food, money, building materials, etc.</p> <p>Overall, the inclusion of all these approaches</p>
---	--	--

		provides Durban with a rather successful approach to public green space planning, even though more recreational, diverse and attractive relaxing spaces might be needed – as most of these green spaces are now regarded as ‘job areas’ or ‘food providing’ districts, not spaces for public relaxation and interaction.
POTCHEFSTROOM (BOTANICAL GARDENS)		
<p>The use and appreciation of botanical gardens as urban green spaces; these botanical gardens provide numerous benefits in terms of conservation, education and recreation (Ward <i>et al.</i>, 2009:49) in almost each city (Durban, Kirstenbosch, Stellenbosch, Pretoria and specifically Potchefstroom).</p>	<p>GREEN</p>	Vegetation X
		Natural surface X
		Various types X
	<p>PUBLIC</p>	Accessible
		Integrative
		Public inclusion X
		and participation
	<p>QUALITY</p>	Lived experience
		Managed and X
		maintained facilities
Functions		
Safe X		
<p>Botanical gardens are successful in terms of providing well-managed and maintained green spaces for relaxation and educational purposes. These spaces (mostly) lack the provision or planning of various daily functions and activities and some botanical gardens are less accessible in terms of entrance costs, gates, appointments, etc.</p>		

Source: Own creation (2013)

The table analyses the approaches discussed in previous chapters. It identifies which of these local approaches were successful (or failed) in terms of the issues of measurement, obtained from the theoretical investigations (Chapter 4) regarding the planning and provision of lively places.

6.4 Discussion and implications

This section will table and summarise the results of the evaluations conducted in section 6.2 and 6.3 above. It also delivers comments and identifies best relevant practices that can and will be applied to the primary case study of this research (Vaalharts) in Chapter 7.

Table 31: Success summary - Local lively place planning

PILOT TEST	SCORES IN TERMS OF MEASUREMENTS	COMMENTS AND BEST PRACTICES
Integrated planning	4 out of 11	<p>As mentioned, local rural communities and their approaches differ to a great extent from the international approaches. Rural communities experience a certain set of challenges (Table 4) and any planning approaches aim to address these challenges. This lively place planning approach specifically aims at improving safety and security of rural communities, rather than including all ‘public’ and ‘place’ aspects needed to create a lively place – which provides better safety and security as a given if and when it is planned correctly and according to theory – i.e. including the measurements needed for successful lively place planning. Best practices identified in this approach, however, cannot be overlooked. The specific inclusion of and provision for women and children in appropriate facilities and support services contribute to the inclusion of people and the addressing of their needs (inequality and child safety being key challenges and needs) and are especially needed (i.e. ‘best practice’) in local rural context. The provision of youth training programmes for community crime prevention also addresses numerous challenges i.e. education, community and individual interaction, employment opportunity, etc. creating a lively place and integrated community.</p>
Gender Empowerment	3 out of 11	<p>As can be derived from the low score achieved, it is evident that, even though the approach is relevant for addressing the social challenge of inequality experienced in rural communities, it doesn’t comply with lively place planning theory and can therefore not be regarded as successful.</p> <p>As mentioned above the inclusion of women and children is a best practice that should be included within a theoretically correct lively place planning environment.</p>

<p>Community Crime Prevention and Crime Prevention through Environmental Design (CPTED)</p>	<p>5 out of 11</p>	<p>Although it lacks key aspects of 'lively' and means of social interaction, it is a step in the right direction for local lively place planning approaches in that it uses the environment to address social challenges like safety and security threats. However, the key phrase is 'lively', and based on the measurements it is still lacking key aspects of creating truly lively places for the community.</p> <p>Best practices, though, definitely lie in the improving of accessibility in maintaining and managing the environment and density of vegetation, creating a safer potential living and interacting space.</p>
<p>Rural Planning Legislation</p>	<p>4 out of 11</p>	<p>As seen countless times, these legislative policies have very appropriate and relevant objectives but the application and implementation thereof in practice is inadequate. The constraint in terms of these legislative approaches is therefore that they are mere guidelines and legislation whereas the practical implementation thereof is not found sufficient.</p> <p>The best practice can therefore be seen as the provision of an excellent framework as basis and/or potential approach to integrate rural development, social challenge alleviation and lively place planning in local rural communities – the key is the successful practical execution thereof.</p>

Source: Own creation (2013)

Table 32: Success summary - Local green space planning

<p>PILOT TEST</p>	<p>SCORES IN TERMS OF MEASUREMENTS</p>	<p>COMMENTS</p>
<p>Johannesburg (Open Space System and Green project)</p>	<p>3 out of 10</p>	<p>Although the community is included and participates in the planting of trees, merely providing trees is not a sufficient provision of 'green' or 'public' and can therefore not create a successful 'place'.</p> <p>Best practice remains the fact that the public is included in a participatory project, even though transient, and combining the public with the creation of a slightly more green, vibrant and attractive environment.</p>
<p>Port Elizabeth (MOSS and the</p>	<p>3 out of 10</p>	<p>As mentioned, merely protecting and managing current green spaces (or</p>

Department of Water Affairs and Forestry)		<p>in most cases mere open spaces) is not sufficient to be regarded as successful green space planning.</p> <p>It is a best practice to provide adequate and qualitative management and maintenance of green spaces, but this should be regarded as a subsequent and successive aspect of creating and planning green public spaces as opposed to being seen as an approach within itself.</p>
Durban (numerous)	7 out of 10	<p>It is evident that the inclusion of various and diverse projects is the best practice to apply to any community or area. It ensures that all aspects of successful green space planning are included in any of the numerous approaches, easing the execution and management of each project to ensure every aspect is executed to its ultimate potential with the necessary attention.</p>
Potchefstroom (Botanical Gardens)	6 out of 10	<p>Botanical gardens can be regarded as a very good example of a provided 'green' space with the necessary maintenance, management, opportunities etc. Best practices include the continuous maintenance and supervision, providing a sense of surveillance and therefore safety. Botanical gardens should eliminate entrance costs to improve accessibility for all and most botanical gardens do not necessarily provide a variety of daily activities and functions to promote an interactive environment.</p>

Source: Own creation (2013)

6.5 Application to local pilot tests

In the final collaborative section of Chapter 4 (Section 4.8), the theory discussed in Chapters 3 and 4 regarding lively place planning and green space planning respectively was focused in terms of rural and the relevance and importance of applying and including these theoretical 'green spaces' and 'lively places' in rural communities. In Chapter 5 and the preceding sections of this Chapter 6, specific international and local lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies were evaluated in order to determine whether or not they can be regarded as 'successful' in promoting and planning green spaces and lively places in terms of applicable theory (Chapters 3 and 4).

This section therefore conclusively narrows the empirical focus on two unique South African rural community case studies that will serve as pilot tests. In previous chapters on international (Chapter 5) and local (Chapter 6) lively place and green space planning, the lively place planning discussions

(Chapter 3) and evaluations (Chapter 5 – international and Chapter 6 – local) were done based on certain approaches applied and executed locally and internationally whilst the green space planning discussions (Chapter 4) and evaluations (Chapter 5 – international and Chapter 6 – local) were done based on specific cities and/or places as case studies. In all of these situations, best practices were identified (Tables 27, 28, 31 and 32). This section aims to combine best approach and case study approaches and apply and compare all of these to the current situation present in two local communities as pilot tests (i.e. Umgababa; and Nigel and Zonkizizwe). From this comparison and/or evaluation certain successful lively place and green space planning aspects, initiatives or approaches that are relevant to and successful in these pilot tests will be compared and identified in order to be applied to the primary case study of Vaalharts in Chapter 7 to be evaluated and determine the relevance of these approaches in terms of addressing rural specific challenges.

These pilot tests were specifically selected due to the exact resemblance between the challenges these pilot tests aim to address with their unique approaches and the challenges theoretically discussed, identified and tabled in Chapter 2 (with specific reference to subsection 2.1.2.2 and Table 4). Therefore it provides an accurate and extremely relevant and exceptional basis for comparing practice and theory.

In each introductory section of the pilot tests their specific correspondence and similarity to those identified in the theoretical Chapter 2 will be briefly identified and discussed. Both pilot tests' subsections include a table, summarizing each pilot test's different and various focus-approaches in terms of attempting to address their rural social challenges and declaring whether or not (and how) they are experiencing success and/or failure in terms of complying with the green space and lively place planning measurements used as evaluation standards in the preceding and previous chapter and whether or not their approach aspects can be regarded as a success in terms of 'scoring high' based on the measurements – i.e. being regarded as a best practice.

This will therefore demonstrate the essence, efficiency and relevance of lively place and green space planning in (especially) South African rural communities and will be used as best practices to be applied to the primary case study (Vaalharts – Chapter 7) in order to empirically evaluate and identify the potential benefit of social dimension planning (i.e. successful lively place planning and green space planning) as a solution, based on the Vaalharts community's needs and corresponding needs analysis to be discussed in Chapter 7.

6.5.1 Nigel and Zonkizizwe – Ekurhuleni Metropolitan

Some of the key lively place approaches discussed in the preceding chapters identified the improving or increasing of policing activities, police forums and community crime prevention programmes as approaches to create safer and lively communities.

In the towns of Nigel and Zonkizizwe, situated in the Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Area, the issues they experience directly correspond with these. Particular issues experienced include: members of Community Police Forums not committed to their role and also not representative of all the organisations of the community, as well as not being completely functional; SAPS and EMPD to be understaffed; limited or lack of efficient and participating NGOs in certain areas; lack of policing in certain areas and access due to lack of infrastructure (as stated by Dhlamini and Dissel (2005:17) in Chapter 3).

Therefore this example serves as a pilot study for the purpose of this research in order to bridge the gap and identify how the best practices based on the theoretical measurements identified need to and should be applied for successful planning of lively places. (When referring to Table 31 for example, it is evident through the evaluation of these approaches in terms of theoretical necessities identified as measurements, that these are not regarded as best practice approaches in terms of their evaluation score).

These areas were both identified as rural or semi-rural (Nigel consisting of a high number of farms and smallholdings and Zonkizizwe as an informal settlement with a few smallholdings. Also refer to Annexure 1 for the definition of 'rural' in terms of the RDF) case studies contributing to better understand and subsequently provide for rural safety needs (including crime prevention) of the people living in these areas (especially women). This study aims to enhance the capacity of local government in order to provide rural safety services and promote equity in service delivery (Dhlamini & Dissel, 2005:2).

These pilot test areas are further relevant to this research as their crime is recorded as "...high enough ... to place them in the SAPS priority crime areas for the metro" (Dhlamini & Dissel, 2005:7). Crime was one of the main issues aimed to be addressed by previous case studies, to no or little avail. This pilot test is primarily focused on preventing crime and therefore the determining of success in terms of theoretical measurement aspects (refer to Table 33 to follow) which makes this case study highly relevant and needed for future successful application in Chapter 7.

The following crimes or issues were identified within these pilot test areas:

- Alcohol abuse;
- Mob justice/vigilantism (a practice of *izinduna* where communities take disciplinary action against offenders in their own hands if regarded as a crime of “less serious nature” as opposed to handing it over to the police);
- Open fields (the necessity of residents to pass through these fields to get to transport, threatens and targets especially vulnerable groups (women, children, pensioners, disabled people and those infected with HIV) in terms of rape, robbery and assault;
- Housebreaking, burglary and theft.

Crime prevention and safety and security are the priorities of the SAPS and EMPD (Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Police Department). In Nigel (and many other rural parts of the country according to Dhlamini and Dissel (2005:12)) the SANDF (South African National Defence Force) Commando System are still responsible for safeguarding and protecting communities. These consist of members appointed to serve in specific areas and to protect their own communities, but with no military responsibilities outside of these. They have no policing powers but may arrest suspects and hand them over to the police (Dhlamini & Dissel, 2005:12). Even though various successes can be equated to the SANDF Commando System, like the sub-division of a community into smaller more manageable sections and the involvement of the whole community, they were to be phased out by 2009.

The following table summarizes the SAPS and EMPD’s crime prevention approaches, identifies their successes and/or failures and provides examples of how the success aspects of previously discussed lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies (as conclusively summarized and tabled in Tables 27, 25, 31 and 32) could have contributed to the prevention of crime in these areas.

Table 33: Nigel and Zonkizizwe crime prevention

RURAL CHALLENGE ADDRESSING: CRIME PREVENTION APPROACH	SUCCESSSES AND/OR FAILURES IN TERMS OF CHALLENGES	LIVELY PLACE AND GREEN SPACE PLANNING SUCCESS ASPECTS’ INFLUENCE
Stakeholder consultation	Police and the metro primarily relied on police statistics to inform their crime prevention strategies – the	The lively place and green space planning aspect of public participation (as successfully applied and identified in Tables

<p>Consulting about the nature of crime problems and potential solutions.</p>	<p>community was rarely consulted while community organisations need to be involved and consulted in identifying priority crimes, developing crime prevention strategies and implementing these strategies.</p>	<p>24 and 29 amongst others, in terms of informal local markets, redesigning and regenerating approaches, and community crime prevention) ensures the input of the communities themselves in order to identify first-hand the safety and crime challenges experienced (as each community is different, a 'one solution or approach fits all' will not suffice. When including the public and raising awareness regarding certain prevalent crimes in their communities, they can all be included in combating and preventing those crimes by being aware and attentive, providing them with a feeling of being needed as well as a sense of responsibility.</p>
<p>Analysis of crime</p> <p>Further analysis of crime in particular areas through police statistics or victim surveys.</p>	<p>For example, after analysis the daily crime statistics identify armed robbery as an issue between 18:00 and 20:00 at a specific spot – step up patrols during that time.</p> <p>The potential of this approach is limited as crime may be displaced to other areas.</p>	<p>It remains necessary to analyse crime and consult statistics and surveys in order to obtain enough detail regarding current crime trends, but (as mentioned above), including the public and promoting awareness are important aspects in order to promote attentiveness in all areas. As mentioned in Chapter 2, an issue in rural communities is open areas that are unsafe. When analysing the crimes (rape, attacks, etc.) prevailing in these open spaces, it is evident that the creation of function and human presence by means of providing lively places and green spaces will establish a used space with constant human presence (time of day statistically identified as a major reason for feeling unsafe – refer to Annexure 4), therefore minimizing the potential for crime and other acts of</p>

		delinquency.
<p>A partnership with various role-players</p> <p>To act on an agreed set of crime problems.</p>	<p>A large number of community structures and organisations have taken initiative in terms of crime prevention, as the SAPS and EMPD do not have sufficient partnership or joint planning around these activities.</p>	<p>Applying more lively place and green space planning principles like the improving of access (in terms of roads and transport and especially in terms of access to information – news, police stations, telecommunication systems, etc.) and the empowering of women to all step up as role players, will create better and more ways to interact and communicate between the community, residents, neighbouring communities, police, other safety services and various other role players. In order to create strong relationships, one needs to build a united and integrated community. By including cultural activities as a means of raising awareness of crime, people will have a stronger sense of responsibility towards their community. Community crime prevention also creates a basis for relationships between residents, patrol units, police and others in a hierarchical manner.</p>
<p>Coordinating agencies</p> <p>Agencies nominated to coordinate the activities of the role players.</p>	<p>Limited coordinated planning around social crime prevention with the EMPD. The relationship between the SAPS and the metro police can be improved by coordinating their efforts to fight crime.</p>	<p>As mentioned, various people (especially residents and women) should be included as role players. When creating better and more organized amenities, attractions and functions within a community, better structures are created to serve as a basis for fighting crime. This includes the provision of social assistance and welfare services like clinics and other psychological units to help and stabilize victims of crime. This helps coordinate crime in terms of contributing to the recording of crime</p>

		<p>statistics. Therefore (through lively place and green space planning) social service structures (welfare services, safety services, better infrastructure, etc.) will be provided. This will ease access and time of service delivery (not having to wait for police from urban areas from afar) as well as potential for better coordination between these different service deliverers. It therefore corresponds to the success aspect of integrated planning with various approaches and services integrated and coordinated in one place to ensure better communication, information and certainty regarding crime, statistics and the prevention thereof.</p>
<p>SAPS, EMPD and CPF (Community Police Forum)</p>	<p>Even though these structures and services can be regarded as successful in terms of their vision and purpose, their visible policing needs to be strengthened.</p> <p>The need to improve infrastructure also inhibits their functioning with police experiencing difficulties to trace suspects due to the lack of street lights, street names and house numbers as well as roads that are never graded.</p>	<p>The upgrading of infrastructure like roads, regeneration approaches, integrated planning, and qualitative and quantitative planning, are all success aspects identified in the success summaries tabled in Chapters 5 and 6 that can directly contribute to the issues or challenges prevailing in terms of rural communities and their crime rates.</p> <p>When creating and planning lively places and green spaces (more than one in order to be successful) it includes the upgrading of access (roads) and accessibility (lighting, better marking and numbering of houses and entrances) as well as the organized regenerating and redevelopment of the natural environment (less dense vegetation, better visibility and better legibility) to ease and accelerate the functioning and service</p>

		delivery of necessary social services like the police and other crime fighting and crime prevention units within the community, whether these consist of community residents themselves or other nationally appointed safety units.
--	--	---

Source: Own creation based on Dhlamini and Dissel (2005)

As determined by Dhlamini and Dissel (2005:17) other issues regarding these crime prevention units or strategies also include members of Community Police Forums not committed to their role and also not representative of all the organisations of the community, as well as not being completely functional; the SAPS and EMPD to be understaffed; limited or lack of efficient and participating NGOs in certain areas; and the lack of policing in certain areas and difficult access due to lack of infrastructure.

It is therefore evident that successful lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies relevant in terms of rural communities (as evaluated, identified and discussed in Tables 27, 28, 31 and 32) will be highly successful in terms of addressing these issues of this pilot test. For example, when including the community and providing them with relevant training, not only employment, economic development and (indirectly) poverty will be addressed, but these above-mentioned issues like understaffing and uncommitted members not representative of the community itself, can be solved and addressed. The regeneration and provision of qualitative and quantitative places will also address the lack of access (roads, legibility and visibility).

As mentioned by Allen and Brennan (2004:39), the answer to the deepening of poverty, neglect and deprivation in the rural communities of South Africa (a cause of great concern as stated by Orford (2004:13)) lies in aspects (like mentioned and planned for in the lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies) such as empowerment (refer to empowering women and children and integrated planning in Table 29) and participatory community development projects (refer to tables 27 and 29, numerous referring to the current lack of public participation as well as to Chapter 5, identifying the utmost importance and relevance of including the public in decision-making, design and layout inputs, and in the implementation of projects and/or programmes in order to obtain a lively community designed for and by the people).

6.5.2 Umgababa – KwaZulu-Natal

Suppressing certain groups (i.e. social groups within communities) may lead to instances where mechanisms of social exclusion occur within rural development programmes (van der Ploeg *et al.*, 2000:394). A practical example of this reality in rural South Africa is the poor rural community of Umgababa (situated approximately 40 kilometres south of the city of Durban) in KwaZulu-Natal (Gopaul, 2006:69) whose residents display significant instances of low self-esteem and social exclusions, and where these social exclusions are referred to as “...a major challenge”.

One of the most prominent issues or calibrations found regarding social exclusion within South African rural communities is that of women, where issues such as race, class and gender ensure that these (African) women remain poor and severely excluded (Gopaul, 2006:73).

The second pilot test to determine the empirical potential relevance and success in terms of lively place and green space planning as well as success aspects regarding the addressing of rural challenges, is that of the community of Umgababa. The community is situated south of the city of Durban in the province of KwaZulu-Natal, a province in which the majority of poverty stricken and deprived rural communities reside (as mentioned previously), carrying the third highest incidence of poverty with 47% of this rural population existing below the poverty line (Data Research Africa, 2000).

Whereas the previous pilot study focused on and aimed at improving crime prevention in order to promote safety and security, the aim of this study was to determine the role of tourism, empowerment and participation in the socio-economic upliftment of this specific community of Umgababa (Gopaul 2006:ix) by means of questionnaires to be completed by random households.

The primary issues or challenges faced in this community (not very different from other rural communities in South Africa – Gopaul (2006:2)) include

- Poverty;
- The need for development and a better way of life;
- A need to create awareness;
- The role of women – women being subject to poverty, hostility, abuse, neglect and hardship;
- Many women are breadwinners and heads of households; however they lack the means to use their skills to achieve a better way of life (Gopaul, 2006:3) and
- low self-esteem and social exclusions as “a major challenge”

The following table identifies these approaches or aspects potentially able to provide socio-economic upliftment, as well as their challenges and difficulties faced. Furthermore, it also determines how the

success aspects in terms of lively place and green space planning in terms of rural communities as discussed previously, can address these issues in order to contribute to socio-economic upliftment in this community.

Table 34: Umgababa socio-economic upliftment

RURAL CHALLENGE ADDRESSING: SOCIO-ECONOMIC UPLIFTMENT APPROACH	SUCCESSSES AND/OR FAILURES IN TERMS OF CHALLENGES	LIVELY PLACE AND GREEN SPACE PLANNING SUCCESS ASPECTS' INFLUENCE
<p>Tourism</p> <p>Information regarding tourism resources was obtained through observation and inspection of the study area (Gopaul, 2006:17). These observations were made on a) the abundance of natural resources readily available for tourism, including the fauna and flora, the river, the wetland, the estuary, the sand dunes, the beach and flat shores and the view amongst others; b) Man-made resources including curios and stalls, Karridene Hotel near the river, the railway line and the tarred main road providing a good view to motorists (Gopaul,</p>	<p>Distrust in the government due to the failure in delivering promised development, makes residents rely on themselves for their livelihood – the only alternative is to engage in a form of self-sustaining activities wherein participation in tourism could be their only hope – despite their restricting and crucial inability to communicate in English (Gopaul, 2006:112).</p> <p>The natural and human resources remain unused even though they are the necessary tools for tourism development – i.e. the river as a venue for water sport, fauna and flora as ideal picnic spots and sightseeing, hiking trails, the beach as potential for cultural shows, beach games and sports.</p> <p>Currently tourism activities include the Umgababa Beach Festival and the Umgababa Beach Resort show as cultural events. Regular shows like these could attract more people</p>	<p>As mentioned, these shows provide economic stability. When including the lively place and green space planning success aspects as discussed in Chapters 3, 4 and 5 and tabled in Tables 27, 28, 31 and 32 in order to successfully present such shows more often, this economic injection will not be regarded as an annual and therefore short-term upliftment, but can be regarded as a constant employment opportunity.</p> <p>By providing quality and quantity infrastructure and green spaces and lively places (like local markets, intersections, beach curios, etc. as was done in previous approaches regarded as successful in terms of their evaluation scores like the City Repair Project an Project for Public Spaces amongst others) these could be used as public places where weekenders can also see and buy the products produced by the local people. This will include cultural music, picnic facilities and opportunities where local dishes, fruit and vegetables can be bought, etc.</p> <p>This will provide residents of the local community with the opportunity to provide</p>

<p>2006:14); and c) The economic impact these will have on the area - referred to as human resources.</p>	<p>more often and generate better income for residents selling their indigenous produce or can indirectly be applied to create better environments (see column to the right).</p>	<p>monthly or even weekly produce (if possible) to raise the amount received for weekly living.</p> <p>This can be successfully done with the integrated approach discussed in previous chapters and listed as part of the successful aspects (refer to Table 28 identifying the success of England's integrated and diverse approaches). The variety of different approaches, functions and ideas (i.e. participation on the inclusion of public inputs and ideas) include (as mentioned) the focusing on resource allocation particularly along gender lines, therefore the issue regarding the numerous tourism resources will be focused and directed, addressing the issue of inequality, unemployment as well as social exclusion of especially women and providing a basis for developing communication skills and efficient resource utilisation.</p>
<p>Empowerment</p> <p>The Umgababa community has an abundance of natural, human and man-made resources (as discussed) as well as a willing community, but a helping hand needs to be provided for these people to engage in a business venture.</p>	<p>Women were reluctant to partake in the questionnaire when their husbands were not present as it was seen as inappropriate to “do anything without their husband’s consent and/or in his absence” (Gopaul, 2006:19). Even though rural women are identified as “the backbone to success in rural development” (women raising children alone and taking over farming when husbands and sons</p>	<p>Other empowerment support (which coincides directly with the success aspects of lively place and green space planning) includes funding, infrastructure development, policing and security, acknowledging participatory decision-making and gender equity (women to be given the opportunity to operate their own businesses in order to reduce stagnating women not able to generate an income).</p> <p>In this case the focus is not solely on women and children (i.e. gender empowerment), but the strategy includes the overall</p>

	<p>are forced to seek employment in urban centres and/or work in subsistence agriculture or sell fruit and ornaments on the freeway and in curio stores just to survive), they are neglected (Gopaul, 2006:75). Residents lack (as mentioned) the necessary skills to contribute to development and tourism (like not being able to communicate well in English, for example) but with the necessary training in skill development through empowerment programmes and financial assistance, it is possible for this community to uplift their livelihood through tourism.</p> <p>Help from government and/or the private sector can be done through empowerment programmes (basic skills development, adult basic education and training for would-be entrepreneurs, literacy teaching/learning programmes, on-the-job training and provision of tourism facilities).</p>	<p>empowerment of the community in order to enhance their potential to skilfully extract, apply and use the resources available to them in order to make a living.</p> <p>As mentioned and numerous included in the study done by Gopaul (2006), women play an elite and highly important role in Umgababa in terms of running households, providing food, water and creating other means of income (farming, craftwork, etc.). Therefore, when applying the success aspect of empowering women, the community as a whole would benefit. This corresponds with safety and security issues and therefore the provision of safe public places (as opposed to unsafe open areas known for crime and acts of violence) where women (and children) can pass through or engage in buying and selling activities without fear of crime or attacks. This will allow women to uphold their daily tasks successfully and faster, giving them more time to be productive in economic activities like trade, produce, etc.</p> <p>In terms of the community, integrated and qualitative place planning can provide the community with better services and service infrastructure like welfare services, security services (police and other crime prevention units), and services aimed at providing basic literacy teaching (spoken English identified as an issue in the study) and training in terms of entrepreneurship (empowering women to enter the economic sector through craftwork, beading, cultural produce, etc. that not only allows for social acceptance and interaction</p>
--	---	--

		<p>among women in the community, but also builds a stronger cultural pride and heritage with teachings of traditions to younger ones) as well as in terms of training (training men to be part of crime prevention units, security services, as well as role-players in tourism ventures and activities in cooperation with the women of the community and external role-players like government, private sector investors and other tourism organizations.)</p> <p>An approach successful in terms of providing incentive and programmes for local and ecological sustainable development is that of <i>ecoBUDGET</i>.</p> <p>According to Robrecht and Meyrick (2008:18) advantages of applying an <i>ecoBUDGET</i> or similar approach (qualitative and quantitative approaches) lie in its cross-cutting managerial ability. This does not only affect a wide range of natural resources (an aspect this pilot test possess in abundance) but involves relevant stakeholders from local authorities (management, administrative and political) as well as the community (industries, households, traffic, etc.), therefore also addressing the issues of participation and empowerment.</p> <p>When such lively place and green space planning success aspects are included, an enabling environment of appropriate policies, strategies, procedures and incentive structures that are needed for integrated environmental management and community empowerment will be created. It will also</p>
--	--	---

		<p>strengthen the capacity of institutions to implement integrated environmental management approaches through procedural discipline, training and intellectual support, empowering the community and providing the necessary skill training as a catalyst for correctively applying unused and uncultivated potential and skills.</p>
<p>Participation</p> <p>Even though various human and natural resources are available, these alone are not enough to develop rural areas. The interest of the community to play a role in the development (decision-making, organizing development projects in tourism and facilitating a common progress goal) is crucial.</p>	<p>35 of the 40 respondents (87,5%) showed willingness to participate in tourism after identifying that none of the 40 respondents have ever been approached by government or tourism developers to assist them in tourism business ventures as a means to improve the communities' living conditions (Gopaul, 2006:103).</p> <p>Communities feel neglected and abandoned from the wider society with government failing to deliver development as promised.</p> <p>Some kind of motivation or incentive is needed to encourage communities to participate in tourism (and therefore overall rural) development as they are (as mentioned) willing to participate but financial support and guidance to pursue these goals are lacking. To receive such help (from government or the private sector) they first need to take initiative by providing their share in development (Gopaul,</p>	<p>According to Gopaul (2006:119) it is recommended that the community of Umgababa form their own organization to oversee, control and manage the development process. This can form a basis for liaisons and interactions not only with other tourism organisations in South Africa, but also with other rural communities as a means to improve communication and the sharing of approaches, successes and experience for further rural development. These structured liaisons can create a possibility for the improving of accessibility to communities in terms of telecommunication systems in order to improve access to information as well as provide educational opportunities when learning from other tourism organisations and receiving training by means of these interactive communications and liaisons.</p> <p>When providing these communities with local markets, cultural activity enhancement, redesigning and regeneration opportunities by means of providing quality (and sufficient quantity) of a lively place and green space with the necessary infrastructure provision,</p>

	2006:116).	<p>these communities are granted the possibility to empower themselves and use the utilities and resources to develop organized and safe entrepreneurial environments. This will not only empower the community, but will also provide a sense of accomplishment, cultural relevance and pride to develop and provide more products and activities contributing to the successful approach of integrated planning – various functions, amenities and activities replicating the uniqueness of each individual and each culture with their ideas and innovations applied to the redesigning, redevelopment, upgrading and conversions of functionless, open and unsafe spaces (street intersections (refer to Portland's City Repair Project and Toronto's Creative Planning Framework), open fields women and children need to cross to reach water and school, dark alleys, corridors and densely vegetated areas.</p> <p>Participation also refers to the importance and need for the community to work together, to support and trust each other and to therefore plan and implement strategies with pride, honesty and diligence. When providing efficient, qualitative and quantitative lively places and green spaces, a sense of belonging and pride amongst community members will be established. When providing a possible means of income generation together with better safety measures, designs and services, a more secure and trustworthy community can be created in which everyone works equally to generate a tourism-driven</p>
--	------------	---

		income.
<p>Socio-economic status</p> <p>Questionnaires asking households to answer questions based on the socio-economic status of the community, their willingness to participate in a tourism business venture and their perceptions of other rural communities in South Africa in terms of participation in tourism development.</p>	<p>Analysis and interpretation of the data as derived from the questionnaires clearly indicate that the community of Umgababa is generally impoverished, living under extremely poor socio-economic conditions (Gopaul, 2006:108) with a large number of residents struggling to find suitable employment (a mere 7 respondents [17,5%] were employed on a permanent basis) as Umgababa does not possess suitable infrastructure, commerce and industry.</p> <p>The general appearance of the Umgababa residents indicates a lack of basics of life – nutritious food, decent shelter, proper clothing and good education (Gopaul, 2006:112)</p>	<p>Whilst being a stagnant community in terms of employment, education, housing, amenities, provision of basic services and infrastructure development (i.e. deteriorated socio-economic living environments), Umgababa encompasses the potential (natural, human and man-made resources as well as willingness to participate in tourism business ventures) to change their livelihood forever through perseverance, endurance and proper communication with other rural communities in order to generate empowerment and development through local tourism entrepreneurship (as mentioned numerous in the above discussed upliftment approaches of this table).</p> <p>As mentioned in the conclusive rural section 4.8 it is derived that lively place and green space planning focuses on the creation of accessible public places for and by the people based on their needs and inputs with natural (green) aspects allowing for various functions and diverse activities for all. The most successful aspect of this summary is the fact that it is not focused or inclusive of specific situations, challenges or ideas but provides a universally applicable approach to create and uplift any place and (when quantitatively successful) any community. When applied to this situation of socio-economic upliftment, lively place and green space planning provides an approach where</p>

		<p>places based on the needs and inputs of the people (i.e. participation) are created that are culturally unique to that of the community with the provision of safe environments and infrastructures providing access to various functions, activities and amenities to create a social place for people and the potential to empower the community and women to entrepreneurial employment (i.e. empowerment). When in this case these provided social and safe public places are applied as a market in which locals buy and sell their goods and produce, the main issues of this community (mentioned previously in this section) like poverty, the need for development, social exclusion, low self esteem, lack of means to apply skills and the overall need for a better way of life can be addressed.</p>
--	--	--

Source: Own creation based on Gopaul (2006)

Gopaul (2006:75) specifically states the importance of community empowerment and participation in attempts of rural upliftment, not only as an approach but as a necessity, and that without it “...any attempt to develop rural areas could be for nought”. Therefore these aspects (empowerment and participation – both of which are crucial elements included as aspects of successful lively place and green space planning) drive rural development and should at all times be considered and included in planning of rural development approaches to successfully and sustainably transform and uplift social challenges of rural communities.

As was the situation in the previous pilot test as well, the community of Umgababa also experienced challenges like a lack in infrastructure (Gopaul, 2006:16) (like post boxes, street addresses or any other feature to identify households – i.e. visibility and legibility issues); accessibility (very little access in the form of roads – Gopaul, 2006:16) and crime (newspaper reports indicated this as an area notorious for criminal activities like high jacking, theft and stone throwing at passing motorists (Gopaul, 2006:19)). In providing better infrastructure, the local produce (fruit, vegetables, cultural and traditional ornaments) can be sold in a structured and central local market (refer to Table 24) close to the (potential) tourist

attractions (as shown in the above-mentioned table) as well as their community and homes as a means to enhance proximity (for work, live and play to be more closely situated in order to promote and enhance accessibility).

Another important aspect that could have been better integrated is that of cultural diversity and traditions with culture being viewed as an asset that communities own and (when marketed and guided correctly – i.e. informal local markets as identified in Table 24 with simultaneous qualitative and quantitative and integrated planning approaches including the residents of the community as key role-players) can create employment and attract investment (Gopaul, 2006:39). After successful application of such lively place and green space planning principles and approaches as a means to address the current issues and challenges in the community of Umgababa, the community should share (with the given opportunity and assistance) their knowledge and expertise obtained with other similar rural communities and also learn from them to derive mutual financial and structural benefits (Gopaul, 2006:117). This will also contribute to the overall challenge of social exclusion and accessibility because of the establishment of better interaction and bonds between various communities by allowing them to communicate their knowledge and experience.

6.5.4 Comparing local pilot tests: Best practices in terms of lively place and green space planning

The abovementioned approaches provide two very different scenarios in terms of their individual approaches but remain similar in terms of their overall objective – i.e. addressing rural social challenges within poor rural communities of South Africa.

This subsection will focus on the comparison of these two pilot tests in order to identify which of these can be regarded as most successful in terms of including and planning for lively places and green spaces as a means to address rural social challenges and of determining best and most relevant practices to be applied to or measured against the primary case study of the Vaalharts in the following chapter.

The following table conclusively identifies each pilot test’s most prominent fail(s), most useful and relevant success(es) and identifies which provides the best practice(s) for the forthcoming case study.

Table 35: Pilot test comparison

	NIGEL AND ZONKIZIZWE	UMGABABA
Failures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Complete lack of public participation and inclusion - SAPS and EMPD have 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Lack of including approaches to address issues like crime and safety; - Not providing sufficient support and education for

	<p>insufficient partnerships with role-players</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Lack of good coordination between different agencies in terms of communal crime fighting. 	<p>residents in terms of educating them in spoken English.</p>
Successes	<p>Providing more policing services and options in order to fight crime.</p>	<p>Focused on rural specific challenges and addressing them by means of lively place planning elements like community participative and oriented self-sustaining economic and business activities.</p> <p>Providing a unique and controversial planning approach to rural development and challenge reduction.</p>
Best practices	<p>Analysing crime and using statistics to determine most common crimes and their associated times.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Acknowledging governmental failure in terms of delivery and the initiative to engage in self-sustaining activities (i.e. participation in tourism); - Realizing the importance of women and their unmistakable role in the community and therefore initiating or proposing women to enter the economic sector; - Providing incentives for willing local people in terms of their own unique potential business and tourism ventures to generate an income and engage as part of the economic sector i.e. to participate. - Directing questionnaires at community members to gather their inputs and opinions on their willingness to participate in tourism business ventures; and their perception of other South African rural communities' participation in tourism; - Integration and collaboration with other communities in order to identify, gather and determine best suitable and relevant case studies (like that of the Netherlands, UK and Belgium's Urban Habitats Project scoring above average in the evaluation in terms of theoretical measurements done and discussed in Tables 26 and 28 respectively).
Comments	<p>Even though the approach to address and reduce crime directly through potentially applicable crime prevention approaches (stakeholder consultation; analysis of crime; a partnership with various role-players; coordinating agencies; SAPS, EMPD and CPF) might be relevant, the issue lies in the absence of community involvement (an issue identified in most cases in Table 33), participation</p>	<p>More effective since the approach is focused on providing or improving lively place (empowerment and participation) and green space (tourism and participation) key aspects for partial social upliftment – social and rural challenge being seen as parallel concepts – refer to Chapter 2. Therefore this approach is immediately more successful in terms of addressing rural challenges by providing or planning for more lively place and green space planning aspects as well as in providing universally applicable approaches to create and uplift any place and community.</p>

	<p>and/or contribution – an aspect included in both lively place and green space planning measurements (Table 23 and Table 25) as critical theoretical aspect for the successful planning of green spaces and lively places.</p>	
--	--	--

Source: Own creation (2013)

6.6 Chapter conclusion

As can be seen in the summarizing sections 6.2.1 and 6.3.1 and in the precedent pilot test Section 6.5 determining the success of the approaches regarding local lively place planning and green space planning respectively (according to the predetermined measurements consisting of a number of the key elements ((according to theory)) needed to create lively places and green spaces), the local South African approaches (especially in terms of lively place planning) is vague and insufficient. This statement is substantiated by the above application and comparison of the two South African pilot tests engaged in addressing their communities' perilous social conditions. Even though the comparative Table 35 tends to favour the Umgababa socio-economic upliftment focus (i.e. determining the role of tourism, empowerment and participation), few to no key green space planning aspects (as identified in previous Chapter 5 Table 25) are included. It should, though, not be excluded that these pilot test approaches (especially that of Umgababa – derived from the comparison made in above Table 35), still include relative and accurate aspects of success and relevance in terms of best practices to be conveyed to the following Chapter 7 in which all successful aspects will be measured and/or applied to the large scale primary case study.

It still, as mentioned above, remains critical and evident that green space planning and lively place planning are concepts not only very similar with regards to their core or fundamental components, but serve as support for one another. Lively place planning aims at including people in the process of creating better living and working place environments (Philips, 2010:5) with green space planning case studies (Like that of Durban's Biodiversity and Greening Programme – refer to Table 19) which are aimed at creating environments more liveable and lively for local community inhabitants (eThekweni Municipality, 2011:46). Thus lively place planning plans for places that people want and want to spend time in, whilst green space planning provides for the creation of such environments by providing green infrastructure attracting people and therefore providing lived experience lively place planning (Harrison & Dourish, 1996:67).

This part of the study empirically investigated different planning approaches and case studies aimed at providing or creating these green spaces and lively places on a local (South African) front and evaluated each of their successes (or failures) in terms of theory (refer to Tables 29 and 30). It also incorporated two South African pilot tests for further proof and empirical support wherein the success aspects or best practices of both Chapters 5 and 6 were aggregated in order to determine and evaluate their applicability and success in terms of potentially provoking rural development whilst simultaneously addressing rural social challenges – as will now be discussed and determined based on a large scale, primary case study of the Vaalharts.

Chapter 7: Application of findings - Vaalharts Case Study

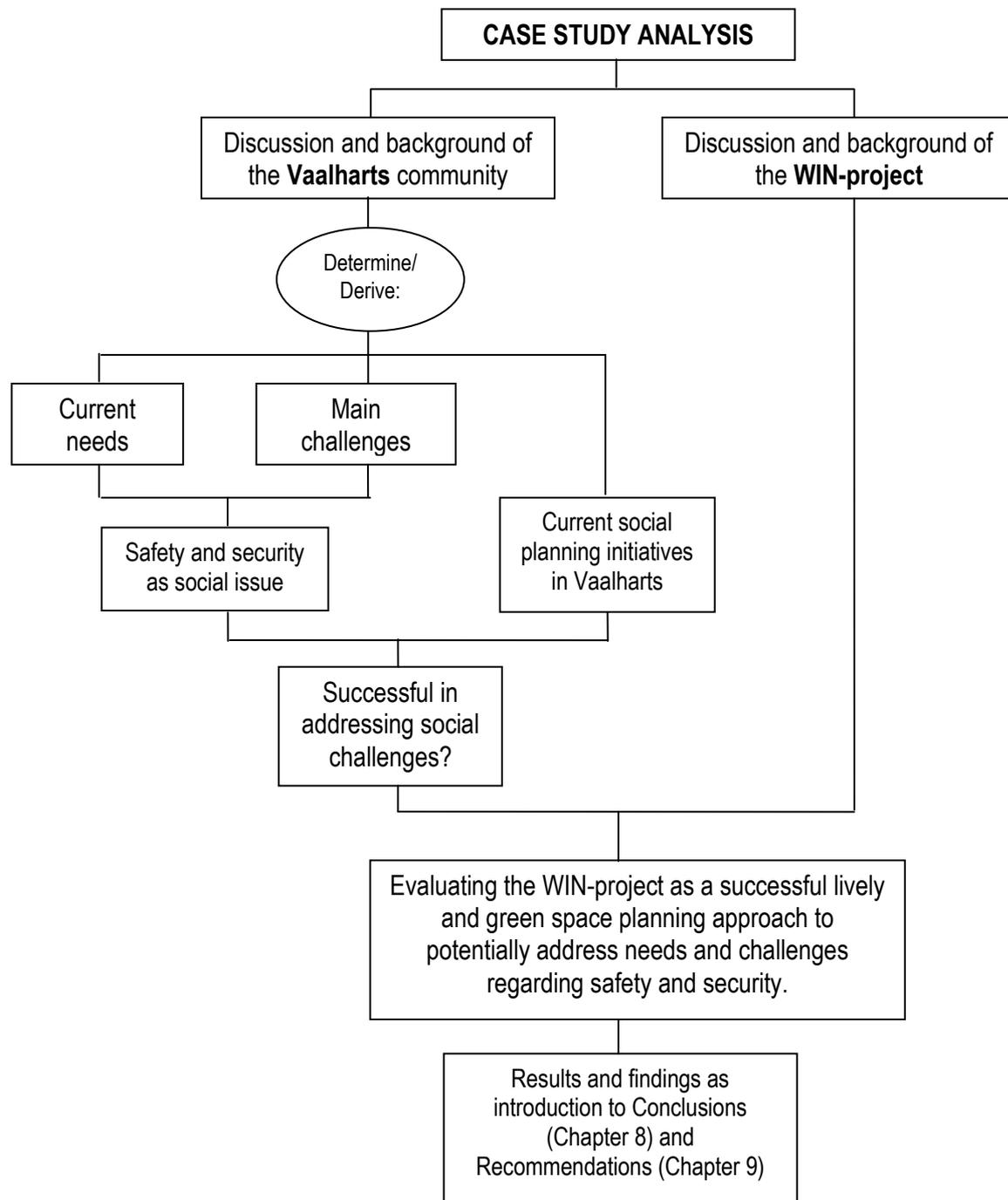


Figure 5: Structure of Chapter 7

Source: Own creation (2013)

The above figure presents a simplified visual representation of the structure of this Chapter. In this first section the Vaalharts area will be introduced as primary case study with all the relevant background information. The following section will provide a continuation of the setting and background of the case study area by including and discussing research previously done on the Vaalharts area by Coetzee (2011). This includes the determining of the community's needs and also provides information on current initiatives attempting to alleviate these determined needs. The following section will then be dedicated to an in-depth analysis of these determined needs in order to provide clarity on the extent of these needs and challenges. These analyses done will then be interpreted to determine if the theory and successful aspects in terms of the social dimension of planning is included in practice – thus to determine the success of the current initiatives in addressing the determined social challenges. The WIN-project will subsequently be included and evaluated as a potential social planning initiative (evaluated in terms of lively place and green space provision) to address the area's social challenges. Chapter 7 will then be concluded with a conclusive 'results and findings' section to summarize whether or not this area and its associated social planning initiatives successfully address rural social challenges in practice, and whether or not these approaches successfully include the lively place and green space planning elements, as identified in theory, which are needed to alleviate social challenges.

7.1 Introduction to the Vaalharts area

The Vaalharts case study falls within the jurisdiction of the North West and Northern Cape Provinces in South Africa (refer to Map 1 in Chapter 1 visually depicting the extent of the Vaalharts area). Selecting the Vaalharts rural area was motivated by the apparent resemblance of characteristics and especially the challenges faced in this area relative to the average rural areas of South Africa. It directly coincides with approaches, challenges and other rural development needs discussed in prior chapters of this research, with direct resemblance to the empirical pilot tests of Nigel, Zonkizizwe and Umgababa discussed in section 6.5 of Chapter 6. The Vaalharts case study is further included as primary case study because of relevant development potential already confirmed and also because of a necessary needs-analysis for this specific area, carried out by Coetzee (2011), a research psychologist and psychological counsellor in the category "community mental health", and his team in partnership with The Department of Science & Technology of the North-West University (Coetzee, 2011:2), that was made available for this case study This will form the basis on which this research will further execute in-depth analyses in order to accurately determine whether or not the relevant theory (as discussed in previous chapters of this research, specifically Chapter 2 to 4) is

successfully included in the practical execution of current social planning initiatives aimed at addressing the community's social challenges.

7.2 Current rural situation in Vaalharts

As mentioned previously, this section will broaden knowledge regarding the background and current situation of the Vaalharts area. The subsections to follow will be devoted to provide background information regarding previous need-assessment research conducted in this area. It will therefore provide an overall review of the determined needs (as assessed and determined through the previous research) as well as the current initiatives executed or implemented as a means to address these needs or challenges. This will provide necessary information to be used for the next section's in-depth analysis.

7.2.1 Previous research conducted in the Vaalharts region

A conclusive report was compiled summarizing all the key findings of the need-assessment research. Based on this report (Coetzee, 2011) the primary aim of this research or assessment project was to conduct research in order to generate data that could be used to inform and direct future community interventions in order to successfully plan for future lively place and green space planning in the Vaalharts region of the North West and Northern Cape Provinces of South Africa.

The data used was founded on a sample of 31 willing individuals and a stratified sample of 958 randomly drawn participants in order to obtain an overall opinion of residents regarding their needs. These participants proportionally represented five communities (Taung, Valspan, Ganspan, Sekhing and Pampierstad – refer to Map 1 in Chapter 1 for visual depiction on each of their specific localities) located in the Vaalharts rural area and the data derived from this analysis could be deemed to be relevant to the greater Vaalharts rural area and (conclusively) to rural communities overall.

The **objective** of this research report was to determine the actual needs of the residents residing in the above-mentioned five communities and was attained by the compiling and identifying of a basic needs inventory and prioritization. Based on this previous report and the consecutive research to follow, the structure of the overall needs-analyses for the Vaalharts area can be summarized as follow:

- 1) A basic needs inventory and prioritization
- 2) Needs analysis
 - a. Statistical Analysis
 - b. Strengths, weaknesses, opportunities (assets) and threats of the Vaalharts

communities; and

c. Gap analysis

3) Interpretation of needs to guide lively place and green space planning

The basic needs analysis consisted of a two (2) phase investigation wherein the first phase a quantitative investigation was conducted by means of interviews with 31 participants. The second phase had a quantitative nature and included the distribution of community field surveys in order to verify and quantify the needs identified in phase one. The objective was to identify the needs, and prioritize the need accordingly.

7.2.2 Needs identification and prioritization in the Vaalharts region

The needs identification was conducted by means of a qualitative investigation (interviews) based on data received from thirty one (31) willing and knowledgeable participants, 14 male and 17 female of which 25 were black or coloured and 6 white.

During an interview with each of these participants individually, the interviewee (community participant) was required to convey his or her perception of their community and the needs that they perceived to exist in the community. After the needs of each community had been determined separately, the data was amalgamated to identify the collective needs representative of the entire Vaalharts region.

The identified needs were then used in a quantitative investigation set out to prioritize the needs that were identified during the needs identification phase of the project. A stratified sample of 958 participants was randomly drawn and invited to complete a questionnaire devised from the qualitative data acquired during the first phase of the research.

The following table indicates the needs identified in the Vaalharts needs-identification and prioritization thereof according to the quantitative survey, along with the main issues identified within each need.

Table 36: Community needs inventory and prioritization in the Vaalharts region

THEMES	SUMMARY OF RESULTS
1. Basic government services	Refers to registration of births/deaths, application for official documents like identification, passports and grants, and renewal of pension grants
2. Basic municipal services	Refers to water and electricity supply, maintenance of municipal buildings and facilities (i.e. swimming pool, graveyard), and garbage removal/waste management

3. Educational or training related services	Refers to basic education needs (school fees, school supplies, learning facilitation and access to information i.e. internet and libraries), further training (skills training and scholarships for tertiary education), schools (crèches, primary and secondary schools), and stimulation for early childhood and late adulthood
4. Employment opportunities	Refers to career guidance, job opportunities, entrepreneurship/self-employment, and marketing of business products
5. Agriculture	Refers to mentoring of young farmers to gain knowledge and skills, seeds/seedlings, equipment, product maintenance (i.e. poison), commercial farming, supplies for livestock (i.e. water, graze fields), and irrigation systems.
6. Infrastructure / community facilities	Refers to improvements in housing and roads, health facilities (i.e. local hospitals and clinics), religious/spiritual facilities/activities, recreation centres for young and old, play- and sports grounds, shops, school facilities (i.e. toilets, fences, bathrooms), and transport (i.e. buses, bicycles and affordable taxis).
7. Health and welfare	Refers to care for children, elderly and disabled (i.e. shelters, orphanages, old age homes and care centres), basic food and clothing, medicine supplies (i.e. ARVs and contraceptives), support groups, community role models, and staff (nurses, social workers and volunteers).
8. Safety and security	Refers to a general need to feel safer.
9. Emergency services	Refers to fire brigade, police and ambulance response.
10. Awareness campaigns	Refers to training community members in HIV prevention, life skills, coping skills, drugs, sanitation, and nutrition.

Source: Coetzee (2011:18)

The above all-encompassing results clearly identify basic needs that are insufficiently addressed in the Vaalharts area that need to be adhered to in order to contribute to and promote liveability in any area.

7.2.3 Current initiatives attempting to address challenges

As can be derived from the previous subsection, numerous social challenges and issues are faced by residents. Based on the previously determined (and tabled) needs certain initiatives were included as a means to address or reduce these challenges. These initiatives will be introduced and evaluated in following section 7.4.1 as part of this research's needs-analysis.

7.3 Needs-analysis

As included by Bradshaw et al. (2003:3), emphasis should be placed on the importance of meeting basic needs as a prerequisite for social challenges to be diminished in rural communities. Therefore a clear and in-depth understanding of the needs specific to this research is needed. As mentioned in the introductory paragraph of this section, these needs further needed to be analysed in order to identify the extent and influence of these priority needs; a necessity as these priority needs (according to Coetzee, 2011:15) have "... the potential to make the biggest impact on the lives of people, especially the poorest of the poor".

Based on previous assessments done (Coetzee, 2011) and the needs consequently determined (section 7.2.2) this section provides an in-depth research to substantiate and accentuate the extent and persistence of the challenges experienced in the Vaalharts area. The previous overarching basic needs-analysis executed and compiled by Coetzee (2011) will now be deepened through three (3) additional and/or extensive analyses in order to gain profound insight and depth into the identified needs. These analyses to be done include a statistical analysis of the previously determined needs; an area analysis of the Vaalharts communities to determine strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats present; and a gap analysis of the determined current needs and challenges.

7.3.1 Statistical analysis of needs

This analysis provides statistical information regarding the identified needs quantified in the second phase of the basic needs assessment (Coetzee, 2011). It is based on the processing of the results of the previously mentioned field survey and presents these as percentages. This allows for statistical comparison and subsequent determination of which need is most prevalent and to therefore list (as done in the following table) the needs in terms of highest scoring – therefore the most prominent and serious needs as identified by the Vaalharts community members.

The following table provides a summary based on the statistical needs assessment (Coetzee, 2011). This research lists the highest scoring needs as perceived and experienced by the community themselves. The table also identifies the corresponding need-related theme as determined in previous subsection 7.2.2 (numbering corresponds to the numbering as was applied in Table 36).

Table 37: Highest scoring needs

HIGHEST SCORING NEEDS (DESCENDING IN TERMS OF PERCENTAGE)	CORRESPONDING NEEDS-RELATED THEME
Water supply (86.5%)	1. Basic municipal services
Housing (85.4%)	6. Infrastructure/ additional facilities
Police services (84.4%)	8. Safety and security
Social workers (80%)	9. Emergency services
Livestock supplies (78.5%)	7. Health and welfare
Access to information (i.e. libraries and internet) (77.8%)	5. Agriculture
Need for IDs and passports (77.1%)	3. Educational or training related services
Job opportunities (75.4%)	1. Access to basic government services
HIV/AIDS awareness campaigns (43.6%)	4. Employment
	10. Awareness campaigns

Source: Own creation based on Coetzee (2011:2)

The following charts provide statistical visual representation of the above results.

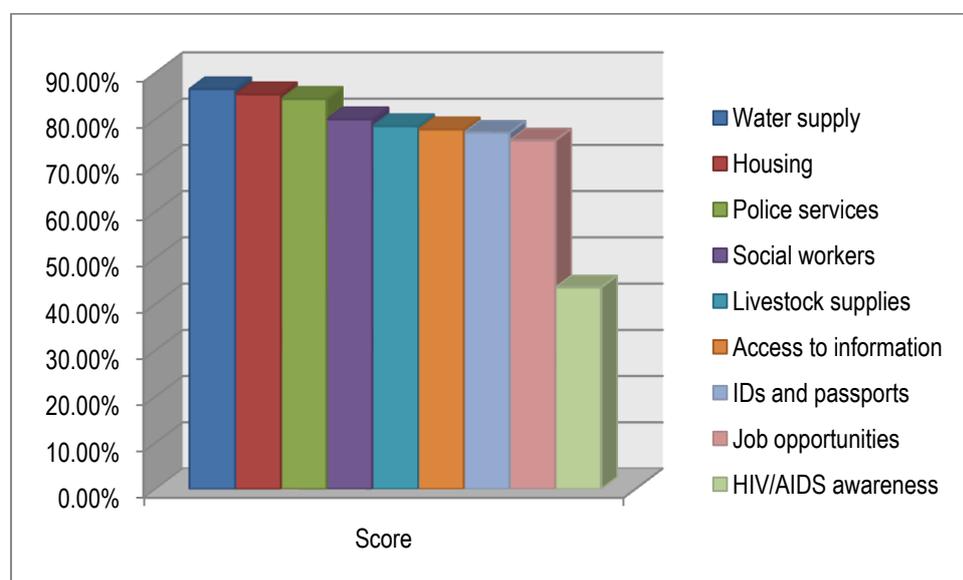


Figure 6: Highest scoring needs

Source: Own creation based on Coetzee (2011)

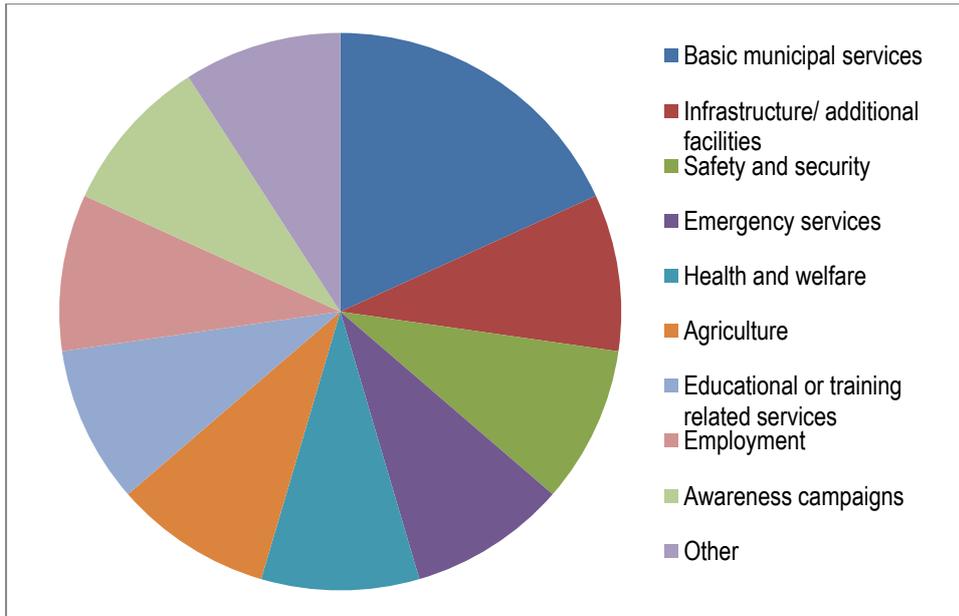


Figure 7: Corresponding needs-related themes

Source: Own creation based on Coetzee (2011)

From Table 37 and the associated statistical graphs it is evident that the greatest challenge the communities face is the lack in provision of numerous services – water, police, social, municipal, etc. Based on the highest scoring needs and the discussion of social challenges in Chapter 2 the table further substantiates the overall lack of planning for the social needs of the community and the dire need for social development initiatives.

7.3.2 Gap analysis of current needs and challenges to be addressed

Based on the universal needs identified and listed in the needs inventory previously (Table 36), the previous analysis aimed to statistically determine which needs scored the highest in order to determine the most urgent challenges as experienced by the community themselves. This analysis will provide further depth and clarity on these determined issues by analysing each need to determine what are the current lacks or shortcomings associated and included in each of these needs.

This gap analysis and processing of the needs is necessary in order to provide a basis for determining whether or not current initiatives are successful social planning in terms of addressing these shortcomings sufficiently. It also serves as guidelines to direct relevant and applicable future planning initiatives in order to adequately address and eliminate these shortcomings.

Table 38: Summary of identified gaps

NEEDS-RELATED THEMES	SHORTCOMINGS IN TERMS OF THE NEED
Basic Government services	More than 70% of the participants deem basic government services to be inadequate. It is an obvious assumption that the effects on the elderly residents in the community is more uncompromising, their being dependant on specifically social grants and renewal of pensions. Transport and postal services are further issues of concern.
Basic municipal services	Basic municipal services such as the general maintenance of public areas, supply of water and electricity, waste disposal and effective drainage systems are clearly unsatisfactory.
Educational or training related services	Inadequate educational and training facilities have impacted the communities' commitment to active participation and self-determination negatively. The lack of financial resources and incentives further induce a low self-esteem.
Employment opportunities	On average 75.4% of the community seems to be encumbered by insufficient employment opportunities and 71.2% by the absence of appropriate career guidance. Instruction in entrepreneurial skills and marketing opportunities for own products have been identified as additional fundamental needs.
Agriculture	Agricultural needs with specific reference to knowledge and skills are emphasised. Agricultural resources necessary for farming are likewise a grave concern.
Infrastructure/community facilities	Housing is shown as the foremost and most crucial basic need of the community, closely followed by the need for recreational, religious, health and school facilities. Shops and other infrastructure-related needs such as transport and roads were also identified as impediments in the community.
Health and welfare	In terms of health and welfare, the need for social services such as social workers and support groups is overwhelming in the community. Care facilities for the elderly, disabled, orphans and the homeless are furthermore strongly emphasised.
Safety and security	Safety and security in the community are adversely influenced by an inadequate police infrastructure resulting in a high crime occurrence.
Emergency services	The absence of emergency services such as an ambulance service, fire brigade and police stations is recognised as substandard.

Awareness campaigns	Awareness campaigns stimulating and improving skills of the community that will progressively influence the quality of life, are considered to be essential.
----------------------------	--

Source: Own creation based on Coetzee (2011)

It is a noticeable finding that the needs-related themes used and tabled above and their corresponding shortcomings also coincide with the statement made by Hofstede (1984) that needs do not generally follow each other in a linear way, but are rather linked and complex.

Based on these shortcomings or lacks present in communities, a certain number of weaknesses and threats occur that inhibits successful rural development. Within any community a number of strengths and opportunities also exist. When focusing on the strengths and opportunities of a community by implementing social planning initiatives, the abovementioned shortcomings can be reduced. The following section will therefore analyse and capture the weaknesses, strengths, opportunities and threats in order to comprehend the aspects present within the Vaalharts that can be beneficial or detrimental to future planning interventions – thus potentially reducing or potentially accumulating abovementioned shortcomings.

7.3.3 Strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats

The SWOT analysis aimed to capture the different representative communities' weaknesses, strengths, opportunities and threats.

Understanding a community's strengths and assets becomes valuable when planning future interventions. These strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats can assist or hamper future planning interventions. A detailed analysis and comprehension is therefore needed to optimally utilize strengths and opportunities and to prevent the continued existence of weaknesses and threats. The emphasis of community interventions is placed on the facilitating of change through the promotion of active participation and self-determination in communities (Cilliers et al., 2012:6). By including aspects of social planning (lively place and green space planning elements which enhance and promote public participation), previously-mentioned high scoring needs and associated shortcomings (thus the lack of social planning) can be alleviated.

The following table displays a short analysis of the strengths and the assets of the Vaalharts region that will influence and guide future social planning initiatives and/or future interventions in this area to eliminate shortcomings within social planning – thus addressing their social challenges.

Table 39: The strengths and assets, weaknesses and threats of the Vaalharts region

STRENGTHS AND ASSETS	WEAKNESSES AND THREATS
Some individuals have a certain level of education and/or training which provides a good and informed foundation for public participation (presence of primary and high schools throughout the region).	Large and dispersed communities governed by one chief – it curbs social interaction between communities; contributes to the lack of leadership and associated service provision.
Cultural and economic asset of arts and crafts – activities.	High unemployment rate and poverty - mostly seasonal workers with an inconsistent income, depending primarily on government grants as source of income and children growing up without financial security.
Resources including minerals (diamonds, tin and possibly gold), dams and sufficient water (even though it is not linked to channels it provides potential in terms of services, need-provision and social development), fertile ground, and rocks and stones – negotiations taking place to potentially start a mine.	Rich agricultural resources but no beneficial guidance, knowledge or structure for exploitation. (Volkswelsyn (social welfare) looked after the people and cultivated their lands for many years. This led to an unhealthy dependence and have now retreated – hence the lack of knowledge).
Active involvement of various groups in the communities (including churches) supplying food, clothes, etc.	Communities lacking identity and uniqueness; also confusion as to which province some communities belong to – it leaves inhabitants feeling socially excluded and unattended; the chief and community members prefer to work with the Northern Cape whilst councilors make use of North West's services. This causes confusion amongst the people as to which municipality they should approach with problems.
Community members that are willing to participate and cooperate with departments, churches, social workers and others willing to help.	RDP housing is provided but these are not occupied due to foreigners buying and converting houses into shops for 'quick cash'.
Active and cooperative youth. They are positive and creative with a culture of sharing and readiness for further studies.	

Source: Own construction based on the Vaalharts Report (Coetzee, 2011:24)

From the above table (with reference to the previous analyses done) it is evident that the Vaalharts region houses a number of rural needs as identified and expressed by community members themselves. These needs become severe social challenges based on the large amount of shortcomings present in the lack of addressing these needs. The above table provides proof that the strengths and opportunities identify numerous potential benefits that can and should be incorporated in, and can promote and enhance social planning initiatives. However, the weaknesses and threats listed are mostly similar to the needs and associated shortcomings previously identified, which proves that the social benefits of the strengths and opportunities are not successfully applied and therefore the needs and challenges remain stringent.

7.4 Interpretation of analysis in terms of the social dimension of planning

The previous section concluded the large extent of the current needs present in the Vaalharts rural area and that, although numerous potential opportunities and strengths are present, the utilization of these is encumbered by the large amount of needs, threats and weaknesses.

This section will interpret the findings of the analysis presented in the previous section and determine the potential benefit of utilizing lively places and green spaces as social planning initiatives to successfully and sustainably address the current social challenges (especially that of safety and security) within the Vaalharts area.

7.4.1 Safety and security as social challenges in the Vaalharts area

Based on the preceding analyses done, 'safety and security' was identified as one of the ten (10) needs-related themes conjured from the input of the purposely selected participants (key informants). The first phase of the needs assessment conducted by Coetzee (2011) defined safety needs as the general need for a safer community including the need for safety, personal and financial security, health and/or wellbeing and a type of safety net or buffer against accidents, illness and the adverse effects thereof.

When comparing this broadened definition of safety and security to the statistical analyses done, six of the nine highest scoring needs can be included in the overarching challenge of safety and security. This includes police services, job opportunities, livestock supplies, social workers, HIV/Aids awareness and access to information. The presence of all of these needs contributes to an increased feeling of being unsafe and insecure.

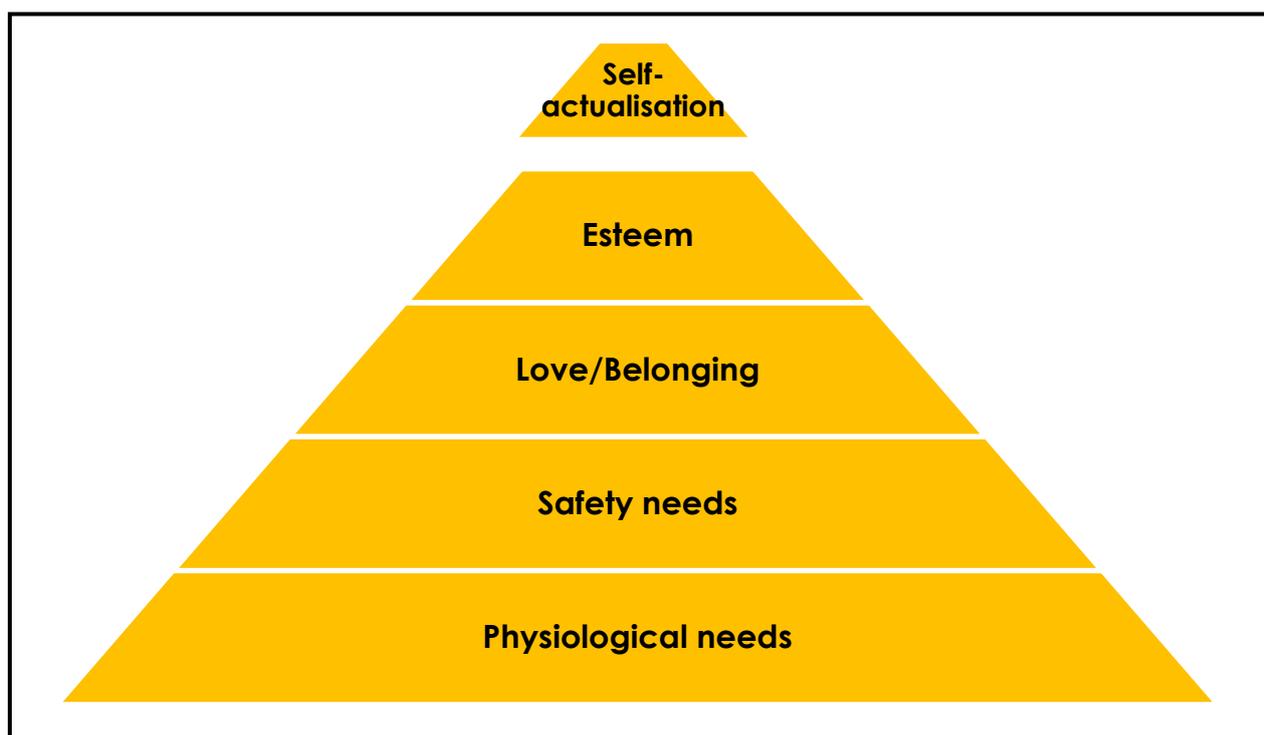


Figure 8: Basic human needs according to Maslow

Source: Adopted from Coetzee (2011:4)

Coinciding with Maslow's hierarchy of needs which places safety needs as the second level of basic human needs, at the bottom of the pyramid (refer to Figure 8 above), it is evident that the provision of safe and secure communities is the basis for understanding and consequently addressing all other needs and associated shortcomings.

Further contributing to safety and security as a prominent and urgent challenge, is the fact that many participants commented that they, or the people in their community are regularly confronted with crime (including household break-ins, rape and child abuse amongst others), therefore all participants expressed a general need to feel safer (Coetzee, 2011:23).

Substantiating the overall need for safety and security is the expressed need for security fences and increased police activity also identified as part of 'emergency services' (refer to Table 36, Theme 9: Emergency services) encompassing a need for ambulance services, police stations and fire stations/

hydrants. The most particular concerns raised were in terms of access, availability and response time (availability of standby ambulances and police vehicles; their response time for reaching the scene of crime) (Coetzee, 2011:23).

The importance of safety and emergency services to the community is further expressed and substantiated by 'Police services' identified as the third highest scoring need with 84,4% of respondents identifying police services as a high priority need (refer to Table 37).

Based on the research report conducted by Coetzee (2011), the community members themselves are of the opinion that these social problems can be eliminated through the following instances:

- Provision of recreation activities/facilities (such as playgrounds) within the communities;
- Making provision for sports, arts and culture and youth activities in the communities; and
- Providing help and support for people with disabilities, the elderly and people who are terminally ill.

Derived from these above-mentioned opinions, it is evident that the community will feel safer when provision is made for these social spaces.

The following section will therefore evaluate current social planning initiatives executed in the Vaalharts region in terms of whether or not it complies to social planning principles (lively place and green space planning elements) and whether or not it successfully addresses the determined (and especially safety and security) needs and challenges of the community.

7.4.2 Evaluation of current initiatives to address social challenges in the Vaalharts area

Based on previous research executed by Coetzee (2011), it was determined that various initiatives were previously applied in different Vaalharts communities, of which the most conversant initiatives applied and delivered include the following:

- Centres for disabled children;
- Health and social care centres (caretaking and feeding of older persons) and orphanages;
- Michoko (care for people with HIV/AIDS); HIV/AIDS, TB and substance-abuse awareness campaigns, educational programmes and National HIV Counseling and Testing (HCT) campaign;
- RDP houses in some villages and toilets in informal settlements;
- Learning centres for children aged 1 – 4 years (crèche);
- Food security feeding schemes; vegetable gardens to assist in feeding schemes;
- Food parcels for clinic patients (provided by a local dietician); soup kitchens supported by churches and schools;

- Arranged transport for children living on farms;
- A sports stadium and other sports facilities and activities (however, the stadium must be hired if children want to use it after school); sports training for older persons (introduced by SASA);
- ‘Adopt-a-cop’ school system, (however, no substitute if police officer is unavailable); some schools also have working relationships with the Department of Social Services;
- Home-based care programmes.

The following table provides a concise reference to these current initiatives implemented in the Vaalharts area and how these initiatives address social challenges as identified in the needs analysis. The table further evaluates these initiatives to determine whether or not it can be regarded as successful social planning initiatives in terms of including all the necessary lively place and green space planning elements.

Table 40: Evaluation of current initiatives in terms of lively place and green space planning

CURRENT SOCIAL PLANNING INITIATIVES OR DEVELOPMENTS	PREVIOUSLY DETERMINED CHALLENGES ADDRESSED	EVALUATE IN TERMS OF LIVELY PLACE AND GREEN SPACE PLANNING
Centres for disabled children	Health and welfare	These programmes or organizations are highly successful in terms of addressing the needs of the people (disabled, children, elderly, education and awareness in terms of HIV/AIDS all included in the needs inventory of the Vaalharts – Table 36).
Health and social care centres for older persons and orphanages	Health and welfare	
HIV/AIDS, TB and substance-abuse awareness campaigns and care, educational programmes and National HIV Counseling and Testing (HCT) campaign	Health and welfare; awareness campaigns	
RDP houses and toilets in informal settlements	Infrastructure/ community facilities	Providing houses doesn’t account for lively place and green space planning, since private gardens are not included as a successful green space (refer to Chapter 5, section 5.3.1).
Crèches	Education or training related services	It provides access to a potential lively place with activities, playgrounds and care for children. Not entirely ‘lively’ since it is provided for a single generation group and therefore not furnished for all.

Vegetable gardens as feeding schemes	Agriculture; health and welfare	The successful provision of a green and vegetated space is evident but these are provided vegetable gardens and the community therefore gains no knowledge or skill development by being personally involved.
Food parcels for clinic patients; soup kitchens	Health and welfare	These provide in needs of the community but are also provided services from organisations and welfare groups and not a lively and social community participation project.
Arranged transport for children living on farms	Infrastructure/ community facilities	It enhances accessibility to communities and their services as well as integrating children and others living further away with education opportunities, social gatherings, etc.
Sports stadium and other sports facilities and activities; sports training for older persons	Infrastructure/ community facilities (however, the stadium must be hired if children want to use it after school)	Sports fields and stadiums are seen as a good example of a provided green space and lively place; but the inclusion of a hiring fee eliminates the important 'accessible to all' element of green space and lively place planning.
Adopt-a-cop school system; working relationships between some schools and Dept. Social Services	Safety and security	It enhances the feeling of safety within areas with working relationships and initiatives in accordance with police services and social services. However no substitute is provided if police officer is unavailable, inhibiting the sustainability and guarantee of this initiative as a consistent approach.
Home-based care programmes	Health and welfare	No specifications are provided as to what these programs entail; but derived from the fact that it is 'home-based' can potentially refer to the inclusion of a private garden which, as previously mentioned, does not account for a successful green space and lively place.

Source: Own creation based on Coetzee (2011:52)

Overall these initiatives address six of the determined needs (health and welfare; awareness campaigns; infrastructure/ community facilities; education or training related services; agriculture and safety and security), but when compared to the substantiated and in depth analysis executed in section

7.3 it seems evident that these are not sufficient in addressing or reducing the gaps present in each need. Shortcomings like governmental services (deemed by more than 70% of participants as inadequate); general maintenance of public areas and waste disposal; the lack of financial resources to fund and pay for educational opportunities; insufficient employment opportunities (75.4%); and knowledge and skills needed for agriculture are some of the identified shortcomings that are not addressed by these above evaluated current initiatives.

With reference to the SWOT-analysis these initiatives are successful in terms of utilizing community group, churches and schools to provide food but strengths and opportunities that could potentially reduce the gap-analysis' shortcomings (like resources, cultural and economic assets, current levels of education, etc.) are not adequately included and utilized in these initiatives and the present weaknesses and threats (similar to the shortcomings mentioned above) continue.

Although certain elements of lively place and green space planning are included (vegetable gardens, lively educational spaces, safety and sports fields), most of them lack key elements needed to be regarded as successful lively places and green spaces – for example sports fields need to be hired and are therefore not accessible; vegetable gardens are provided and do not include any participation from the community; lively educational spaces are exclusive for children therefore not providing diversity and variety for all; etc. Thus social planning in terms of providing green space and lively places is not successfully present in these initiatives. The previous subsection also determined the importance of safety and security as social challenges and how the planning of safe social places can address these issues; but with no specific or successful application of such safety social planning initiatives, the current challenges and associated gaps remain inadequately addressed and therefore persist.

7.4.3 Potential benefit of integrating social planning initiatives in the Vaalharts area

As identified in Table 40 it is evident that some aspects of lively place and green space planning are present in the current social planning initiatives, but it is not successfully and efficiently provided in practice.

As previously mentioned the community is of the opinion that the provision of sustainable and safe social places can reduce the current social challenges. Substantiating this, Table 40 proves that these initiatives can address numerous challenges, but in order to address the shortcomings and gaps the lively place and green space planning elements need to be enhanced and successfully provided as determined by theory.

The planning of safe lively and green social places provides potential social benefits in terms of addressing their current identified rural challenges in order to, essentially, contribute to the overall strengthening of the Vaalharts area and sustainability of rural communities.

Thus a successful social planning initiative that includes all key lively place and green space planning elements will provide potential social benefits in terms of successfully addressing the identified challenges (especially that of safety and security) and the associated gaps within the Vaalharts region. The following section evaluates the WIN-project as a social planning initiative aimed at addressing challenges present in the Vaalharts region (especially that of safety and security). The success of the WIN-project will be evaluated based on its potential to include lively place and green space planning objectives and address social challenges.

7.5 Evaluating the WIN-project as initiative to address Vaalharts-challenges

The preceding sections of this chapter identified the large amount and extent of the needs and challenges present in the Vaalharts area. It also evaluated and identified the current lack of successful social planning initiatives implemented to address these challenges, but determined the need and relevance of successfully including lively place and green space planning elements within a social planning initiative to successfully curb all challenges and its associated shortcomings.

In reaction thereto the WIN-project was launched. This section is therefore dedicated to shortly providing background information regarding what the project entails and its aims. The potential of the WIN-project to support and address the planning of lively places and green spaces within the Vaalharts area, with the objective to address the communities' social challenges will then be evaluated.

7.5.1 Background and information regarding WIN-project

The WIN-project (Water Innovation Project) was created with the aim to address the high vulnerability in the Vaalharts (% of children who drown in nearby river per annum), inadequate infrastructure (providing safe swimming facilities) and lack of basic services which is further accompanied by, and associated with, poor health statuses and low income-earning opportunities.

Based thereon the following initiative or project was identified as part of the WIN-project:

- Water and recreational parks

Because of the many occurrences of youths that drowned in these regions, the designing and structuring of three water and recreational parks in this district within the next two to three years

were initiated. These parks will include a water spray park, upgraded sports facilities and children’s play facilities, social areas as well as school and community vegetable gardens.

7.5.2 Evaluation of WIN-project initiatives in terms of social dimension planning

As determined in Chapter 2, the social planning dimension is aimed at planning for the human scale – thus to plan for all social areas of a community – especially in planning for the reduction and addressing of social challenges experienced. This subsection evaluates the WIN-project as a social dimension planning initiative aimed at addressing rural community challenges present by evaluating the degree in which the WIN-project include lively place and green space planning objectives..

The following table includes a similar evaluation of the practical presence of lively place and green space planning elements in these projects as was done in Chapter 5 (Tables 24, 26, 29 and 30) as well as Table 40 above.

Table 41: Evaluation of WIN-project initiatives in terms of lively place and green space planning

CURRENT SOCIAL PLANNING INITIATIVES OR DEVELOPMENTS	CHALLENGES TO ADDRESS	EVALUATION IN TERMS OF LIVELY PLACE AND GREEN SPACE PLANNING OBJECTIVES
Water and recreational parks	Basic municipal services (water supply and maintenance of municipal buildings and facilities (like a swimming pool). Infrastructure/ community facilities (recreation facilities for young and old, play- and sports grounds) Safety and security (provides protection against the further occurrence of drowning); Health and welfare (basic food provided by vegetable gardens); Agriculture (provision of community vegetable gardens – therefore educating the community members to plant vegetables themselves and indirectly addressing the education or	<p style="text-align: center;">LIVELY PLACE</p> <p>PUBLIC</p> <p>People/ Inhabitants included X</p> <p>Lived experience/ Interaction X</p> <p>‘PLACE’</p> <p>Accessible X</p> <p>Unique identity X</p> <p>Visibility X</p> <p>Maintenance and Management X</p> <p>Attractions X</p> <p>LIVELY</p> <p>Meet the needs of people X</p> <p>Integrative X</p>

	training related service need).	<p>Diverse activities X</p> <p>Versatile functions</p> <hr/> <p>GREEN SPACE</p> <p>GREEN</p> <p>Vegetation X</p> <p>Natural surface</p> <p>Various types</p> <p>PUBLIC</p> <p>Accessible X</p> <p>Integrative X</p> <p>Public X</p> <p>inclusion and participation</p> <p>Lived experience</p> <p>QUALITY</p> <p>Managed and maintained facilities X</p> <p>Functions X</p> <p>Safe X</p>
--	---------------------------------	---

DISCUSSION

The inclusion of the community in the provision and vegetating of vegetable gardens – therefore also including a variety of green vegetation and surfaces and promoting its accessibility;

Lived experience and social interaction to be evoked through the provision of sports fields, social areas and child play-facilities;

The inclusion of various role players, stakeholders and departments provides for better maintenance and management; Being the first of its kind contributes to its unique identity and the given water AND recreational functions provide a diversity of attractions and functions for all ages;

The provision of water-based activities reduces the need to walk to river and dams, therefore improving overall safety and eliminating the possibility of children drowning in these rivers.

This initiative can therefore overall be regarded as highly successful in including lively place planning elements (9 out of 10 – 90%) and less (but still successfully) including green space planning elements (7 out of 11 – 63.63%).

Source: Own creation based on Coetzee (2011:52)

From the above table it is evident that the provision of water and recreational parks within the Vaalharts area can be regarded as a successful social planning initiative, including most of the necessary theory regarding key lively place and green space planning elements in the practical execution. Correspondingly, most of the needs determined in the needs inventory compiled by Coetzee (2011) are addressed, as well as the shortcomings researched and determined in the previous gap analysis executed and tabled in Table 38. It remains evident, though, that more can be done in terms of providing more 'green' elements.

7.5.3 Success in terms of addressing safety and security challenges in the Vaalharts

Taking into account the great number of drownings experienced within these communities it is evident that safety is regarded as an issue. The provision of a mere 'water spray park' limits the possibility for drowning and includes people to join in the activities whether they have the ability to swim or not. Upgraded facilities also create the feeling of safer and more stable equipment contributing to (especially) the safety of children.

As mentioned in the table above, the direct engagement of stakeholders and other departments creates a sense of safety and presence. The presence of vegetable gardens at schools also provides safe access to food.

As identified in the theoretical Chapter 2 discussing the current status of challenges in rural communities, the issue regarding unsafe distances and large unsafe open areas for women and children in terms of access to water and food was raised numerously. Providing a water and recreational park in close proximity does not only create accessible social activities and spaces, but eliminates large open spaces and provides constant presence and activity. The community and school vegetable gardens also provide food in close proximity, eliminating the need to travel far (and unsafe) distances especially at night, therefore eliminating the safety hazard as well.

7.6 Results and findings

Based on the discussions and evaluations executed in this chapter, it is evident that the provision of safe social places (i.e. water and recreational parks) which successfully includes lively place and green space planning elements provides a more successful practical social planning approach than those lacking these elements. In terms of successfully and sustainably addressing rural challenges (especially safety and security), the execution of a lively and green social planning approach can also be regarded as more successful.

Therefore it is evident that lively place-making and green space planning can have a drastic effect on the provision of a successful platform for social interaction and (especially) reducing or limiting safety and security hazards.

The following Conclusions chapter provides a summary on how the WIN-project initiative corresponds to the best practices derived from previous lively place planning approaches and green space planning case study evaluations. The final Recommendations chapter will then provide proposals on how to practically implement and improve this current initiative to include more green space planning elements and to improve overall sustainability and social challenge addressing.

Chapter 8: Conclusions

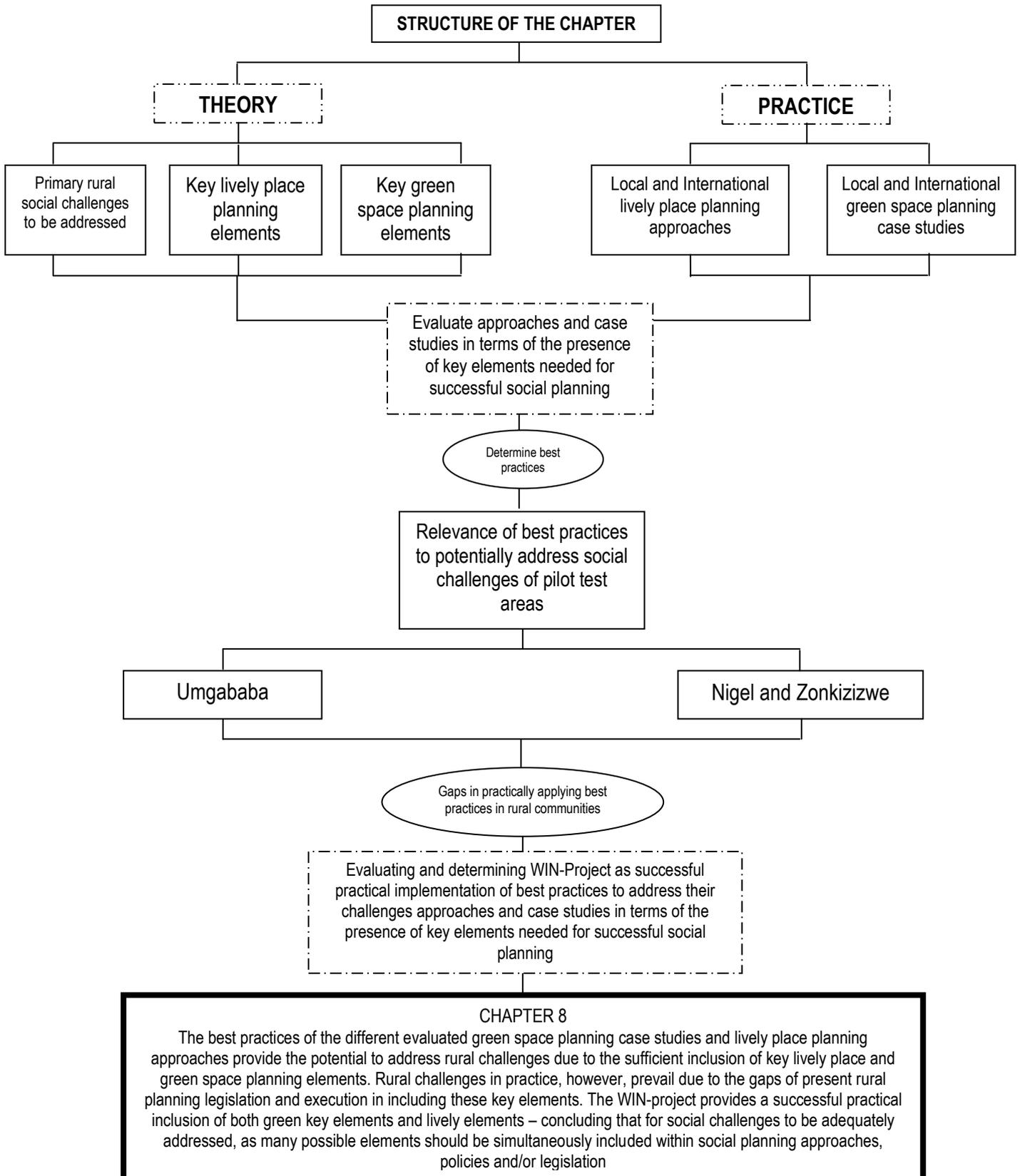


Figure 9: Structure of Chapter 8

Source: Own creation (2013)

8.1 Introduction

The introductory Chapter stated that this research is based on the premise of rural communities and the unique yet universal social challenges such areas incessantly inherit (Chapter 2). Within these theoretical discussions, various practical approaches and case studies locally and internationally were identified, identifying best practice approaches, especially in terms of lively place planning and green space planning, as a social planning approach to address the social challenges within rural areas. Chapter 6 further included two local case studies (Umgababa; and Nigel and Zonkizizwe) to which these approaches were applied with the aim to determine the relevance and success with regards to addressing social challenges in South African rural communities. Chapter 7 followed with a detailed discussion of the background and nature of the primary case study, the Vaalharts area, determining needs and challenges experienced, and identifying current 'lively place' and 'green space' approaches aimed at reducing and addressing these social challenges. The WIN project was introduced as a successful rural social planning approach in terms of addressing social challenges through the provision and planning of lively places and green spaces.

Conclusively, the research conducted aimed to address the following primary research questions as was stated in the initiating Chapter of this study:

- What are lively and public places (*Chapter 3, section 3.2 especially summarized in Tables 9 and 10*), as well as green spaces? (*Chapter 4, section 4.2 with typologies listed in Table 17 and the role of green spaces discussed in section 4.6*)
- What are the existing international and local approaches regarding planning of these spaces? (*Discussed in subsection 3.2.2 and section 4.4 for lively place and green space planning respectively and summarized partly in Tables 12, 14 and 18*)
- How can the best practices of international and local approaches be applied to rural communities? (*Partly discussed in Chapter 4, Section 4.8 on lively place and green space planning relevance in rural communities but mostly identified and discussed in Chapter 5 Tables 27 and 28, Chapter 6 Tables 31 and 32 and applied to pilot tests in Chapter 6 section 6.5 and in the Case Study of the Vaalharts in Chapter 7; Mostly also to be identified and applied in Chapter 8 and 9 regarding the conclusion and recommendations*)
- Is it possible to address social issues within rural communities through the planning of lively places and green spaces? (*Identified and mentioned in numerous sections and discussions; to be specifically identified within the conclusions and recommendations - Chapters 8 and 9 respectively*)

This chapter therefore serves as summary of the findings and practical application of the theory regarding lively place and green space planning in order to determine whether or not social challenges in rural communities can be addressed by planning for lively places and green spaces.

8.2 Linking theory and practice

In order to link theory and practice and to simultaneously conclude the answers to the above research questions, the following section will conclude the research done in the previous chapters in a progressive manner. The sections are divided in terms of the applicable research question (as listed above) that was accordingly answered at that stage of the research.

8.2.1 Rural challenges and corresponding lively place and green space planning influence

The first of the theoretical chapters (Chapter 2) determined the primary social needs that occur in rural communities, summarizing the findings and primary social challenges in Table 4. Chapter 2 also introduced specific current rural planning legislation that is supposed to address these challenges through social planning. “Social challenges” need “social planning” to successfully address these challenges. Current legislation and policies include numerous potential successful initiatives, some of which are captured in the following table:

Table 42: Successful proposed initiatives of current rural legislation and policies

PLANNING LEGISLATION AND/OR POLICY	SUCCESSFUL PROPOSED INITIATIVE
Rural Development Framework (RDF)	- To involve rural people in local government decisions (RDF);
	- To provide affordable infrastructure and improve services in rural areas (especially that of safety and security) (RDF);
Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy (ISRDS)	- To provide universal access to social amenities (ISRDS);
	- To enhance urban-rural linkages and aim for comprehensive regional development (ISRDS);
Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP)	- To create an enabling environment for communities to participate in development (CRDP);
	- To socially mobilize rural communities to take initiative (CRDP).

Source: Own creation based on the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (1997 and 2000) and Gwanya (2010)

Even though these initiatives seem to be relevant and successful in terms of alleviating rural social challenges, the practical execution thereof remain on site- or city scale as opposed to people-scale (the social planning principle needed to successfully reduce challenges), prohibiting successful social challenge addressing.

Lively place planning (Chapter 3) and green space planning (Chapter 4) was defined and discussed to answer the first research question on what lively place and green spaces are. Lively place planning and green space planning were consequently introduced as successful social planning approaches to address social challenges, executed on the people-scale. The provision of lively places and green spaces is regarded as 'successful' when their most characteristic and important elements are included in the practical implementation of these lively places and green spaces. These important elements are conclusively tabled below:

Table 43: Conclusive checklist for evaluating lively places and green spaces

Checklist for lively place planning	Checklist for green space planning
<p>Public</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Are the people or inhabitants of the community included in the decision-making and/or execution processes? - Does the place promote or plan for social interaction and create a feeling of lived experience? 	<p>Green</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Does the planning of the green space promote and enhance vegetation – i.e. planting of trees, providing public gardens, agriculture, etc.? - Does the space protect and promote the unique and indigenous natural surface?
<p>Place</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Is the place accessible (open for all, no entrance fee, close to routes and roads)? - Does it provide a unique identity? - Is the place visible and open? - Is the place well maintained and managed and are there relevant institutions executing regular maintenance to buildings, facilities, equipment, gardens, etc.? - Are there unique attractions (in terms of activities, functions, culture, indigenous aspects, local 'branding' etc.)? 	<p>Public</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Is the green space accessible? - Does the place integrate the natural environment, built environment and the community? - Is the public included in participatory decision making processes and in the provision and creation of these spaces? - Is it merely an open piece of land with grass or does it promote lived experience in terms of attracting regular human presence and activity?

Lively	Quality
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Does the place meet the needs of the people (safe and sociable space, functional, useful, and inclusive)? - Does the space integrate the community – thus integrating residential, business and recreational areas or activities; as well as integrating the people with the environment? - Does the place provide a diverse range of activities and versatile functions for any person, gender, age group and race? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Is the garden, vegetation, facilities, etc. well and regularly maintained with good and on-site management? - Do they provide functions to attract and integrate the people i.e. picnic spots, outdoor activities and/or fields, etc.? - Is the space safe at any time of day?

Source: Own creation (2013)

The first three Chapters provided the relevant theoretical background on which the following conclusions are based:

1. The most dominant social challenges identified include poverty, health, social inclusion and equality, and an overall need for safety (safe social spaces, food safety, safety for vulnerable groups, water safety, etc.).
2. The most important elements of lively place planning that need to be included in a social planning approach include ‘public’, ‘place’ and ‘lively’. In order to successfully provide these, certain associated aspects should be included like the inclusion of the public, the stimulation of social interaction, accessibility for any one, well-maintained and managed places, diverse and versatile functions and activities attracting human presence and lived experiences.
3. In terms of green space planning and provision, important elements that need to be planned for include ‘green’, ‘public’ and ‘quality’. These include important associated aspects that need to be present in any green space social planning approach like vegetation, the presence or protection of natural surfaces, diverse types of naturally green spaces (parks, gardens, cemeteries, school fields, etc.), the inclusion of the public in creating and/or maintaining these spaces, safe spaces with regular human presence, as well as spaces accessible to the public in terms of proximity and entrance (thus the presence of entrance fees and the provision of private gardens are regarded as ‘unsuccessful’ green spaces).

Through the research of social challenges and lively places and green spaces as social planning approaches, it seems that the determined social challenges directly correspond with these key elements of lively places and green spaces. The following table provides examples and comparisons of how lively places and green spaces can contribute to the different social levels, and how these benefits associated with the planning of lively places and green spaces can address the social challenges.

Table 44: Lively place planning and green space planning benefits in terms of social challenges

DIFFERENT SOCIAL LEVELS	BENEFIT OF GREEN SPACE AND LIVELY PLACE PLANNING	SOCIAL CHALLENGE TO BE ADDRESSED THROUGH GREEN SPACE AND LIVELY PLACE PLANNING
Individual	<p>Lively place planning</p> <p>Display, explore and live culture and identities;</p> <p>Provision of jobs (maintenance and management).</p>	<p>Social assistance</p> <p>Vulnerability</p> <p>Education</p> <p>Poverty</p> <p>Deprivation</p> <p>Employment opportunities</p>
	<p>Green space planning</p> <p>Opportunities for physical and psychological rejuvenation;</p> <p>Well-being, escapism and breathing space;</p> <p>Sense of ‘social place’;</p> <p>Enhancing quality of life;</p> <p>Spiritual and moral functions.</p>	<p>Social provisions/ infrastructure</p> <p>Health care</p>
Family	<p>Lively place planning</p> <p>Awareness of diversity and difference.</p>	<p>Inequality (race, class, gender)</p>
	<p>Green space planning</p> <p>Space for interaction, joint learning and relaxation;</p> <p>Appreciation and exercise.</p>	<p>Health care</p> <p>Education</p> <p>Poor living conditions</p>
Community	<p>Lively place planning</p> <p>Opportunities in terms of social interaction, social mixing and social inclusion;</p> <p>Develop community ties;</p> <p>Events, concerts and alternative displays;</p> <p>Plays a vital role in the social life of communities.</p>	<p>Rural development</p> <p>Social assistance</p> <p>Social provisions/ infrastructure</p>
	<p>Green space planning</p> <p>Opportunity for social contact and community integration;</p>	<p>Rural development</p> <p>Social exclusion</p>

	<p>Contributes to sense of place; Adds to community identity, solidarity and security; Brings diverse communities together – interaction between different socio-economic and ethnic groups; Providing shade, fuel wood, fruits and medicinal plants; Attracts tourism.</p>	<p>Social provisions/ infrastructure Health care Malnutrition Poor living conditions Employment opportunities</p>
Children	<p>Lively place planning Opportunities for children and young people to meet, play or simply socialize with one another; Safer public places.</p>	<p>Vulnerability Social exclusion Social provisions/ infrastructure</p>
	<p>Green space planning Different experience – awe and imagination; Education and research; Preservation for future generations.</p>	<p>Illiteracy (education)</p>
Social environment	<p>Lively place planning More integrated and sustainable communities; Contributes to natural but maintained landscapes and vegetation; More approachable places any time of day – i.e. creating safer public places.</p>	<p>Safety and security Accessibility Rural development</p>
	<p>Green space planning Animal and plant habitats (source of oxygen and sequesters carbon dioxide); Reduces noise pollution; Alleviates urban heat island effect – contributes to urban ecosystem</p>	<p>Energy, sanitation, clean water and pollution Health care Poor living conditions Rural development</p>

	services (i.e. fundamental to the healthy functioning of human societies); Conservation of biodiversity; Aesthetics (contribution to the attractiveness of the community and/or environment);	
--	---	--

Source: Own creation (2013)

The successful application and planning of these green spaces and lively places therefore provides numerous social benefits. It provides safer spaces that are maintained and managed for any person to enjoy. It provides a variety of social functions and activities that allure social interaction and simultaneously successfully address social challenges, especially the most dominant challenges as concluded previously.

8.2.2 International and local best practice approaches and case studies

Evaluations of lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies in local and international context (as presented in Chapters 5 and 6) were done to determine their success in terms of implementing identified elements needed to plan a successful lively place and/or green space. The following subsections present a summary of the statistical analysis of these evaluations done in Chapters 5 and 6.

- a. Lively place planning approaches
 - i) International lively place planning approaches

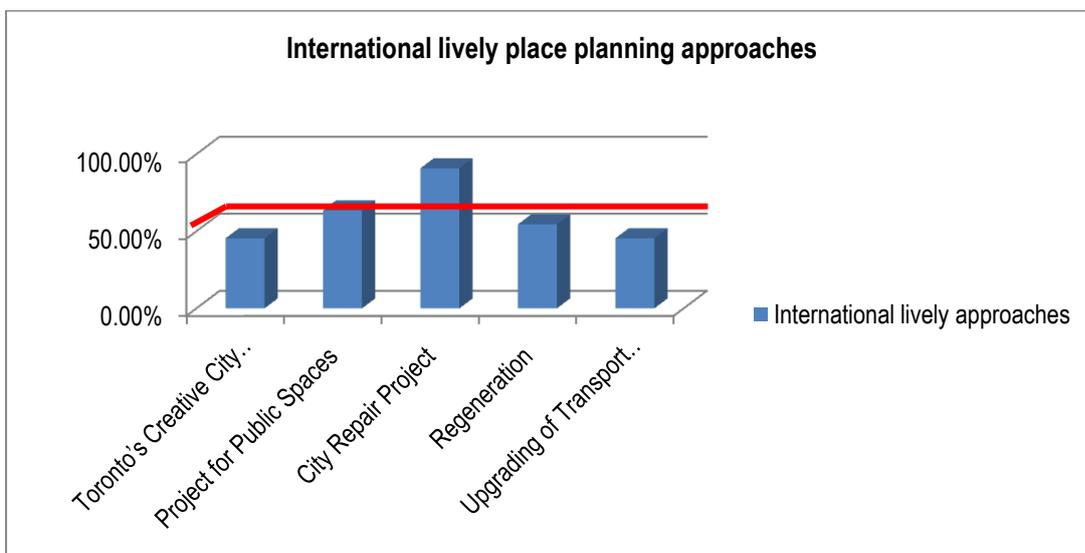


Figure 10: International lively place planning statistical graph
 Source: Own creation (2013)

As presented in the graph, the indicated red line represents the 50% result mark, indicating how many and which of the international planning approaches scored higher than 50% in terms of the evaluations done in Chapters 5 and 6.

In this case only two approaches are identified, Project for Public Spaces and City Repair Project (scoring higher than 50%), insinuating that they are the approaches that (overall) included the most lively place and green space elements. Thus the other approaches remain successful with advantageous and successful practices, but for the purpose of this research only these approaches including the most lively place and green space planning elements (more than half – 50%) will be identified and listed in Table 45 to follow.

ii) Local lively place planning approaches

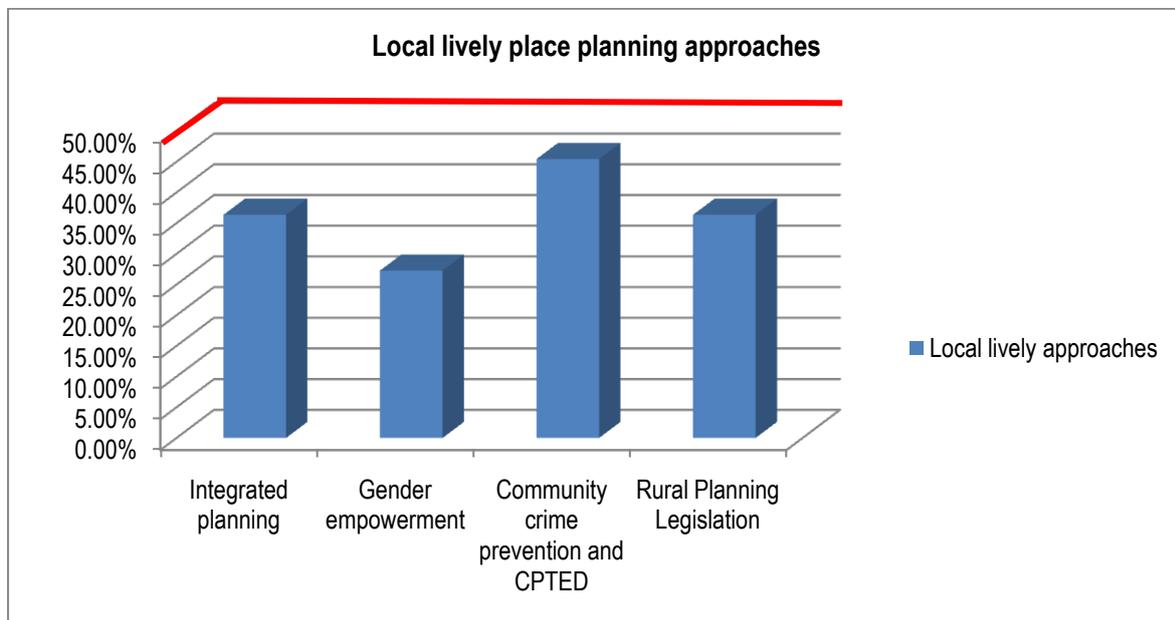


Figure 11: Local lively place planning statistical graph
Source: Own creation (2013)

The corresponding graph indicates that no local planning approach was successful in sufficiently including more than half of the key lively place elements needed - with none of them scoring 50% or higher. Even though numerous social planning benefits arise from these local approaches, they lack the sufficient inclusion of lively and green space planning elements. For the sake of further research and comparisons the highest scoring approach (Community Crime Prevention and CPTED – 45.45%) will be included, including only slightly less than half of the necessary key elements needed for the successful planning of lively places.

In context, lively place planning was identified as a core social planning approach aimed at planning for the social dimension (thus for the people and their challenges) in Chapter 2. Concluded from previous evaluations done and the statistical analyses represented above, Rural Planning Legislation scores

very low and does not comply with the standard of being regarded as ‘successful’. Conclusively this proves that current local legislation and policy aimed at promoting rural development cannot be regarded as a successful social planning approach and will henceforth not successfully and sustainably address rural challenges experienced.

Derived from this conclusion it becomes evident that rural planning legislation needs to be revised and more of the identified key elements of lively place and green space planning should be included for the future successful addressing of rural social challenges.

- b. Green space planning case studies
 - i) International green space planning case studies

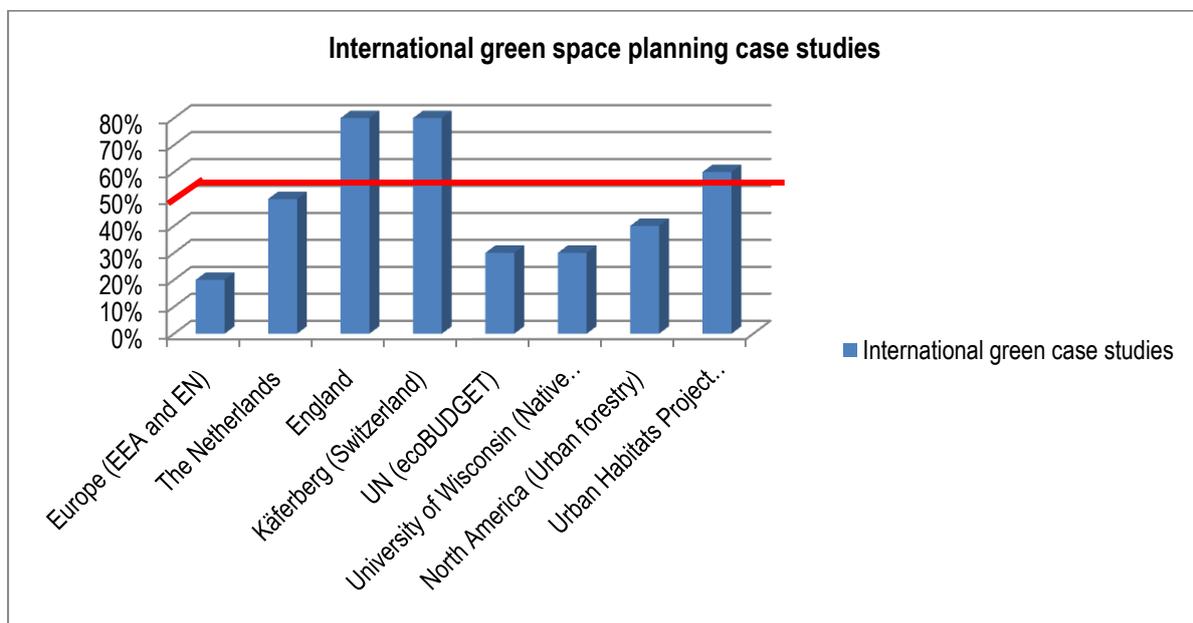


Figure 12: International green space planning statistical graph
 Source: Own creation (2013)

As presented in the graph the red line (representing the 50% result mark), reveal that only three case studies are identified. England, Käferberg (Switzerland) and the Urban Habitats Project (Netherlands, UK and Belgium) are the only approaches scoring higher than 50%, implying that they are the approaches that (overall) can be regarded as successful and therefore as best practices. These best practices are listed and discussed in Table 45.

Cross-referencing the section discussing and evaluating these case studies (Chapter 5, section 5.4, Table 28) proves that the case studies that did not score adequately are not completely ‘unsuccessful’ and ‘unusable’; the primary deficit of these case studies lies in their one dimensional focus – they aim to enhance or redefine a specific lively aspect. These remain important and successful aspects, but with rural communities being complex communities with a range of interrelated challenges, needs,

deficits and shortcomings (Chapter 2), the case studies scoring higher than 50% promote a more multidimensional approach to social planning and their best practices are therefore the most relevant and applicable to successfully address and plan for these complex rural communities and their challenges.

ii) Local green space planning case studies

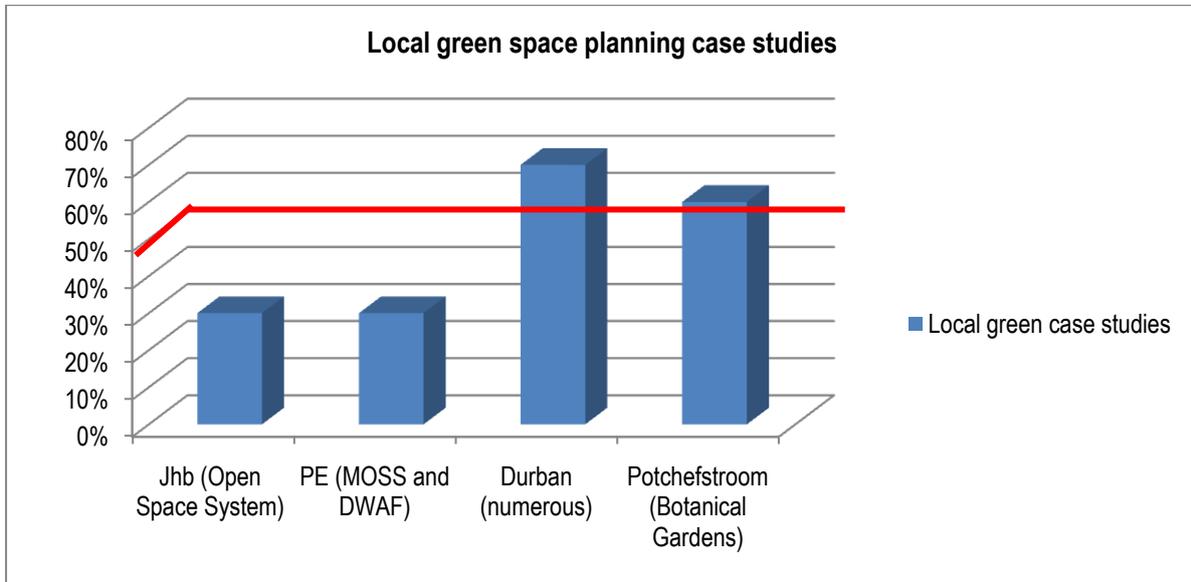


Figure 13: Local green space planning statistical graph
Source: Own creation (2013)

Two case studies that reasonably stand out from the other scores are Durban with its multidimensional approach; and the concept and planning of the Botanical Gardens present in Potchefstroom. This supports and emphasizes the conclusion made with regards to a number of international green space planning case studies not regarded as 'successful' – the Port Elizabeth and Johannesburg case studies focus on singular aspects (planting trees and maintaining existing green spaces) which are highly necessary, but in terms of addressing rural social challenges the multidimensional case studies are more relevant and will therefore further be used for best practices to address rural challenges.

Thus, in terms of green space planning, three international case studies were regarded as successful in including key concepts needed for future addressing of social challenges (England, Käferberg and Urban Habitats Project) whereas two local green space planning case studies (Durban and Botanical Gardens) were evaluated as successful. These case studies will therefore be used and applied to determine the best practices relevant to address rural social challenges.

From the above graphs with specific reference to the evaluations and associated discussions executed in Chapters 5 and 6, it is evident that not all social planning approaches provide definite successful lively places and green spaces. Even though they include successful aspects and can thus still be

regarded as somewhat successful, they lack the sufficient inclusion of the important elements needed for the successful provision of lively places and green space as social planning approach. Conclusively, for the sake of this research objectives, only those who scored higher than 50% will further be included, since they will include the most elements and can therefore be regarded as the ‘best practices’ in terms of planning for green spaces and lively places. These evaluated and determined ‘best practices’ of the various green space planning case studies and lively place planning approaches will be discussed and concluded in the following section.

8.2.3 Application of best practices in rural communities

Since most of these approaches and case studies are based on urban-areas and this research focus on rural communities, the best practices of the approaches and case studies regarded as ‘successful’ (thus those that scored 50% or higher) need to be compared to the rural situation to determine their relevance and potential to specifically address the rural challenges identified in Chapter 2.

Table 45: Successful lively place approaches and green space case studies to address rural challenges

APPROACHES AND CASE STUDIES	BEST PRACTICES	RURAL CHALLENGES ADDRESSED
LIVELY PLACE PLANNING APPROACHES		
INTERNATIONAL		
Project for Public Spaces	- Prides itself on local innovation and produce within a local market to create vibrant and unique places	- Employment, poverty and rural development (in terms of economic progress) - locals to provide innovative produce for an income.
	- A variety of attractions are applicable with diverse and unique produce	- Attracts presence, social opportunities and social interaction.
	- Enhanced economic growth and self-employment opportunities	- Employment, poverty and rural development (in terms of economic progress) - locals to provide innovative produce for an income.
City Repair Project	- Local participation, innovation and application ensuring maintenance and management	- Safer equipment; on-site presence ensuring better safety.
	- Citizen-driven place-making	- Public inclusion and participation to directly adhere to their needs and wishes
	- Converts a daily-used space into a social place that provides presence and therefore a better sense of safety	- Safety in terms of presence and eliminating useless open spaces
	- Enhances the environment and therefore the overall value of the area	- Poor living conditions, deprivation, health and welfare – better overall provisions contributing to happiness and comfort of residents.
	- Promotes neighbourhood bonds and interaction through providing a social space	- Social provision, exclusion and inequality – markets and converted spaces provide social environments
	- Provides activities and functions for children and adults	- Safety – enhanced presence; structured and equipped environments and social provisions.

LOCAL		
Community Crime Prevention and CPTED	- Acknowledging the natural environment as a potential safety and security hazard and using this initial hazard as potential solution – redesigning and formalizing vegetation and natural elements to curb it as crime catalyst	- Promotes better planning of future safety and security initiatives to curb crime - Poor living conditions – safer and more liveable environment with better design and layout principles
	- Formalizing and clarifying basic elements like street names, house numbers and building-entrances to promote easier access (especially for police) and better visibility (for community watches)	- Better safety and security through easier access for police and other crime prevention units
	- More accurate crime prevention when including the public in crime units as they know the areas that are most prone to crime.	- Social provisions/infrastructure (better access to security services)
	- A successful approach in creating potential safety training, providing employment and simultaneously addressing safety and security as social challenge.	- Employment and education in security and safety training
GREEN SPACE PLANNING CASE STUDIES		
INTERNATIONAL		
England	- Multidimensional and controversial planning approach initiating separate but integrating green space planning projects and initiatives	- Unemployment - including the public in management and maintenance - Meeting a variety of basic needs simultaneously
	- The various projects to be regarded as 'phases' to ultimately create an all-inclusive, successful green space.	- Social provisions of green functions, sports facilities and recreational areas
	- 'Green flag award' as incentive motivates community members and local government to provide <u>quality</u> green spaces to qualify for this award as opposed to merely providing green open spaces of land	- Poor living conditions – better access to maintained and safe quality spaces - Healthy environment.
	- Promotes knowledge and information regarding the value of green spaces to promote more sensible and valued usage by the community	- Educating communities in natural landscape, protection and usage.
	- Includes 'quality green space planning and provision' within their social planning legislation as imperative	- Safe and secure spaces for people
Käferberg (Switzerland)	- Prides itself on the protection of the current natural environment but simultaneously provides lively place and green space planning elements for social interaction and well-being	- Social exclusion; - Health through safe recreational opportunities; - Poor living conditions (organized, neat and managed spaces for people to use)
	- Green space planning developments and initiatives based on survey results of the community to provide spaces that they prefer and would therefore use – social presence.	- Social assistance in terms of local needs; - Social provision of amenities and opportunities;

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Provides transport from nearby towns and communities as enhanced accessibility 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Safety and security through on-site visual presence of people and users, day and night as well as safe transported access. - Vulnerability (women and children feeling unsafe in open unprotected areas);
Netherlands, Belgium and UK (Urban Habitats Project)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New, broader, inclusive ways of creating and maintaining green spaces are provided 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Rural development - Integrating various rural communities transfers best practices and failures between communities for successful practical implementations.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Integration and strong relationships over borders promotes the exchange of various ideas and determined successes. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Social provision, exclusion and poor living conditions – a broader scope of local people’s needs are gained.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Potential failures can be eliminated through relationships – informing a neighbouring country or community of attempts that resulted in bad practices and failures 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Educating various role players and communities and the success and potential benefits of green spaces in other communities
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Integrates members of the various countries and promotes cross-border relationships and interaction 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Social provision and integration - Social provision, interaction and exclusion (Inter and intra community engagement opportunities);
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Broader and more inclusive framework for what can be regarded as best practices by including opinions of various cultures, countries, people, races, intellect and paradigms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Better potential addressing of numerous needs simultaneously
LOCAL		
Durban	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Similar to the best practices determined for England; it encapsulates a diversity of green space planning initiatives providing a variety of green spaces and protecting natural environments 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Overall enhancement of quality of life; - Simultaneous employment opportunities; - Safety and security for vulnerable groups (shorter distances for women and children to travel for food and water).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Directly implementing initiatives to address rural vulnerability – influence of climate change on crops, water harvesting and gardens 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Poverty (seeds to be traded for food, shelter, school fees and building materials); - Enhancing the local environment (green space provision, maintenance, planting and up-keeping);
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Provides training and educating of inhabitants in vegetating and nutrition and supports them in planting their own vegetable gardens and trees for food, trade with others and building material 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Education
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Enabling the community to fend for themselves, think and act independently and innovatively. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Rural community development and enablement.

Potchefstroom (Botanical gardens)	- Creates a formalized and continuously maintained and managed green space.	- Botanical gardens are overall regarded as well managed and maintained, qualitative green spaces providing various - Social exclusion – Providing a traditionally urban phenomenon provides rural inhabitants with a sense of equality. - Safety – filling unsafe and lost open fields.
	- Constant supervision and maintenance provides surveillance	- Social interaction and safety – safe, maintained and surveillance natural social areas.
	- Prides itself on including a variety of vegetation types, indigenous plants and art and therefore encapsulates a rich educative and cultural nature.	- Educational and recreational opportunities - Enhanced overall quality of life and well-being

Source: Own creation (2013)

This table concludes the positive effect and potential success of applying the best practices to rural communities as a successful means of addressing rural challenges.

8.2.4 Implementation of best practices in addressing pilot test challenges

In order to determine and assess these best practices in a specific rural context, Chapter 6 included the two local pilot tests of Umgababa as well as Nigel and Zonkizizwe. Within each of these pilot tests' discussions in Chapter 6 it was determined and tabled (Tables 35) how these best practices can potentially address their specific social challenges (similar to the social challenges determined in Chapter 2). Even though these best practices proved to be potentially successful in addressing rural social challenges, the detailed discussion of these pilot tests determined that their social challenges are in fact not adequately adhered to or addressed in these rural communities.

This can conclusively be ascribed to the gap that currently exists in the practical execution and implementation of best social planning practices. The table below thus serves to conclude the persisting social challenges experienced in each of the pilot test areas (first column). It also shows how the previously tabled best practices can address these challenges (second column) but concludes (in the third column) that the key elements of lively place and green space planning are not successfully included. This leads to gaps within the social planning process to alleviate social challenges and results in the persistence of challenges in these areas.

Table 46: Gaps in pilot test communities inhibiting best practices to address social challenges

SOCIAL CHALLENGES	BEST PRACTICES TO ADDRESS SOCIAL CHALLENGES	GAP IN COMMUNITIES INHIBITING SOCIAL ADDRESSING SUCCESSFUL CHALLENGE
UMGABABA		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Poverty - Need for development and a better way of life - A need to create awareness - Vulnerable group hostility, abuse, neglect and hardship - Low self-esteem - Social exclusions 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Providing urban concepts (botanical gardens) to feel equal and build self-esteem; - Provision of better maintained, safer and visible spaces including gardens, social facilities and regenerating current spaces for overall development and quality of life; - Providing safe walking routes or crossings lessens the vulnerability of women and children. - Promoting the benefits, training and nutrition of vegetable gardens can reduce the need for vulnerable women to walk far and unsafe distances. 	<p>Distrust in the government prevails due to the constant lack of delivering promised services, spaces and goods;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The persistent lack of safety-nets for vulnerable groups and failure to include women and children in decision –making curb the addressing of their challenges; - Too many focus placed on crime prevention and less on these determined issues; - Current approaches in this area focus on empowering ‘people’ but do not plan for current vulnerability and hardships for women.
NIGEL AND ZONKIZIZWE		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - High crime rates - Alcohol abuse - Lack of transport; need to cross unsafe fields to get to transport - Housebreaking, burglary and theft 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Planning for more formal and maintained vegetation as well as regenerating the layout and design of environments will reduce the possibility of crime and provide better and faster police access. - Providing market plains and successful lively place and green space recreational areas with various activities and functions in these large and open unsafe fields will provide better safety; - Planning for better access to transport 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Provided community police forums do not successfully include representatives and inhabitants of these communities therefore they are not entirely committed to their role. - Limit, lack and dysfunctional provision of policing and other security services curbs the potential to adequately address safety and crime challenges.

	<p>and bus stops in close proximity which are affordable can also reduce the safety hazard of walking far distances.</p>	
--	--	--

Source: Own creation

The above table regarding these pilot tests therefore determines that, even though best practices of lively place and green space planning can successfully address their existing and specific challenges, current implementation of South African rural planning legislation in local rural communities has too many gaps. Therefore the inclusion of best practices in the current execution and implementation of social planning initiatives is lacking and thus social challenges in these communities prevail.

8.2.4.1 Vaalharts' WIN-project as practical example of successful best practices to address social challenges

In reaction to the current failure of social planning in practice (as stated above), the Vaalharts area as primary case study was included. It is a an area typically characterised by and classified as 'rural' in terms of the definitions and discussions included in Chapter 2. The community is suppressed by the presence of dominant challenges like unemployment, poverty, social exclusion and safety.

Even though a number of attempts to implement social planning and its associated initiatives were previously included, social challenges still remain unsuccessfully addressed (refer to Chapter 7, Table 41), just as previously determined with the pilot tests.

In-depth analyses were then executed to exactly determine where these gaps are and why they are constantly not addressed through current social planning initiatives.

These analyses determined that the most serious needs (the highest scoring needs as determined by the statistical analysis of the community surveys) are precisely those needs that are coupled with social planning. There are deeper gaps and shortcomings than mere superficial poverty and unemployment that affect the entire social being of inhabitants themselves and contribute to the presence and prevalence of weaknesses and threats that hinder the potential addressing of rural social challenges. It can further be derived from these analyses that any given community encompasses a definite set of opportunities and strengths – aspects that are ignored countless times in the drafting of rural planning legislation and policies. These can be in diverse forms like a willing and/or educated community, natural resources like dams, good community relationships etc. These analyses prove that the weaknesses and threats are the stimulators of challenges that arise and persist due to the lack of including the community's strengths and opportunities in social planning initiatives.

The conclusive reason for these persisting challenges and unsuccessful social planning attempts therefore lies in the fact that current social planning initiatives applied in these communities do not account for or include the strengths and opportunities in order to sustainably overcome these threats and challenges.

The following table concludes how the WIN-project initiatives correspond to the best practices of lively place and green space planning and identifies the challenges addressed through this project-implementation.

Table 47: WIN-project as successful social planning initiative for addressing social challenges

SIMILARITIES		SOCIAL CHALLENGES ADDRESSED
WIN-project initiatives	Best lively place and green space planning practices	
- Water (spray) parks;	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Enhances the environment and therefore the overall value of the area - Includes the public's input via distributed surveys - Directly implements initiatives to address rural vulnerability in terms of child safety regarding drowning - Initiatives based on survey results of the community to provide spaces that they prefer and would therefore use – social presence. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Partnerships (i.e. social cohesion, interaction and equality) with communities, governments and private sectors addressing numerous social needs, governmental and municipal services and economic opportunities and potential. - Safety and security (against the occurrence of drowning and eliminating unsafe open spaces and the need to walk to collect food and water)
- Sports facilities;	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Maintained and managed functions and activities - A variety of diverse activities 	- Rural health and well-being i.e. physical health (sport and recreation);
- Children's play facilities;	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Maintained and managed functions and activities - A variety of diverse activities 	- Safety and security (against the occurrence of drowning and eliminating unsafe open spaces and the need to walk to collect food and water).
- Social areas;	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Transforming unsafe open spaces into formalized safe social places - Providing social areas for all contributes to a sense of presence and safety - Promotes neighbourhood bonds and interaction through providing a social space 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Social-economic and psycho-social well-being (clinics/hospitals); - Delivering experts in rural health, social services, information, knowledge and other fields promotes a more sustainable and informed community.
- School and community vegetable gardens.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Multidimensional and controversial planning approach integrating green space and lively place planning elements - Provides knowledge in terms of vegetable gardens and nutrition. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Food and nutritional security address identified challenges like basic government and municipal services, agriculture, infrastructure/ community facilities and health and welfare. - Delivering experts in rural health, social services, information, knowledge and other fields promotes a more sustainable and informed community.

Source: Own creation (2013)

The WIN-project is therefore concluded to be a successful social planning approach that includes most necessary elements of lively place and green space planning (refer to the evaluation done in Chapter 7), it incorporates the local community (thus their strengths and weaknesses) and successfully addresses most (if not all) of the determined challenges and associated social challenges.

8.3 Synopsis

The primary research questions presented in Chapter 1 and referenced to in the introductory section of this paragraph can conclusively be answered and summarized as follow:

Table 48: Conclusive answers to the primary research questions

RESEARCH QUESTION	CONCLUSIVE ANSWER	
1. What are lively and public places?	Unique and social places accessible to all people where different functions and activities take place based on the needs and inputs obtained through the participative inclusion of the public themselves, with good and sustainable maintenance and managing services or approaches included (either by inhabitants or public; or through external sources).	
2. What are green spaces?	Specific parcels of accessible green (vegetated and natural surfaces) land presenting several quality functions and maintained facilities producing a sense of public inclusion, participation and lived experience; including well-managed, maintained and safe municipal parks, public gardens, cemeteries, church yards, gardens associated with public buildings, and all school playing fields.	
3. What are the existing international and local approaches regarding planning of these spaces?	<i>International green space planning case studies:</i> - Netherlands, UK, Belgium - North America - University of Wisconsin - Sweden, India, Philippines - Käferberg (Switzerland) - England - Netherlands - Europe	<i>Local green space planning case studies:</i> - Johannesburg - Port Elizabeth - Durban - Potchefstroom (Botanical Gardens)
	<i>International lively place planning approaches:</i> - Toronto's Creative City Planning Framework - Project for Public Spaces - City Repair Project - Regeneration	<i>Local lively place planning approaches:</i> - Integrated planning - Gender empowerment - Community crime prevention - Rural planning legislation (RDF, ISRDS, CRDP)

	- Upgrading of transport systems	
4. How can the best practices of international and local approaches be applied to rural communities?	The evaluated and identified best practices are directly similar to the current challenges experienced in rural communities. Applying these best practices within rural planning legislation as a social planning approach will overcome current gaps with regards to practical execution and will advance the addressing of rural challenges.	
5. Is it possible to address social issues within rural communities through the planning of lively places and green spaces?	Most definitely; with the inclusion of and planning for as many as possible key green AND key lively elements within a multidimensional approach.	

Source: Own creation (2013)

Derived from the conclusion and integration of Chapter 2's discussion of rural and rural development legislation, the pilot tests and Vaalharts case study as well as the lively place and green space planning evaluations it can be concluded that current rural planning legislation does in fact include successful social planning principles in theory, but that these are not successfully executed and implemented in practices and therefore rural social challenges persist.

The problem is therefore not seated in the unsuccessfulness of lively place and green space planning in addressing challenges, but rather in the implementation of lively place planning and green space planning best practices in practice, as was determined in the Umgababa and Nigel and Zonkizizwe case studies.

The above conclusion of the Vaalharts case study thus proves that the successful deliverance and planning of lively place and green space best practices within rural communities (as social planning initiative) is relevant and successful in addressing rural social challenges effectively and sustainably.

Conclusive remarks to be incorporated for the future success of social planning initiatives to address rural social challenges include the evidence and importance of noting that a singular approach alone is not sufficient in solving the problem of crime, safety and other relevant and confining rural social challenges. Most of the successful approaches or case studies entail the inclusion of as much as possible of the identified green space and lively place planning elements by means of promoting integrated and multidimensional planning of various and different projects or programmes in one area. For example the WIN-project water and recreational park includes activities and facilities for children,

recreational and sport activities and facilities, social activities and functions and community vegetable gardens (combination of green space and lively place planning elements).

The following aspects were identified in most of the evaluations determining best lively place and green space planning practices, and mostly also occurred in the pilot tests and Vaalharts case study:

- The inclusion of, or planning for human presence (contributes to and corresponds with safe and secure spaces), access and activities;
- Useful and publicly attractive places to socialize (i.e. amenities, variety, diversity, providing for all ages and genders, etc.);
- Serviced and developed spaces with opportunities to link (accessibility) with other spaces in the proximity (including urban spaces) – also relevant and promotional as solution for rural economy challenges);
- Including and promoting employment opportunities for women and safe spaces for children;
- Prolonged presence of efficient and trustworthy policing units i.e. neighbourhood watches; patrol units; SAPS members and stations in close proximity; etc.;
- None of these applied or implemented aspects will be successful or sustainable if efficient, long-term management and maintenance standards and/or principles are not stipulated and stringently adhered to.

The overall success of the issue to address social challenges sustainably therefore lies in the integration and inclusion of all the above mentioned successful best practices (in terms of lively place and green space planning theory) relevant to rural communities in practice to promote and guide sustainable rural development.

The following Chapter will provide a number of examples and suggested recommendations on how to practically integrate and apply various successful lively place and green space planning aspects in order to sufficiently address rural challenges for the development of sustainable and lively rural communities within the local context of South Africa.

Chapter 9: Recommendations

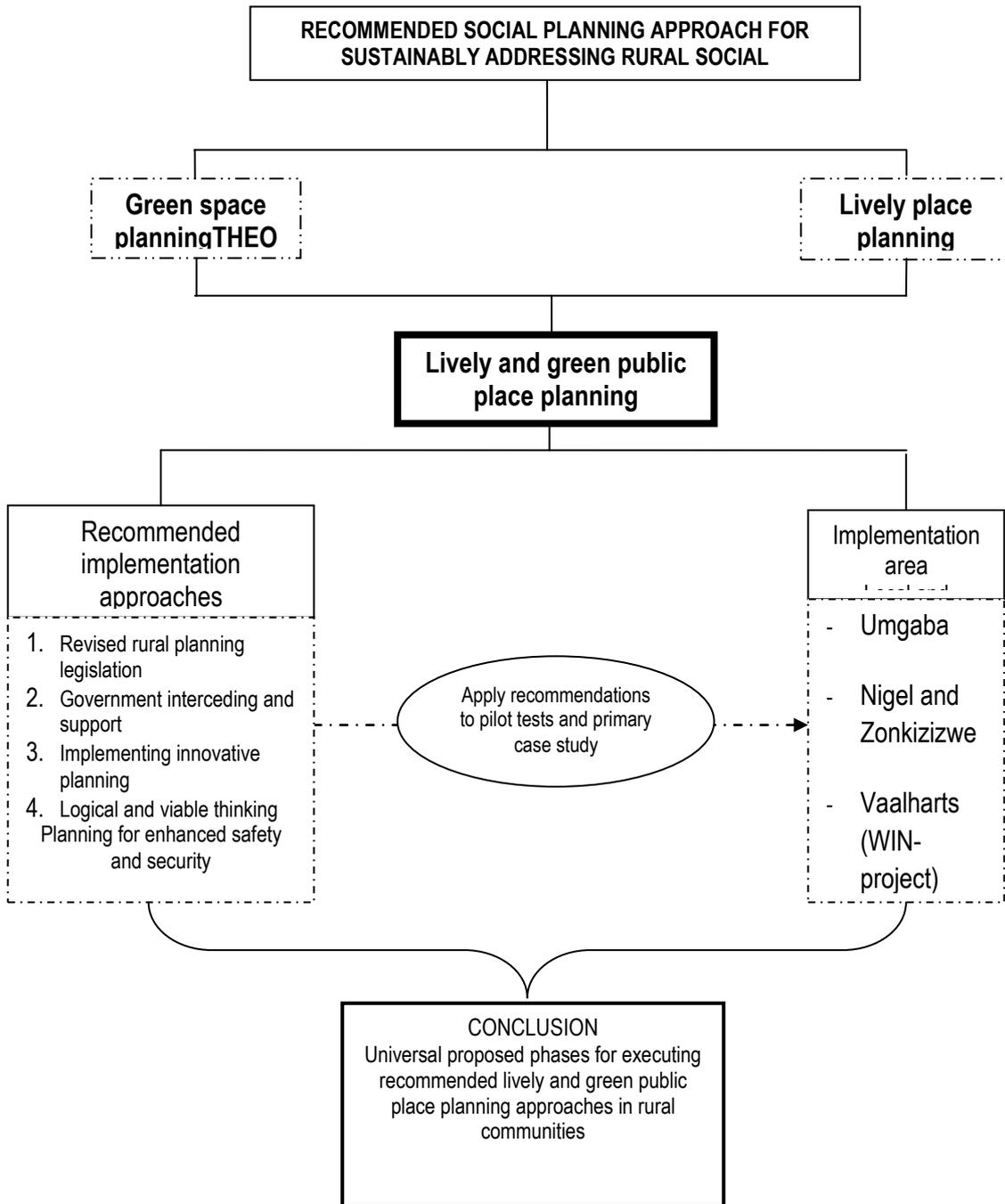


Figure 14: Structure of Chapter 9

Source: Own creation (2013)

9.1 Introduction

It was previously determined and concluded that lively place planning and green space planning are successful and relevant social planning approaches to address rural social challenges. However it was also concluded that the practical implementation of these social planning approaches renders unsuccessful in practice. This can be ascribed to the omission of various highly important aspects or elements in terms of lively place planning and in terms of green space planning and provision.

This chapter will therefore aim to provide practical proposals with practice-oriented recommendations and examples that will potentially ensure that the most important and necessary elements of green space and lively place planning are included. These proposals and recommendations will be given or determined based on the previously identified lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies. It will, for the sake of rural relevance and aim of this research, be proposed in terms of the two pilot tests (Umgababa, and Nigel and Zonkizizwe previously discussed in Chapter 6) and the Vaalharts case study (with specific inclusion of and reference to the WIN-project). This will overall attempt to improve their current situation and approaches by providing a more practical, sustainable proposition and answer to rural social challenges.

9.2 The integration of lively place and green space planning

Primarily the conclusion was made that that current lively place planning approaches and green space planning case studies do not successfully address social challenges of rural communities because of gaps or their lacking in practical implementations. It has become evident that in most (if not all) of the cases, the failure of practical implementations could be ascribed to the lack of elements of both green space and lively place planning. Most lively place planning approaches were criticised in terms of lacking the sufficient inclusion of the public (Toronto's creative city planning framework; regeneration; upgrading transport systems), diversity and variety of environments for all (City Repair Project; upgrading transport systems) and safe public spaces (integrated planning, rural planning legislation). These are aspects directly included as key elements or aspects of successful lively place planning but are similarly present in key green space planning elements. The same situation occurred in current green space case studies. In examples that were regarded as unsuccessful, it was due to a lack of public input and participation, good maintenance, integration and diversity – all aspects or elements that were not successfully present in the evaluations done and also key elements that provide the basis for lively place planning.

“Green” and “lively” can therefore be regarded as parallel and similar concepts, supplementing one another. The provision of successful green spaces within lively planning approaches can eliminate

current gaps and shortcomings present within lively place planning and *vice versa*. For the successful and sustainable addressing of social challenges, an integrated, multidimensional and controversial planning approach is needed and recommended – hence the integration of key elements of lively place planning and key elements of green space planning for ‘lively and green public place planning’ as social planning process to create social spaces based on various best practices for the sustainable addressing of rural social challenges.

The identification of each of these social planning approaches’ key elements in Chapter 5 also supports and proves that a number of these concepts or elements are similarly found in lively place planning as well as green space planning.

The following figure provides a visual recommendation and presentation on how these two planning initiatives are similar (in terms of key aspects or values theoretically necessary to include in planning initiatives or projects) and how they can be integrated and intertwined in order to provide one, recommended social planning approach in order to successfully address rural social challenges – i.e. lively and green public place planning.

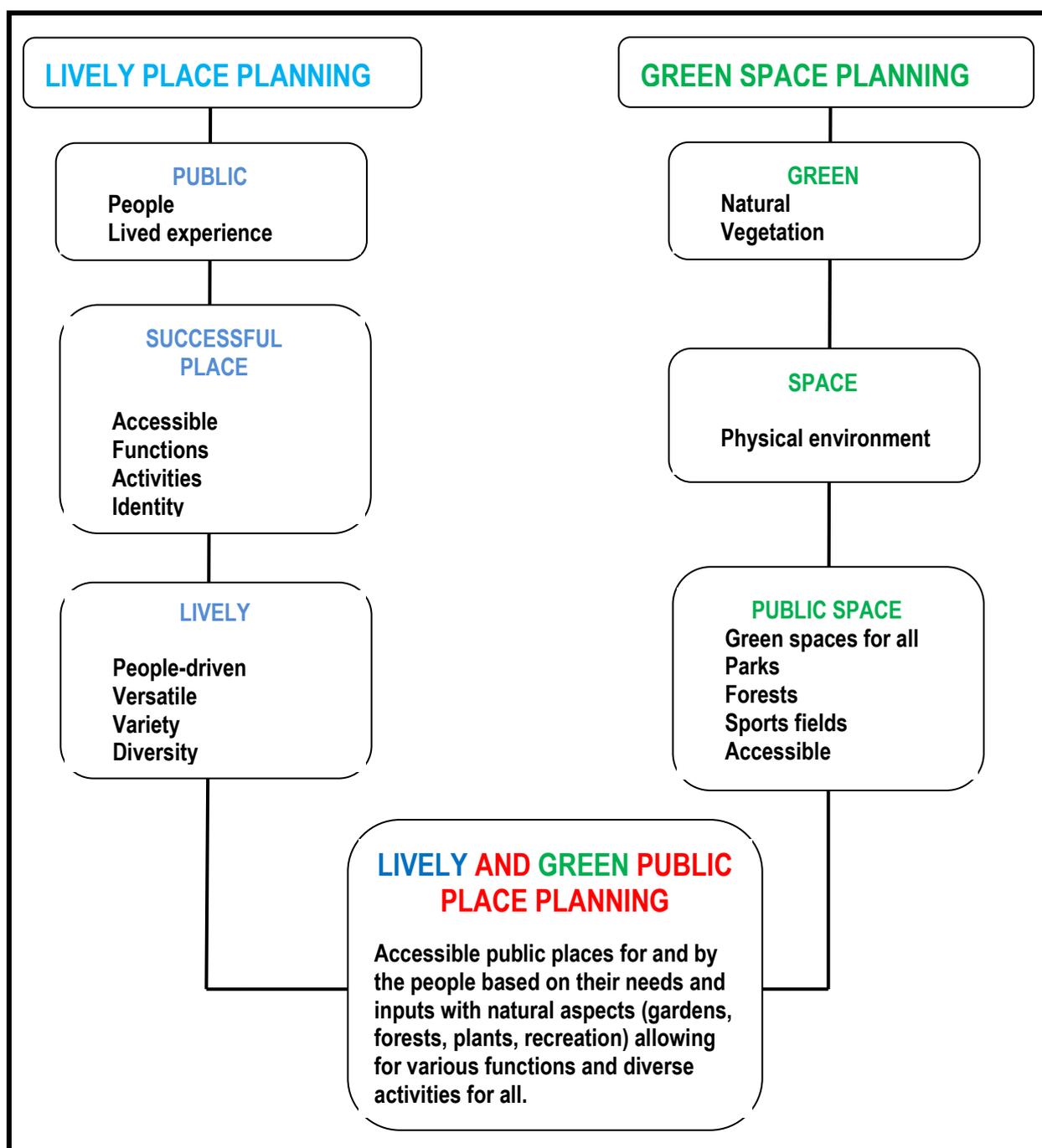


Figure 15: Lively and green public place planning

Source: Own creation (2013).

This planning of lively and green public places (Figure 15) therefore provides a successful and practical bottom-up approach, introducing a more controversial planning process. It provides a recommended social planning approach using all elements of lively place planning and green space planning within a rural community. Places are therefore created that are inviting for these rural people and also take their needs and behavioural patterns into consideration in order to provide for a sustainable and direct social planning approach for the successful addressing of their rural social challenges and the creation of overall lively, green and (especially) safe communities.

9.3 Practical implementation strategies and initiatives

Determined by previous successes and failures of approaches, various case studies and pilot tests the conclusions in Chapter 8 state that, in order to be successful, the overall approach should be to include and integrate as much green space planning and as many lively place planning elements as possible.

The following section is therefore dedicated to providing proposals and recommendations on how this abovementioned integrated 'lively and green public place planning' approach can be applied in current local approaches, case studies and pilot tests in order to address the current rural social challenges.

9.3.1 Universal recommended application of 'lively and green public place planning' for rural communities

This section provides overall lively and green public place planning initiatives as universal recommendations to be applied for the successful addressing of social challenges in any given rural community or area.

The following strategies or initiatives are therefore recommended:

1) Revised rural planning legislation

Since no two places are the same, local authorities (the primary providers of green spaces and lively places in the South African environment) should demonstrate innovation and strategic thinking when planning for lively and green public places in rural communities. Current legislation and government-thinking should therefore be adapted in order to enhance social planning that can address social challenges of rural communities in practice.

2) Governmental interceding and support

- a. Financial and infrastructural aid – provide cash contributions based on ideas or proposals for communities to create their own unique spaces and/or businesses; the provision of item sponsorships can ensure the aid is used for which it is intended. Funding (and the next recommended incentives) should come from national government in order to eliminate the current challenge and misuse of municipal budgets supposedly allocated for township development projects but never reaching these communities. These funds should therefore rather be allocated to a specific NGO (like tourism organizations, township developers, etc.) that will ensure the money is used for its allocated purpose.
- b. Incentives/ awards in terms of well maintained and managed spaces – provide annual compensation or contributions if public places provided are maintained and managed to the prescribed standard (this evaluation will be done by the person holding the specialist position

of urban designer or green space planning specialist within the municipality as they have the necessary knowledge regarding whether or not these spaces are successful).

- c. Innovative government – Provide for a newly revised position within local government and/or municipalities for specialists in urban design or for green space planning specialists that can provide a specialist and knowledgeable insight into lively place and green space planning with adequate knowledge and comprehension of rural communities and development. They can determine the need and shortage within their municipal jurisdiction for these spaces within rural communities and should subsequently provide innovative proposals or lodge projects to provide these spaces accordingly. They should further create awareness among municipal members and guiding authorities of the value of lively and green public place planning in an attempt to prioritize the planning of such spaces.
 - d. Quality places – government should plan for the inclusion of qualities that draw people to places (i.e. liveliness and green elements); a quality place represents safety and social activity, enhancing the usage and success of a space. These elements should form part of the local design and development process, enforced by local authorities.
- 3) Implementing Innovative planning
- a. Creative place-making processes – implementing public places in such a manner that it reduces vulnerability (vandalism, misuse, crime) but does not strip a place of its distinctiveness; this requires lively and green public place planning initiatives like the encouragement of local people to play a role in the evolution of activities and to help shape spaces into places they want. Thus vegetation and natural landscaping should still be promoted and suffice as ‘green’ and ‘lively’ with the necessary provision of presence and activities whilst remaining neat and maintained to reduce concealed crime. Such design guidelines should be included in the National Environmental Management Act (107 of 1998) and should be implemented in municipal development frameworks like LUMS and Town Planning Schemes as a prerequisite needed for any rural township establishment or development application to be approved.
 - b. Participatory planning - The development of the community should be placed in the hands of an overall development organization, using the community members themselves to execute development projects. This ensures the inclusion of local knowledge, inputs, participation and cultural contexts to provide an environment for and by the people. Recommended proposals include the distribution of questionnaires providing visual examples of public places to be developed. Community members are then asked to select which example they prefer and they should also provide reasons for this decision, best aspects of their selected example as well as

adaption or amending proposals for their selected preference. Another recommendation is to execute a SWOT-analysis (refer to Chapter 7, Section 7.3.3) in every community before any developed proposals or projects are lodged. The determined strengths and opportunities should be the building blocks for proposed social planning interventions. The strengths and opportunities should be included and incorporated in such a manner that it eliminates the threats and weaknesses and simultaneously addresses their social challenges within a proposed lively and green public place planning approach.

- c. Identifying lively and green public place planning standards –these standards should form the basis of any current and newly planned public place. These elements should be simultaneously regarded in land-use applications, township establishments and any other application which should then include a section determining how, how many and which public places should be included.
- d. Planning guidelines – Successive to and substantiating the above recommended standards, corresponding guidelines should be included. These guidelines should provide specifications for the above standards. For example, if the total population of a community is x amount or larger, y number of lively and green public places should be provided. The lively place planning and green space planning key elements should thus be quantified within the context of their implementation and location. Each local planning guidance document (whether it be town planning schemes or LUMS) should include specific guidelines based on their local municipality and associated jurisdiction. As included in previous green space case studies (Johannesburg), a 20-40m² lively and green public place should be provided or available per capita – determined by each local municipality’s population statistics; or lively and green public places should be provided less than 300m from home. Therefore when a township establishment is applied for or a city boundary extension is planned, each area should not be further than 300m away from the closest lively and green public place – this can be satellite areas for a primary central lively and green public place, but should still encompass relevant public facilities, functions, activities and natural landscape and vegetation.
- e. Functional spaces – providing communities with functional spaces, facilities and infrastructure (markets, agricultural fields, intersections to decorate based on their culture) to attract tourism, and enhance economic potential.
- f. Qualitative and quantitative information – development applications should include an inventory of lively and green public place planning elements that will enhance social planning and draw people to these places. It should provide information regarding the details and impact of the

development concepts and the benefit it will provide for successful (quality) implementation thereof.

- g. Categorize spaces in terms of typologies – when the types of green spaces are known, communities/areas can be compared to determine which types are present and whether or not these current spaces comply with the standards recommended previously (3.c.). As recommended in 1.b. in terms of the pre-execution of a SWOT-analysis, the analysis and evaluation of the current status of green spaces within a community should be executed before any lively and green public place planning initiatives are compiled or executed. This typology of green spaces should form part of the local Spatial Development Frameworks and Land-use Management Schemes.
 - h. Holistic strategies and guidelines – based on the different categories of spaces in terms of typologies (3.g.), guidelines should be implemented in terms of what (and how many) lively and green public places should be included in a specific area/community; for example if community X is larger than a certain size/area (Ym^2), type A, D and E lively and green public place should be provided, conformed to the standards previously mentioned (type A, D and E referring to example of green spaces listed and categories in 3.b. typologies). This information should form part of local municipal land-use development regulations (Land Use Management Schemes (LUMS) and Town Planning schemes) whilst being included in National Planning Legislation as a prerequisite for the approval of municipal development and planning frameworks.
- 4) Logical and viable thinking – affordable and relevant accessibility options
- When asking entrance fees the element of ‘accessible to all’ is eliminated, therefore impeding the success of such a place. Furthermore, these lively and green public places should be located and designed to be accessible – thus the location should be within a community’s centre or in close proximity with direct access to primary transport routes and/or pedestrian walkways. This lively and green public place should be open and visible – it can either be fenced or not provided that no entrance fees are asked. Visibility in this regard refers to the density of surrounding and included vegetation. Even though lively and green public places include the provision of vegetation, these should be provided in such a manner that the area remains entirely visible from any distance (coinciding with 3.a.).
- 5) Planning for enhanced safety and security
- Rural safety and security is a key challenge in providing successful lively and green public places. In order to successfully address this primary rural challenge, the following recommendations are therefore included:

- a. Provide context and function in open spaces (i.e. empower and enhance cultural activities and provisions to create a feeling of connectedness to attract human presence and therefore increase the perception of safety. Provide 'cultural squares' in unsafe open areas where various cultural products are made and sold, where unique cultural music is played and where associated cultural dances and stories are provided. This can also become potential tourist attractions enhancing presence and therefore the safety of these spaces. It also promotes a social place where people can pass through, stop, talk, ask, interact, communicate and integrate).
- b. Enhance tourism (providing tourist attractions through local markets, botanical gardens, green stadia, etc. promotes access and upgraded infrastructure to increase constant human presence, with better safety measures developed and improved as this is a product or experience tourists want).
- c. Enhance environmental design and layout (as mentioned, providing presence, activity and function in open strips of land as well as reducing the density of vegetation eliminates possible hide-outs and crime areas. Improved layout and design also improves visibility and legibility reducing response time of police and other security services).
- d. Introduce alliances and community crime prevention (inclusion of community members as part of crime prevention units and/ or neighbourhood security forces). These crime prevention units should be aligned with and/or supported and funded by policy makers, national and government safety services. The inclusion of community members in these units provides direct access to the community and insecure and crime-prone areas. These community members to be included in the community crime prevention unit should be determined by the community itself in order to provide sufficient participation in decision-making processes and to ensure that the most appropriate, trustworthy members are selected. Community gatherings should be held during which a knowledgeable and awareness-evoking discussion should be held and background should be provided to the community in terms of safety precautions, security measurements, current crime statistics, etc. to simultaneously provide safety and security awareness and education. Based thereon the community should nominate and vote for community members that they feel comply with these characteristics.
- e. Plan spaces which allow for the empowering of women and children. This includes, for example, providing running water at home or within a safe and secure accessible area to minimize the distance and need to walk to rivers, which will decrease victimization like rape, attacks and drowning of children. This also coincides with the recommended accessibility aspect mentioned in d. Providing lively and green public places with regular human presence

close to rivers also provides a better sense of safety and security (refer to the proposed cultural square in 5.a. to be placed close to the river and thus accessible for women to use).

- f. Improved maintenance and management (poor management and neglected, abandoned spaces foster acts of delinquency or incivility renewing a sense of insecurity. Providing on-site managers who immediately report crime, acts of delinquency, vandalism and victimization provides a constant presence and feeling of safety, preventing these acts from occurring or even from being considered. This can include providing community crime prevention members or the entire community with whistles to raise the alarm when they are witnessing or suspecting a crime).
- g. Enhancing service delivery (this includes the provision of lively place planning aspects like access, communication, shared information, integrated resource utilization and safety and security) promotes direct access to other communities, urban or rural, safety officials and services centres. Furthermore, it also includes the delivering of previous on-site managers acting as intermediary between the community and regional and/or national safety services originating from the community itself (i.e. public inclusion and participation and provision of employment opportunity). This creates a strong, visible and more pro-active task force providing more effective area control in terms of maintenance control, crime reporting and safety insurance through constant presence. Enhancing service delivery also requires the necessary qualitative training of these individuals. People willing to train and work when put through the necessary challenges and tests for this opportunity, can be regarded as trustworthy. As mentioned communication, interaction and bonds with other communities need to be enhanced (especially amongst young people) to defuse any form of tension and to promote social peace and effective relationships as prevention of petty delinquencies and/or vandalism. This requires each neighbourhood to be treated and provided with the same services, places and opportunities to prevent biased behaviour. The promotion of friendly inter-community recreational competitions can promote bonds and associations but should be well managed and planned to ensure the friendly nature thereof and to prevent competition getting too stringent and rather creating enemies than neighbours.

9.3.2 Recommended implementation of social planning elements in local pilot tests and the Vaalharts case study

The previous subsection recommended how various lively and green public place planning elements can be included in the planning approaches to successfully address social challenges. This section focuses on the implementation of these proposals within the local context, including the Umgababa and Nigel and Zonkizizwe pilot tests and the Vaalharts case study.

The following tables aim to list primary challenges and current approaches within the specific case study, along with recommendations to include lively and green public place planning initiatives and strategies (i.e. inclusion and integration of various lively place planning and green space planning elements as recommended in the previous section to plan for a ‘lively and green public place’) in order to improve the current (mostly unsuccessful) rural realities.

Table 49 a: Implementation of lively and green public place planning for local rural communities: Nigel and Zonkizizwe

PRIMARY CHALLENGES IDENTIFIED	CURRENT APPROACHES	LIVELY AND GREEN PUBLIC PLACE PLANNING RECOMMENDATIONS TO IMPROVE CURRENT APPROACHES
- High crime rates	- Stakeholder consultation - Analysis of crime	Current approaches do not successfully adhere to or address the determined challenges, therefore the following inclusions or proposals are recommended: - Participatory questionnaires or surveys for inhabitants to determine the most urgent crimes.
- Alcohol abuse	- A partnership with various role-players	- Awareness campaigns and simultaneous educative forums (self-defence, alcohol-abuse and security measures).
- Police not representative of the community, not committed and/or not functional and understaffed	- SAPS, EMPD and CPF (Community Police Forum) - Co-ordinating agencies	- Community crime prevention units including community members (male or female) as voted for by the community. - An important mechanism for poor municipalities to meet expected provision and maintenance of public places lies in the willingness to pay in volunteer time.
- Open and unsafe fields needed to be crossed for food and water	- Analysis of crime - Co-ordinating agencies	- Lively and green public places in the open unsafe areas (e.g. soccer fields with children’s playing areas; a ‘cultural-square’) with various produce and shops). - Community environmental and social i.e. deplete unsafe, dense vegetation and replace with managed and indigenous trees, plants and vegetable gardens.

Source: Own creation (2013)

Table 49 b: Implementation of lively and green public place planning for local rural communities: Umgababa

PRIMARY CHALLENGES IDENTIFIED	CURRENT APPROACHES	LIVELY AND GREEN PUBLIC PLACE PLANNING RECOMMENDATIONS TO IMPROVE CURRENT APPROACHES
- Poverty and deprivation	Social-economic upliftment of community through: - Tourism - Empowerment - Participation	Due to the lack of practically executing these approaches, their challenges persist. The following provides recommended executions of lively and green public place planning provision: - Quality and quantity infrastructure and public places (markets selling local produce within a managed, maintained safe area); - Dedicate and allow intersections to the cultural and heritage expression of these local communities (the community to transform this area into a unique, cultural identity– ‘cultural square’, financially).

- Need for development and better way of life	- Tourism - Empowerment	- Alliances with local government: An incentive-based project to be launched allowing community members to present production-ideas to the municipal authority. Based on the success of the idea in terms of enhancing lively and green public places, incentives or support are provided. This will then be re-evaluated annually to ensure sustainable practices.
- Awareness	- Participation	- Awareness tutorial or training session regarding entrepreneurship with financial, budget and saving methods.
- Misuse, neglect and hardships for women	- Empowerment	- Allowing women the chance to enter the economic sector in terms of producing and selling products in these markets.
- Social exclusion and low self esteem	- Participation - Empowerment	- Train and employ inhabitants themselves in crime prevention as a sub-organ of SAPS to provide safety patrolling through these markets. They will report crimes, theft or vandalism and degenerated infrastructure. - Community members should be empowered in terms of providing a detailed concept or draft idea of lively place initiatives. - Government should then (based on incentives) provide funding or a 'stall' in the market for those with promising and successful ideas, to be evaluated annually.

Table 49 c: Implementation of lively and green public place planning for local rural communities: Vaalharts

PRIMARY CHALLENGES IDENTIFIED	CURRENT APPROACHES	LIVELY AND GREEN PUBLIC PLACE PLANNING RECOMMENDATIONS TO IMPROVE CURRENT APPROACHES
- Basic government and municipal services - Infrastructure/ community facilities	The Water and Recreational Park is an extremely successful initiative but more can be done since it does not address the analysed challenges of the community sufficiently. Within the WIN-project the following initiatives or practical implementation projects were identified: - Water and recreational parks	- Surveys should first be distributed to determine what activities, facilities and infrastructure should be provided within these water and recreational parks as part of participatory planning direct needs of community included.
- Emergency services - Infrastructure/ community facilities - Educational or training related services	- Sport facilities	- Sports fields and recreational environments to be provided - includes appointed and employed child caregivers with the necessary safety and first aid to promote child safety.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Infrastructure/ community facilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Children's play facilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - These facilities to be close to the local markets as well as sports fields to enhance presence and safety of children playing sports and for parents to work, sell, shop, etc. with children located close by.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Safety and security - Employment opportunities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Social areas 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Open and unsafe spaces should be filled by these parks and recreational fields, markets and areas to provide safe, visible crossings and lit paths between houses, parks, shops, etc. - Markets with shops, food stands, municipal offices and park maintenance in close proximity to these sports areas where parents can relax and take care of their daily operations whilst children safely play.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Awareness campaigns - Health and welfare - Agriculture - Educational or training related services 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Vegetable gardens 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The vegetable gardens should be educational of nature - provide nutritional and cultivating information of different vegetables. - The provision/planting of vegetable gardens to be community projects and social gatherings - members provide these vegetables for shelters, old age homes, schools etc.

Source: Own creation (2013)

From Table 49 a-c above it is evident that the proposed recommendations based on lively and green public place planning can be included to improve current social planning initiatives in order to sustainably address and reduce the social challenges in these rural communities.

9.4 Conclusion

As previously done in the Vaalharts case study, it is important (as part of public inclusion and therefore efficient addressing of needs) to conduct and gather research (including surveys) determining the weaknesses and strengths that are present in specific areas, as no two areas are the same and no blueprint for planning exists. By conducting the SWOT-analysis, it can provide the necessary information and data on which lively and green public places can build to enhance current strengths, or which can be focused on to provide for or reduce the weaknesses. Knowing that one is planning for a willing and educated community can direct lively and green public place planning approaches, whilst, for example, knowing a community has a negative appeal (e.g. high crime, drowning and other rates) it can provide for more safety initiatives to be included.

The following table and final recommendation of this research, captures the implementation strategy or framework for the successful planning and provisions of lively and green public places within a rural community:

Table 50: Proposed phases of execution when planning a lively and green public place

PHASES	PROCEDURES TO BE EXECUTED	DESCRIPTION
Phase 1: Community awareness	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Community informative gatherings - Awareness campaigns 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Inform the community on the scope, aim and objective of the proposed green and lively place. - Inform and educate them in the aim and purpose of such public places. - Provide awareness of other green and lively places and the positive effects and outcomes on other urban communities as well as the relevance and potential effect of duplicating such spaces in rural communities. - As part of financial and infrastructural aid as well as incentives, introduce potential governmental rewards as part of government interceding and support: allow community members to provide detailed entrepreneurial proposals and provide financial or infrastructural support (i.e. provide a structured space in the market to execute entrepreneurship); include annual or quarterly revisions – if the space is well-maintained and in good condition, financial support as incentive is further provided.
Phase 2: Participation and public inputs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Surveys and/or questionnaires 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Provide the community with several surveys or questionnaires: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Challenge survey: ask questions related to the challenges the community feel are most prominent and the needs they experience daily e.g. What is the worst part of living in this community? What is your biggest fear when leaving your house? 2. Community-potential survey: Ask questions that can provide planners with background on the potential the communities and people themselves encompass e.g. What do you love most about your community? Where do you go to socialize? What is the biggest benefit provided by your direct environment? 3. Development survey: Provide a variety of options or ideas for potential lively and green public places and ask members which they prefer, how they would adapt these proposals, what they would include and what they do not want – thus providing a variety of visual representations and allowing the community to ‘score’ these areas (based on their newly educated perceptive regarding lively and green public places).
Phase 3: Scoping the community	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - SWOT-analyses of the community - Primary rural challenges - Inter-community relations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Determine the strengths and opportunities the inhabitants themselves have to offer like willingness, certain levels of education or training, young population, etc. - Determine what weaknesses are present within the community: Are there high levels of poverty? Are the people distant and unsupportive? Are they illiterate and struggling with spoken English? - Determine and compile a list of the primary rural challenges based on the swot analyses and the quantity analyses of the challenges derived from surveys in phase 2.

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Determine the relationships between neighbouring communities and/or other communities in close proximity – Is there a good relationship? Do they engage regularly? Are there sufficient transport opportunities to promote interaction?
Phase 4: Scoping the environment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - SWOT-analyses of the environment - Relation to closest urban centre 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Determine positive environmental features that could direct lively and green place planning initiatives - Determine what types of green spaces (i.e. soccer fields, open fields, cemeteries, etc.) and lively places (markets, informal trading on streets, play parks, etc.) exist. - Subsequently determine whether or not these current places can simply be upgraded or should be completely regenerated. - Determine if any environmental management or maintenance processes are followed or present. - Determine the overall safety of the environment – are there safe and well-lit pedestrian routes? Are there rivers or dams close by? Is the layout of the community unsafe (large open fields between residents, facilities, services and food; degenerated buildings; dark alleys and passageways)? Is the natural environment contributing to the safety of the community (is there dense and unmaintained vegetation?). - Do they travel to urban centres regularly or does the community provide sufficient services and opportunities? - Are there sufficient and accessible transport and travelling opportunities?
Phase 5: Data analyses	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Analyse and quantify results - Group associated information together - Concise determination 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Analyse the survey results; determine what are the needs, opportunities and preferences the community members stated; quantify these results by statistically determining how many community members agreed with these determined needs – thus list all the needs from the surveys; determine the number of times each need was present or identified in the completed surveys. - Based on the analyses, group all the relevant and associated observations and results; i.e. environmental challenges, community challenges and needs resulting from the surveys all grouped together as well environmental opportunities and community strengths grouped together. - Concisely summarise these aspects of the community area: the primary threats and weaknesses present; the strengths and opportunities present; the primary social challenges present.
Phase 6: Implementing innovative planning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Categorize current spaces based on green space typologies - Enhance environmental design and layout for better safety - Plan for regular presence and management - Planning for better safety and security 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Determine and quantify the number of each type of space present – how many sports fields, play parks, public gardens, cemeteries, etc. - Determine the number of open spaces and/or unsafe and desolate current spaces – these should form the key areas for providing lively and green public places (through regeneration, upgrading and/or new development). - Provide initiatives for environmental maintenance – culling dense and unmanageable vegetation; include indigenous plants and trees to be planted (by the community as part of a community project or social event).

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Ask community members to nominate potential on-site managers and safety inspectors that report crime; degraded infrastructure; dense vegetation; unsafe areas; etc. - Provide context and function in open and unsafe spaces by planning for functions and regular activities; creating attractions like vegetable gardens, vegetation, educative excursion, etc. which also enhances tourism potential. - Strengthen community crime prevention units and SAPS alliances by including crime prevention units as a sub-organ of the SAPS which directly reports any crime, suspicious activities, attacks and theft to the SAPS.
<p>Phase 7: Project initiation</p>	<p>Planning an applicable lively and green public place based on the answering and inclusion of the conclusive checklist elements listed in Table 43.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - This summarized information should be the groundwork and basis from which a green and lively place should be planned. - Use the determined strengths and opportunities to direct the planning process and aim for addressing the weaknesses, threats and needs simultaneously. - For example: If a willing community is present, suppressed by poverty and unemployment within a culturally rich area, the lively and green public place should be planned accordingly: provide a maintained and managed area in which the community members can express their culture (like a cultural square). Provide the opportunity for them to produce and sell local and culturally-inspired products. Ensure the provision of various activities and functions – a marketplace for selling goods; an amphitheatre for cultural and other shows, dancing and singing; well-maintained sports fields for the youth, and include community members in crime prevention units if safety is an identified need. Within such a lively place, social interaction is provided whilst empowering the community to produce and sell items. Strengthen alliances and participation of stakeholders and municipalities to provide funding or incentives. - All projects and planning of lively and green public places should be done on a ‘logical and viable thinking’-basis; thus these planned places should eliminate any form of entrance fees; it should be located in close proximity to primary businesses, residential areas and other community areas identified in Phases 3 and 4 as primary social areas or areas with regular human presence and activity.

Source: Own creation (2013)

Implementing the recommended lively and green public place planning approaches based on the inclusive interpretation of a community’s existing strengths and weaknesses, (therefore addressing primary national challenges like the safety and security of rural areas, legal issues, rights of children living in rural areas, rights of the disabled, rural health, capacity building, improving of education, security and welfare, etc.) will enhance social sustainability in rural communities.

Bibliography

Agenda 21 **see** United Nations Sustainable Development.

Allen, G. & Brennan, F. 2004. *Tourism in the new South Africa*. London: I.B. Tauris and Co. Ltd.

Baltimore City Department of Planning. 2010. *Downtown open space plan*, Baltimore, Maryland. Project for public spaces. Flannigan Consulting, Sabra Wang Associates. December 2010.

Barbosa, O., Tratalos, J.A., Armsworth, P.R., Davies, R.G., Fuller, R.A., Johnson, P. & Gaston, K.J. 2007. Who benefits from access to green space? A case study from Sheffield, UK. *Landscape and Urban Planning*, 83 (2007): 187-195.

Baycan-Levent, T. 2007. *Critical success factors in planning and management of urban green spaces in Europe*. Istanbul, Turkey: Istanbul Technical University..

Big Lottery Fund. 2008. *Research Issue 48: Green Spaces and Sustainable Communities and Transforming Waste Evaluation Summary*. www.biglotteryfund.org.uk Date of access: 23 May 2013.

Bradshaw, D., Bourne, D. & Nannan, N. (2003). *What are the leading causes of death among South African children*. Cape Town: Medical Research Council / UNICEF.

Brewer, J., & Hunter, A. (1989). *Multimethod research: A Synthesis of styles*. Newbury Park, CA: Sage.

CABE Space. 2004. *Manifesto for Better Public Spaces*. London: CABE Space.

Campbell, C., Nair, Y., Maimane, S. & Sibiya, Z. 2008. *Supporting people with AIDS and their carers in rural South Africa: Possibilities and challenges*. <http://eprints.lse.ac.uk/5471/> Date of access: 28 Feb. 2013.

Campbell, H. & Marshall, R. 1999. *Ethical Frameworks and Planning Theory*. Oxford, UK: Blackwell Publishers, Oxford.

Cannon, T., Twigg, J. & Rowell, J. 2005?. *Social vulnerability, sustainable livelihoods and disasters*. Chatham, UK: Natural Resources Institute, University of Greenwich.

Chronic Poverty Research Centre (CPRC). 2012. *CPRC Methods Toolbox*. <http://www.chronicpoverty.org/toolbox/Livelihoods.php> Date of access: 15 Maart 2013.

Cilliers, E.J., Timmermans, W., van den Goorbergh, F. & Slijkhuis, J.S.A. 2012. *The Lively Cities (LICI) background document: LICI theory and planning approaches*. Part of the LICI project (Lively Cities, made possible by INTERREG IVB North West Europe, European Regional

Development Fund, European Territorial Cooperation, 2007-2013. Wageningen University of Applied Sciences, Van Hall Larenstein).

City of Johannesburg. 2012. Green City.

http://www.joburg.org.za/index.php?option=com_content&id=5497&Itemid=339#ixzz2WTj7zcWI Date of access: 17 June 2013.

Coetzee, H. 2011. Research Report 2: Needs assessment conducted in the Vaalharts Region, North West and Northern Cape Provinces, South Africa (A North West living labs baseline projects). Potchefstroom: Research Logistics cc.

Constitution **see** South Africa.

Cowan, S., Lakeman, M., Leis, J., Lerch, D. & Semenza, J.C. 2006? The City Repair Project. www.inthefield.info/city_repair.pdf Date of access: 8 May 2013.

CSIR. 2000. Guidelines for human settlement planning and design. Pretoria.

Dasgupta, P. 2009. The Place of Nature in Economic Development. Nepal: SANDEE.

Data Research Africa. 2000. An assessment of alternative economic opportunities in the Greater St Lucia Region. *Unpublished paper*.

de Jong, K., Albin, M., Skärbäck, E., Grahn, P. & Björk, J. 2012. Perceived green qualities were associated with neighborhood satisfaction, physical activity, and general health: Results from a cross-sectional study in suburban and rural Scania, southern Sweden. *Health & Place*, 18(2012):1374-1380.

Department for Environment, Transport and the Regions (DETR). 2000. Urban White Paper: Our Towns and Cities: The Future – Delivering an Urban Renaissance. London: HMSO.

Department for Transport, Local Government and the Regions (DTLR). 2002. Green Spaces, Better Places: Final Report of the Urban Green Spaces Taskforce. London: TSO.

Department of Community Safety and Liaison **see** KwaZulu-Natal. Department of Community Safety and Liaison.

Department of Rural Development and Land Reform **see** South Africa (1). Department of Rural Development and Land Reform.

Department of Rural Development and Land Reform **see** South Africa (2). Department of Rural Development and Land Reform.

Dhlamini, J. & Dissel, A. 2005. Safety and security in the Rural Parts of Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Area. Research report written for the Centre for the Study of Violence and Reconciliation. August.

eThekweni Municipality. 2011. Durban: a climate for change; Transforming Africa's future. Durban.

- Farber, T. 2009. Contemporary issues in SA: A toolkit for journalists. <http://osf.org.za/wp/wp-content/uploads/2012/09/Contemporary-issues-in-South-Africa-A-toolkit-for-journalist1.pdf> Date of Access: 28 February 2013.
- Forester, J. 1993. Critical theory, public policy and planning practice: toward a critical pragmatism. Albany, NY: State University of New York Press.
- Fouracre, P. 2011?. Transport and sustainable rural livelihoods. http://www.transport-links.org/rtkb/english/Module%205/5_3a%20Sustainable%20Livelihoods.pdf Date of access: 30 July 2010.
- Gehl, J. 2004. Lively, attractive and save cities, but how? Cities for people as design challenge. Centre for Public Space Research, School of Architecture, The Royal Danish Academy of Fine Arts. Paper.
- Gopaul, M. 2006. The significance of rural areas in South Africa for tourism development through community participation with special reference to Umgababa, a rural area located in the province of KwaZulu-Natal. Pretoria: University of South Africa. (Dissertation – Master of Arts).
- Gwanya, T.T. 2010. South Africa Position Paper on Rural Development: A model for the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme. Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, South Africa.
- Harrison, S. & Dourish, P. 1996. Re-place-ing space: the roles of place and space in collaborative systems. Proc. Of CSCW'96. ACM 1996: 67-76.
- Henslin, J.M. 2003. Social Problems. http://wps.prenhall.com/hss_henslin_socprob_6/0,6624,494563-,00.html Date of access: 3 March 2013.
- Hobart city council. 2011. Hobart 2010 Public Spaces and Public Life, a city with people in mind: Gehl Plans for a Lively Inner City.
- Holland,C., Clark, A., Katz, J. & Peace, S. 2007. Social Interactions in Urban Public Places. www.jrf.org.uk Date of access: 12 April 2013.
- House of Commons. 2003. Living Places: Cleaner, Safer, Greener. London: The Stationery Office Limited.
- Johannesburg Open Space System. 2002. Strategic EnvironmentalFocus. <http://www.joburg.org.za/planning/JMOSS%20Report.docS> Date of access: 20 May 2013.
- KwaZulu-Natal. Department of Community Safety and Liaison. 2010. Rural Safety in KwaZulu-Natal. Pietermaritzburg.
- Lange, E., Hehl-Lange, S & Brewer, M.J. 2007. Scenario-visualization for the assessment of perceived green space qualities at the urban–rural fringe. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 89(2008):245-256.

- Lanham, K.F. 2007. *Planning as placemaking: Tensions of scale, culture and identity*. Blacksburg, Vancouvre: Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University.
- LDCE (Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English). 2003. Harlow, England: Pearson Education Limited. 2272p.
- Loudier, C. & Dubois, J.L. 2001. *Public spaces: Between insecurity and hospitality*. http://www.ocs.polito.it/biblioteca/verde/uk_PARTIE201_C133.134.pdf Date of access: 12 Aug. 2012.
- MacIntyre, A. 1985. *Utilitarianism and the presuppositions of cost-benefit analysis: An essay on the relevance of moral philosophy to the theory of bureaucracy*. In M. Wachs (ed.), *Ethics in planning*. Center for Urban Policy Research, New Brunswick, NJ.
- May, J. 1998. *Poverty and inequality in South Africa. Report prepared for the office of the Executive Deputy President and Inter-ministerial committee on poverty and inequality*. Pretoria: Office of the Deputy President.
- McConnachie, M. M., Shackleton, C. M. & McGregor, G. 2008. *Extent of public green space and alien species in ten small towns in the thicket biome, South Africa*. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*, 7: 1-13.
- McConnachie, M. M. & Shackleton, C. M. 2009. *Public green space inequality in small towns in South Africa*. *Habitat International*, 34(2010):244-248.
- Ministry of Rural Development and Land Reform. 2009. *The Comprehensive Rural Development Programme Framework*.
- Mulalic, I. 2004. *Embedding social dimensions into economic and environmental accounting and indicator systems: Some aspects to consider*. Copenhagen, Denmark: Statistics Denmark.
- Natural England. 2009. *Green Infrastructure Guidance*. England.
- NSDP **see** South Africa (3).
- ODA Social Development Department (1993). *Social Development Handbook: guide to social issues in ODA Projects and Programmes*. London: Overseas Development Administration (ODA).
- Odindi, J.O. & Mhangara, P. 2012. *Green Spaces Trends in the City of Port Elizabeth from 1990 to 2000 using Remote Sensing*. *International Journal of Environmental Research*, 6(3):653-662.
- Orford, M. 2004. *Rural voice. The social change assistance trust (Scat) 1984-2004. Working in South Africa*. South Africa: David Publishers.
- Philips. 2010. *Liveable Cities: Challenges and opportunities for policymakers, A report from the Economist Intelligence Unit*. London: The Economist Intelligence Unit.

- PPS (Project for Public Spaces). 2008. Streets as Places: Using streets to rebuild communities. Project for Public Spaces, Inc. 113p.
- PPS (Project for public spaces). 2011. Place-making for creating lively cities, training manual. LICl. 135p.
- Robrecht, H. & Meyrick, D. 2008. *ecoBUDGET: Introduction for Mayors and Municipal Councillors*. ICLEI – Local Governments for Sustainability, UN-HABITAT, and UNEP.
- Scoones, I. 2009. Livelihoods perspectives and rural development. *Journal of Peasant Studies*, 36(1):1-26.
- Sewduth, D. 2006?. SOUTH AFRICA: The impact of lack of legislation governing water safety and drowning prevention. Durban, SA: Lifesaving South Africa.
- Sewduth, D. 2007. The data related to the cases of drowning in South Africa and the implications of this. Porto: World Conference of Drowning Prevention.
- Shackleton, C.M. & Blair, A. 2013. Perceptions and use of public green space is influenced by its relative abundance in two small towns in South Africa. *Landscape and urban Planning*, 113(2013):104-112.
- Sheffield City Council. 2008. VALUE: Valuing Attractive Landscapes in Urban Economy.
- Singer, P. 1993. *Practical ethics*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Society of Municipal Arborists (SMA). 2010. Society of Municipal Arborists <http://www.urban-forestry.com/mc/page.do?sitePageld=2806> Date of access: 28 May 2013.
- Soholt, H. 2004. Life, spaces and buildings – turning the traditional planning process upside down. Paper presented to *Walk21-V Cities for People*, The Fifth International Conference on Walking in the 21st Century, June 9-11 2004, Copenhagen, Denmark . Partner, GEHL Architects ApS, Urban Quality Consultants, Copenhagen.
- South Africa. 1996. Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 1996.
- South Africa (1). Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. 2000. Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy (ISRDS). Pretoria.
- South Africa (2). Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. 1997. Rural Development Framework (RDF). Pretoria.
- South Africa (3). 2006. National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP). The Presidency, RSA.
- South African Cities Network (1). 2009. Township Renewal: KwaMashu case study. 12p.
- South African Police Service (SAPS). 2011. Implementation Guidelines: Rural Safety Strategy: Version 1. Pretoria.

- Statistics South Africa. 2011. Victims of crime survey. Pretoria.
- Swanwick, C., Dunnet, N. & Woolley, H. Nature, Role and Value of Green Space in Towns and Cities: An Overview. *Built Environment*, 29(2):94-106.
- Thomas, W. 2008. Presidential Urban Renewal Programme: Accelerating local economic development in the Khayelitsha-Mitchell's Plain area of Cape Town. Cooperative Governance & Traditional Affairs, Cape Town.
- Toronto. 2008. Creative city planning framework: A supporting document to the Agenda for Prosperity: Prospectus for a Great City. Toronto: AuthenticCity.
- Training for Township Renewal Initiative (TTRI). 2009. Township Renewal Sourcebook. Pretoria SA: South African Cities Network.
- United Nations Sustainable Development. 1992. Agenda 21 (1992).
- University of Wisconsin-Green Bay. 2004? Economic Feasibility of sustainable development.
- Van der Ploeg, J.; Renting, H.; Brunori, G.; Knickel, K.; Mannion, J.; Marsden, T.; de Roest, K.; Sevilla-Guzman, E. & Ventura, F. 2000. Rural Development: From Practices and Policies towards Theory. *Sociologia Ruralis*, 40(4):391-408.
- Veenhoven, R., & Ehrhardt, J. 1995. The cross-national pattern of happiness: Test of predictions implied in three theories of happiness. *Social Indicators Research*, 34:33-68.
- Waller, I. & Weiler, D. 2003. Crime prevention through social development: Social challenges. <http://www.ccsd.ca/cpsd/ccsd/challenges.htm> Date of access: 2 March 2013.
- Walton, W., Jevon, T., Simmons, A., Khan, N., Shackleton, R., De Lacy, P. & Sholto-Douglas, C. 2011. Grahamstown, SA: Rhodes University Press.
- Ward, C.D., Parker, C.M. & Shackleton, C.M. 2009. The use and appreciation of botanical gardens as urban green spaces in South Africa. *Urban Forestry and Urban Greening*, 9(2010): 49-55.
- Wilson, O. & Hughes, O. 2011. Urban Green Space Policy and Discourse in England under New Labour from 1997 to 2010. *Planning Practice & Research*, 26(2):207-228.
- Wolpe, R. 2008. Township centre establishment: Challenges & strategies. Pretoria. Transcript and presentation.
- Worpole, K. & Knox, K. 2007. The social value of public spaces. York: Joseph Rowntree Foundation. 16p. (Worpole & Knox, 2007:)
- Young, R.F. 2010. Managing municipal green space for ecosystem services. *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening*, 9(2010):313-321

Annexure

ANNEXURE 1: Defining rural settlements in South Africa

BOX 12 URBAN AND RURAL POPULATION

This document was prepared before the data from the 1996 census became available. However, the Central Statistical Service has redefined urban and rural areas from the 1994 October Household Survey, with the following results:

Table 1.1: Populations in different types of settlement in South Africa, 1994

Urban: With a local authority Mainly with hostels No local authority	45% 0.7% 0.9%	Total urban 47%
Peri-urban informal informal (no local authority)	3% 0.4%	Total peri-urban 3.5%
Rural settlements Small towns, no local authority Villages and settlements Rural squatter camps Rural hostel area	1% 35% 0.2% 0.04%	Total villages and settlements 35.5%
Agricultural Large-scale farms Tribal areas, excluding villages & settlements	12% 3%	Rural & farms 14%

It can be seen that these definitions are still problematic, not defining towns by size of population nor by the services they offer. It is also likely that the proportion of people in the former bantustans outside villages and settlements is under-estimated. These data, nevertheless, give the first indications of the populations in rural settlements and dispersed in rural areas. Variation by province is given below:

Table 1.2: Population in different settlement types in South Africa's provinces.

	Urban Formal %	Urban Informal %	Villages & small towns %	Rural & farms %
Western Cape	78.94	8.65	0.00	12.42
Eastern Cape	31.73	0.86	55.45	12.26
Northern Cape	67.28	6.14	2.62	23.96
Free State	55.76	2.61	11.49	30.14
KwaZulu-Natal	36.27	1.63	49.14	12.97
North West	38.81	9.37	18.74	33.08
Gauteng	90.78	5.49	0.00	3.73
Mpumalanga	29.56	2.39	46.04	22.02
Northern	8.78	0.37	82.24	8.61
South Africa	46.74 %	3.46 %	35.58 %	14.21 %

NB: This table was prepared before the 1996 census results became available.

Source: Adopted from Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (2), 1997:18

ANNEXURE 2: Surveys and questionnaires

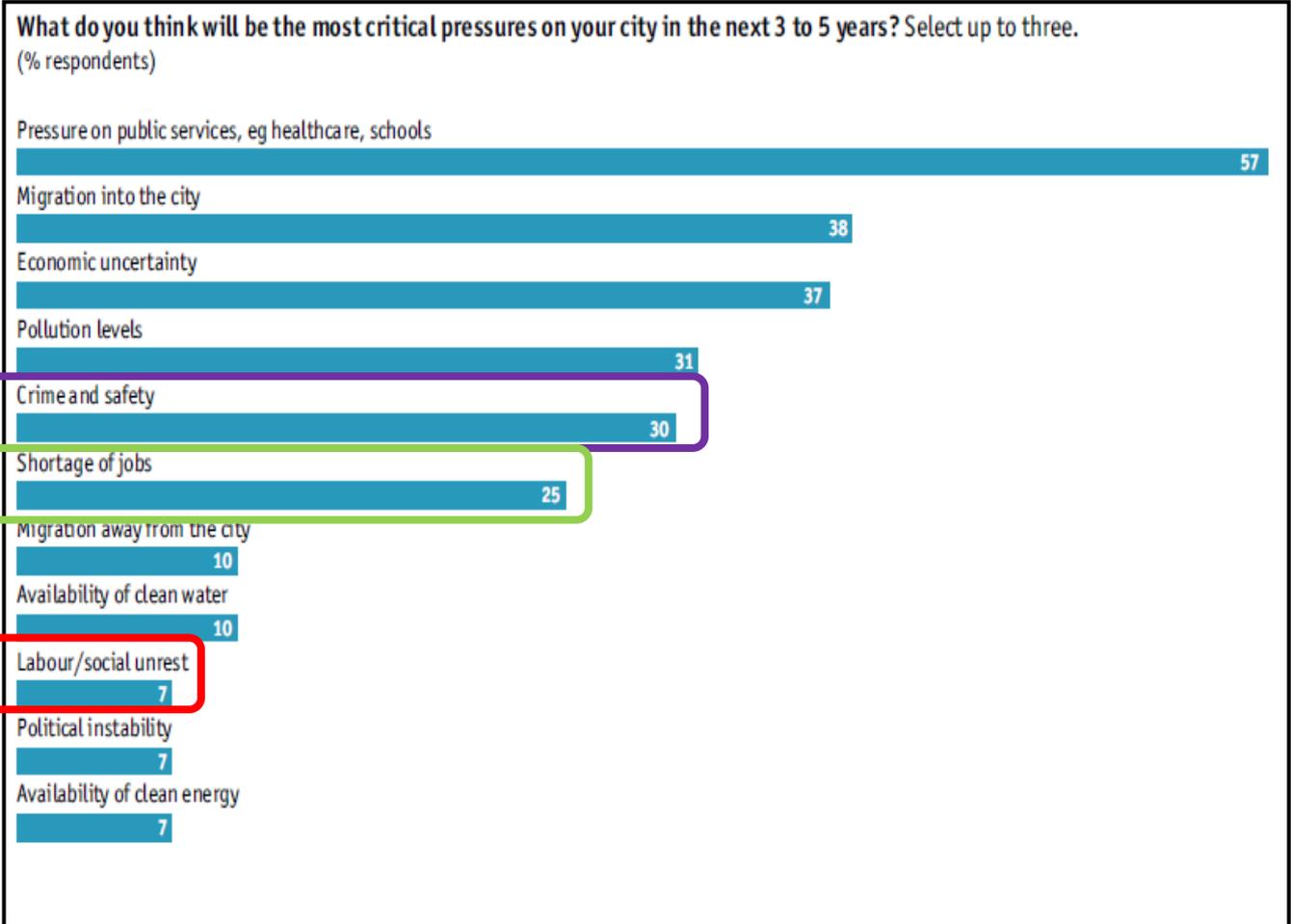


Chart 1: Most critical future city pressures

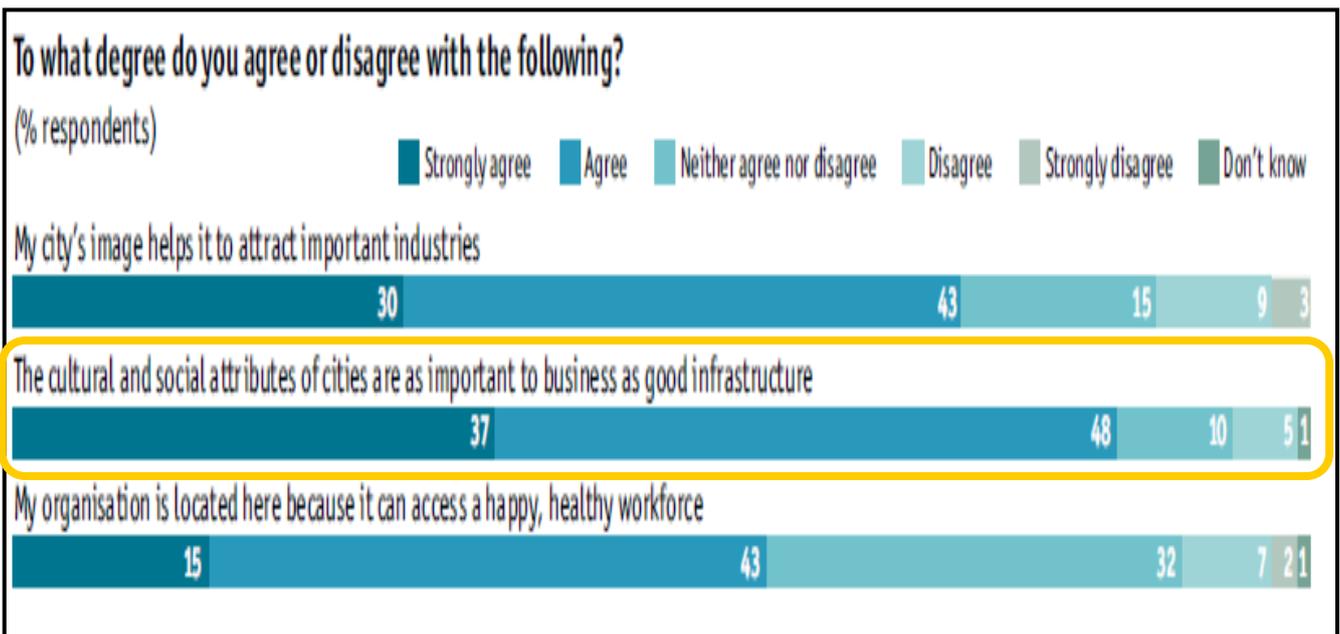
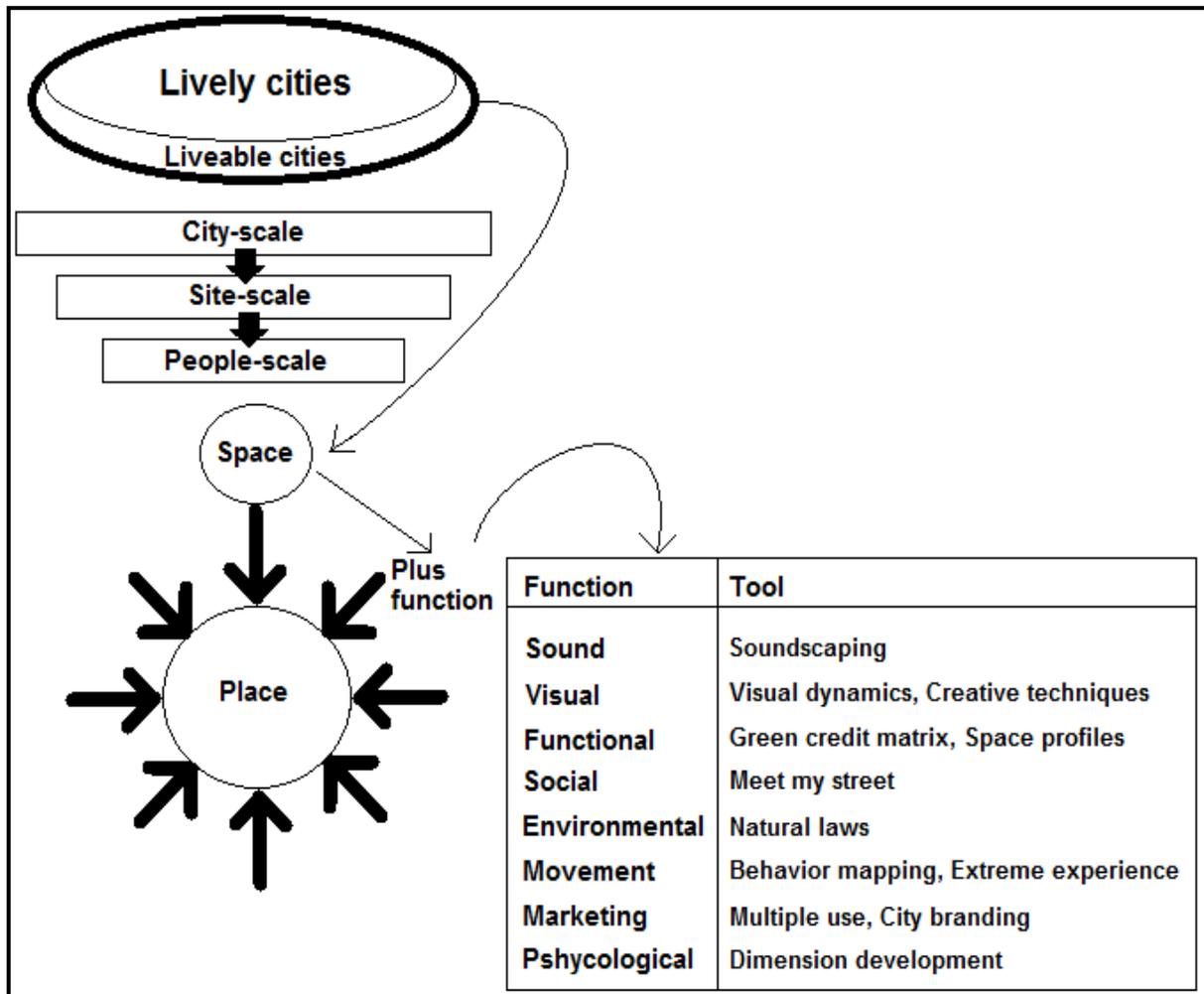


Chart 2: Importance of cultural and social attributes
Source: Charts adopted from Philips (2010:33)

ANNEXURE 3: Planning scales and it's role in lively planning



Source: Cilliers *et al.* (2012:22).

ANNEXURE 4: Safety and security statistics

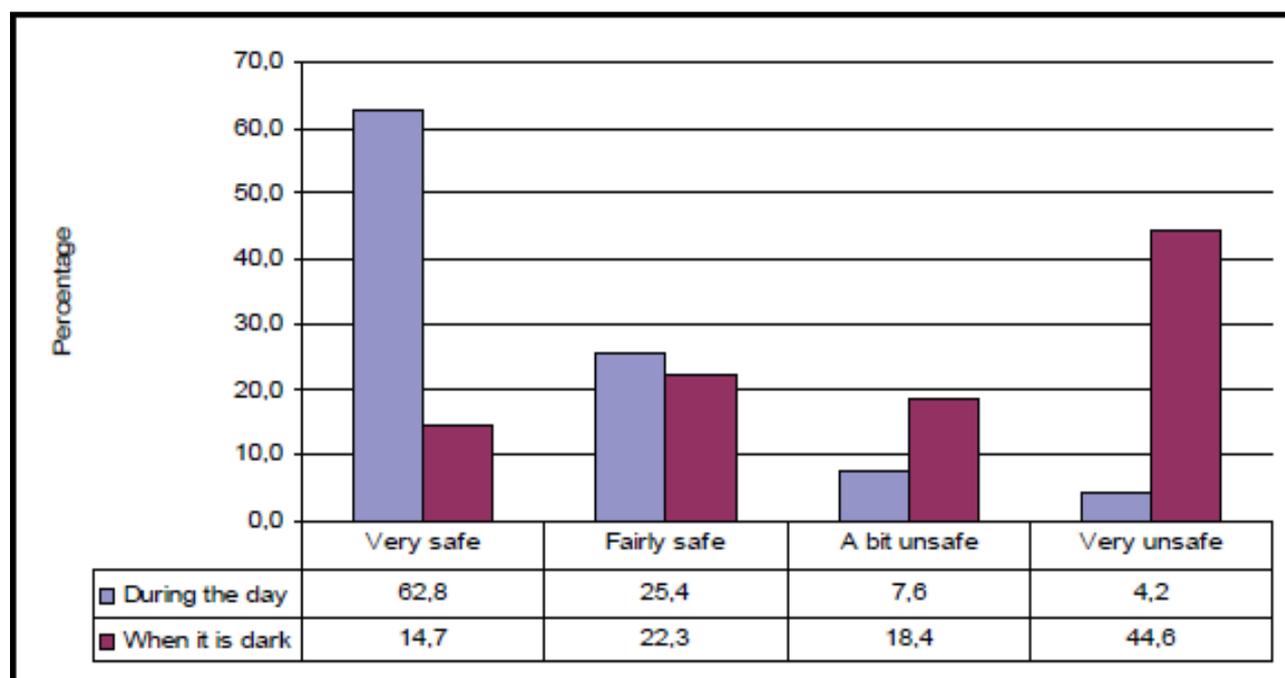


Chart 1: Percentage of households who feel safe walking alone in their area (during the day and when it's dark)

Daily activity	Statistics	Province									
		WC	EC	NC	FS	KZN	NW	GP	MP	LP	RSA
Using public transport	Number	290	170	10	38	411	43	394	34	58	1 450
	Percentage	23,3	10,6	3,7	4,9	16,8	5,5	12,8	4,0	4,5	11,7
Walking to shops	Number	264	239	18	60	391	45	437	38	65	1 558
	Percentage	20,1	14,8	6,3	7,4	15,9	5,3	13,5	4,3	5,0	12,2
Walking to work/town	Number	244	274	19	57	361	91	432	106	77	1 661
	Percentage	19,9	17,9	6,7	7,2	14,9	10,8	13,7	12,0	7,9	13,7
Going to open spaces or parks	Number	480	558	66	270	593	263	1 350	222	362	4 164
	Percentage	36,4	34,8	22,9	34,0	25,5	31,4	41,9	24,9	29,2	33,3
Allow children to play in area	Number	375	228	48	147	340	103	727	133	150	2 251
	Percentage	38,6	17,6	19,0	20,7	17,7	13,2	32,5	17,7	12,3	22,2
Allow your children to walk to school	Number	307	166	26	53	270	43	427	51	110	1 452
	Percentage	33,7	13,1	10,3	7,5	14,1	5,5	20,0	6,9	9,1	14,7
Keeping livestock/poultry	Number	6	134	11	40	306	66	38	38	192	831
	Percentage	2,2	13,8	6,6	8,0	22,0	10,3	4,5	6,4	17,3	12,8
Investing/starting a home business	Number	69	126	7	47	202	53	136	47	178	864
	Percentage	7,9	9,1	3,2	6,5	10,5	7,0	5,1	5,8	14,9	8,2

Chart 2: Percentage of households prevented from engaging in certain daily and commercial activities as a result of crime (numbers in thousands)

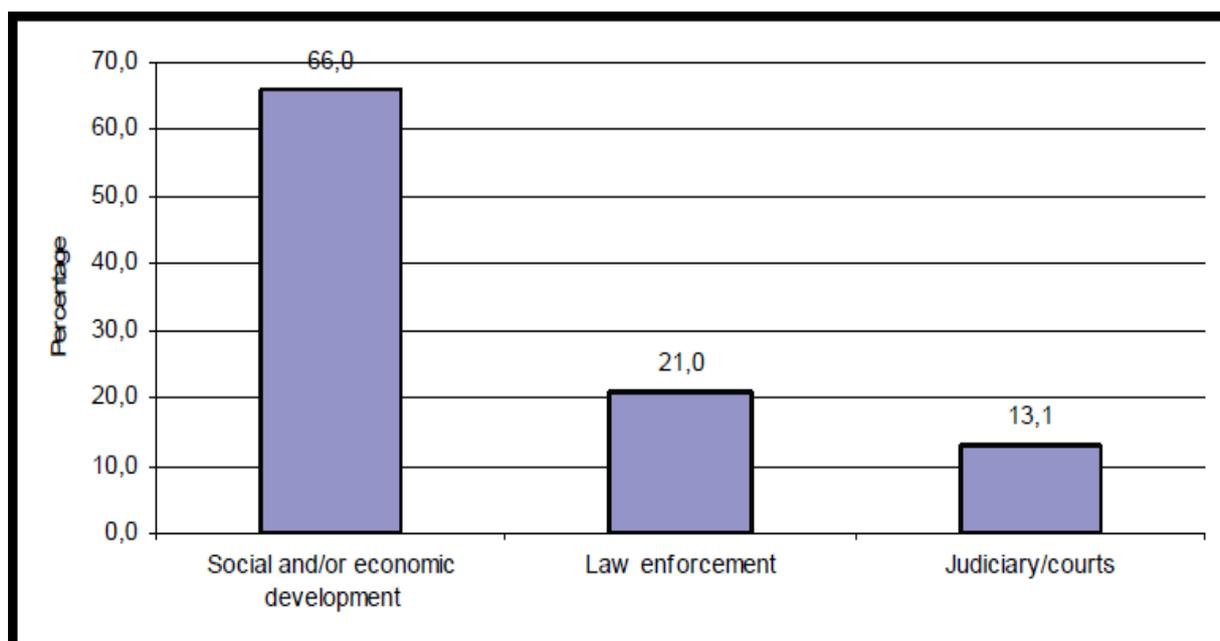


Chart 3: Views of households on where government should spend money in order to reduce crime (%) – 2010.

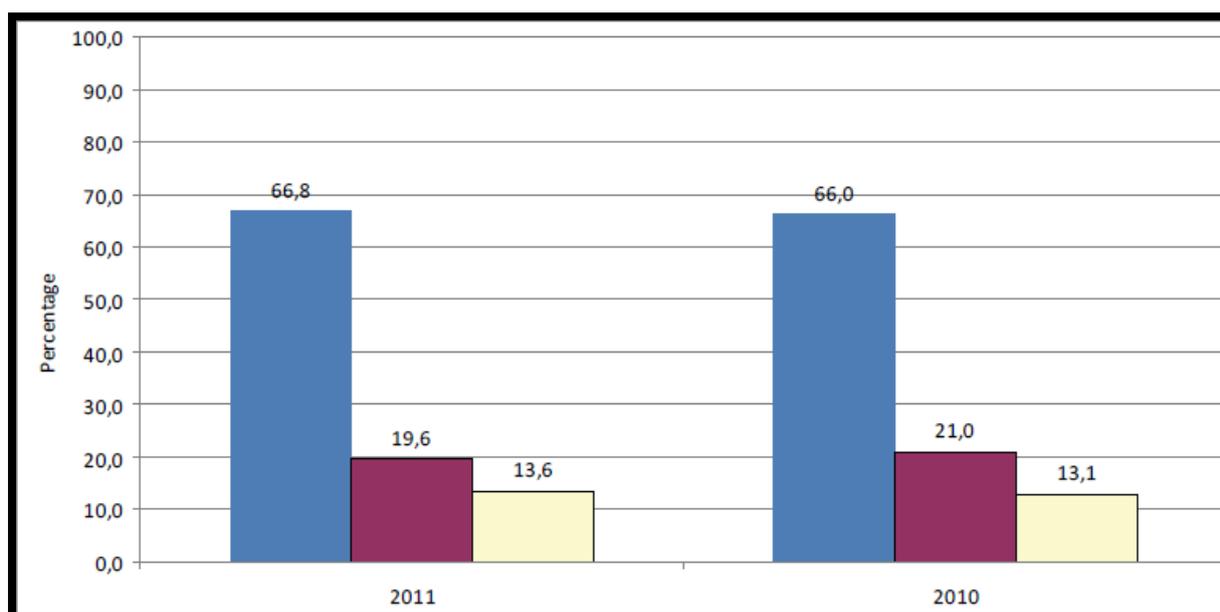


Chart 4: Comparison between views of 2010 and 2011 regarding government spending in order to reduce crime.

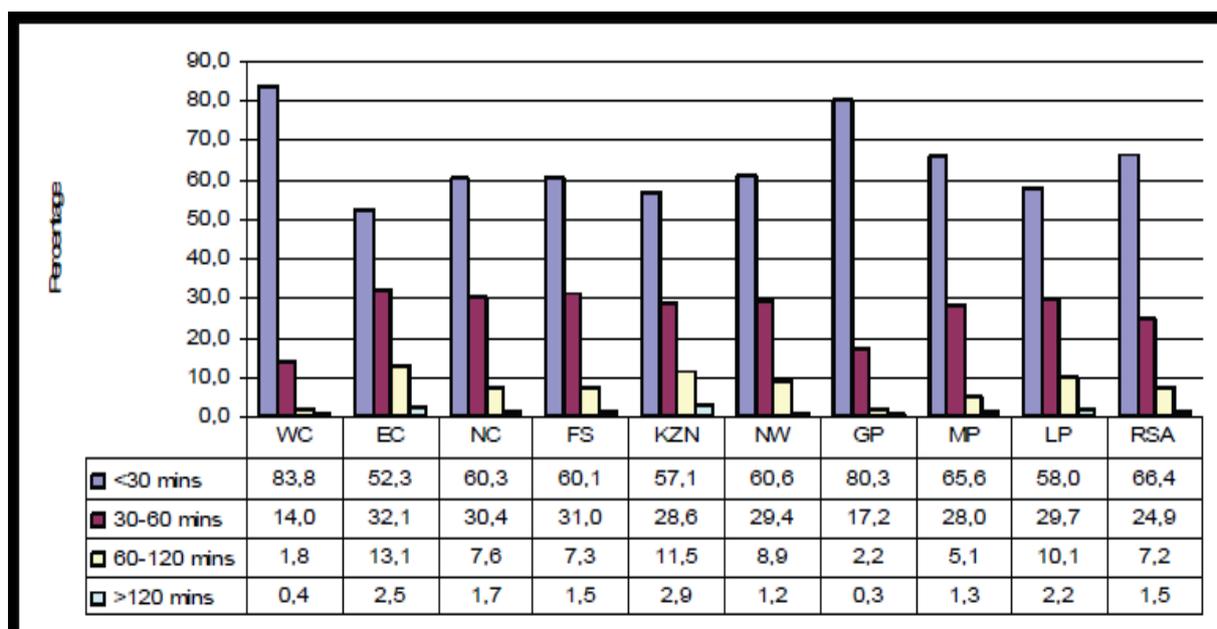


Chart 5: Average lengths of travelling time to get to the nearest police station using usual mode of transport.

Source: Charts adopted from Statistics South Africa (2011)

ANNEXURE 5: Cases and statistics regarding drowning

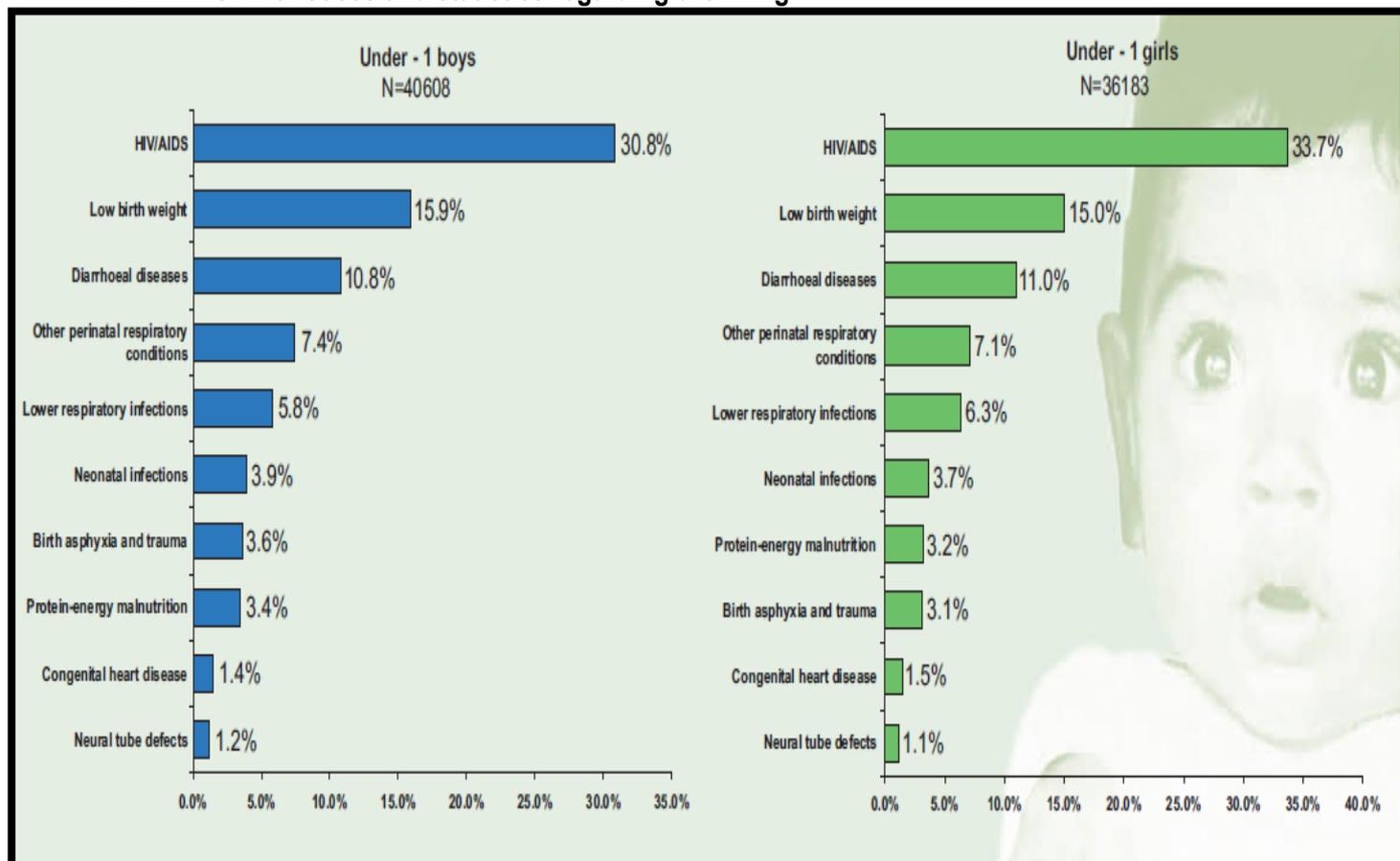


Chart 1: Leading causes of death in South Africa (infants under 1 year of age)

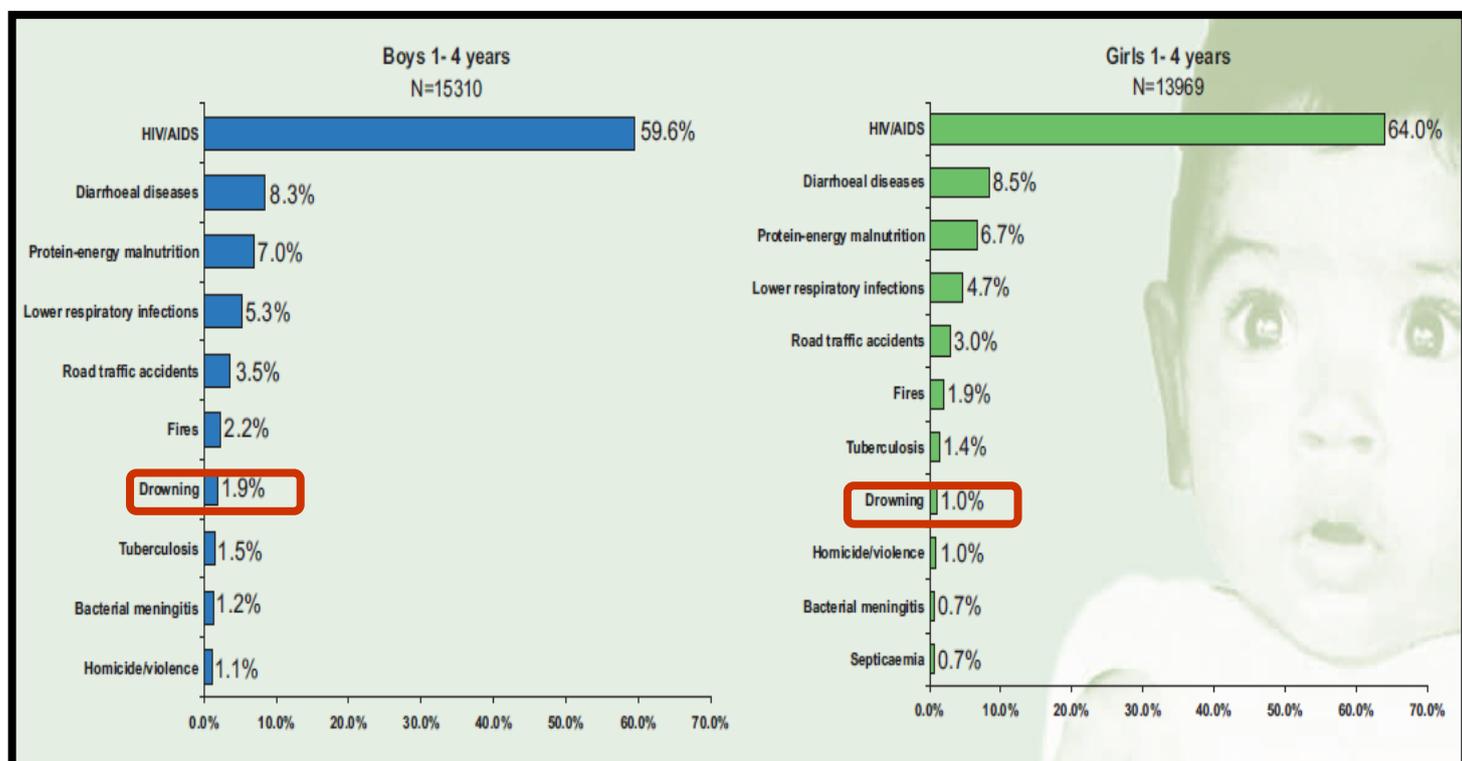


Chart 2: Leading causes of death in South Africa (children aged 1-4 years)

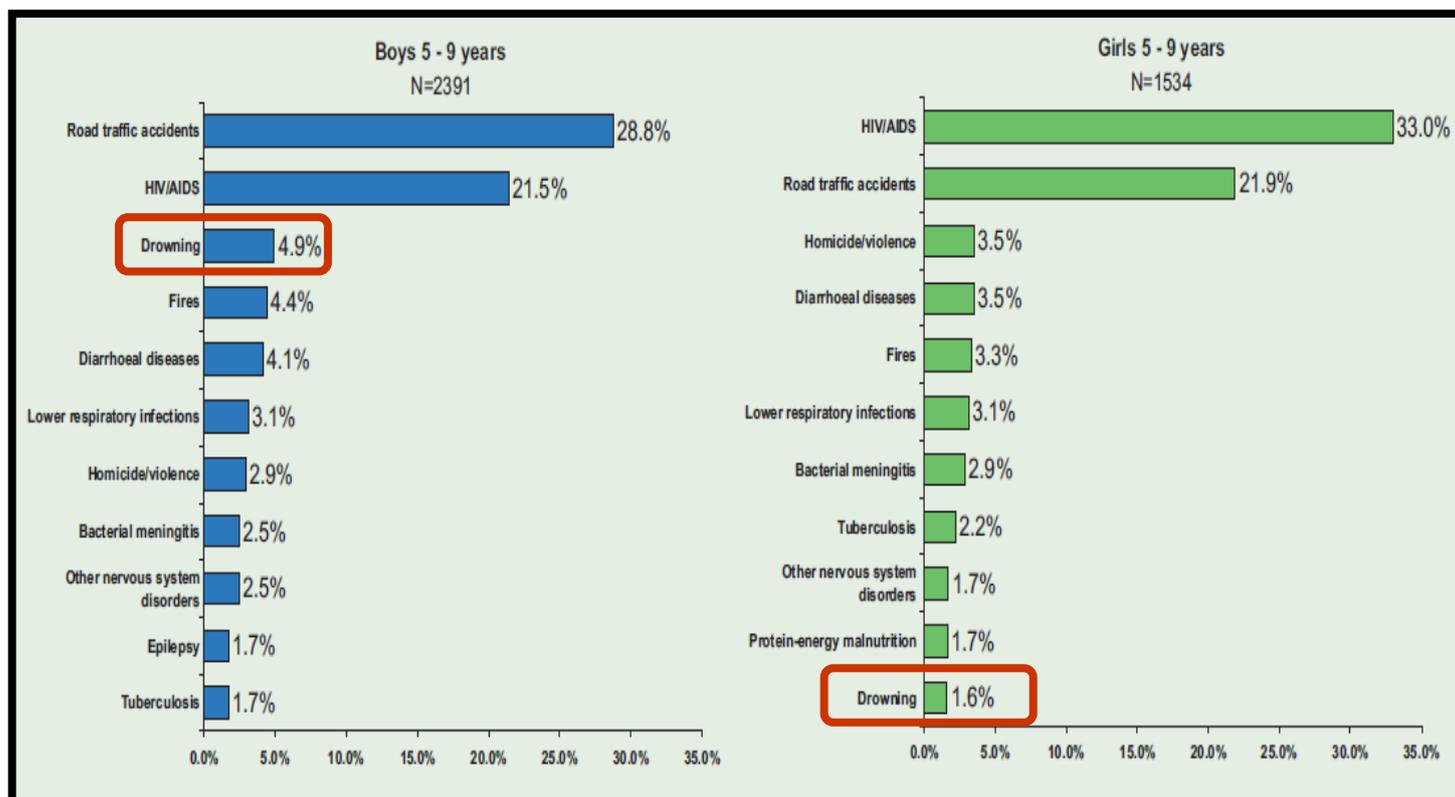


Chart 3: Leading causes of death in South Africa (children aged 5-9 years)

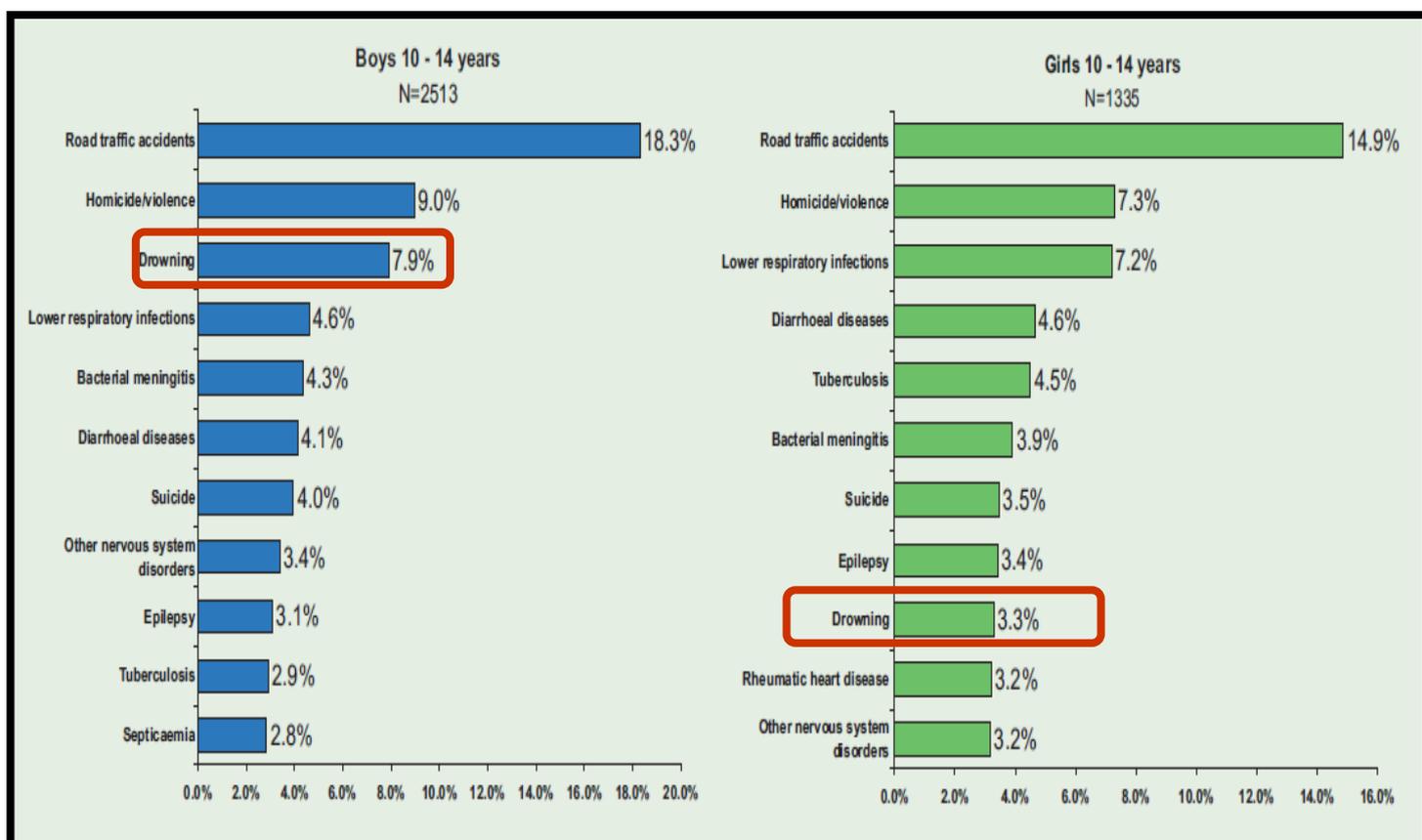


Chart 4: Leading causes of death in South Africa (children aged 10-14 years)

Source: Charts adopted from Bradshaw *et al.* (2003:3-4)

ANNEXURE 6: Responses regarding the value of green spaces in Fort Beaufort and Port Alfred in the province of East London, South Africa

Response measure	Town	Affluent	Township	RDP ^a	Mean	Significance
% stating PGS is important	Fort B	96.7	93.3	90.0	93.3	$\chi^2 = 1.13$
	Port A	100.0	100.0	90.0	96.7	$p > 0.05$
If yes why? Recreation or relaxation (%)	Fort B	18.3	31.6	34.4	28.1	$\chi^2 = 3.98$
	Port A	23.2	40.5	29.0	30.9	$p > 0.05$
Provides jobs (%)	Fort B	2.4	26.3	31.5	20.1	$\chi^2 = 10.72$
	Port A	1.8	14.3	35.5	17.2	$p < 0.01$
Environmental benefits (%)	Fort B	9.8	15.8	15.6	13.7	$\chi^2 = 5.86$
	Port A	16.1	16.7	9.8	14.2	$p > 0.05$
Aesthetics (%)	Fort B	14.6	10.5	6.3	10.5	$\chi^2 = 9.10$
	Port A	26.8	11.9	12.9	17.2	$p < 0.05$
Conservation of biodiversity (%)	Fort B	6.1	0	3.1	3.1	$\chi^2 = 17.07$
	Port A	17.9	4.8	9.7	10.8	$p < 0.001$
Attracts tourism (%)	Fort B	8.5	10.5	3.1	7.4	$\chi^2 = 1.65$
	Port A	8.9	7.1	3.2	6.4	$p > 0.05$
Promotes human well-being (%)	Fort B	3.7	5.3	6.3	5.1	$\chi^2 = 0.59$
	Port A	5.4	4.8	0	3.4	$p > 0.05$
Is the PGS approximately equally distributed in your town? (% yes)	Fort B	56.7	23.3	83.3	54.4	$\chi^2 = 20.6$
	Port A	80.0	13.3	63.3	52.2	$p < 0.0001$
Do you have unbuilt space at your home? (% yes)	Fort B	76.7	76.7	66.7	73.3	$\chi^2 = 5.54$
	Port A	100.0	73.3	66.7	80.0	$p > 0.05$
Is the primary use of that space as a garden or aesthetic space (% yes)	Fort B	82.6	52.2	50.0	61.6	$\chi^2 = 9.16$
	Port A	60.0	54.5	45.0	53.2	$p < 0.05$
Do you have a vegetable garden in that space? (% yes)	Fort B	34.8	60.8	35.0	43.5	$\chi^2 = 42.8$
	Port A	10.0	45.4	40.0	31.8	$p < 0.0001$

Source: Adopted from Shackleton & Blair (2013:104).

ANNEXURE 7: Visual representation of the survey regarding green spaces in Käferberg, Zürich.



How do you like the above landscape?	not at all	not much	somewhat	a little	very much
	<input type="radio"/>				
Would you enjoy walking in the above landscape?	not at all	not much	perhaps	a little	very much
	<input type="radio"/>				
What value do you think the above landscape has in terms of nature conservation?	no value	barely valuable	average value	valuable	very valuable
	<input type="radio"/>				

11 of 20

Continue

Source: Adopted from Lange *et al.* (2007:247)

ANNEXURE 8: Policy measures and aims according to New Labour's urban green space agenda, 2000.

Policy measure	Aim
Urban Parks Initiative	To restore and improve parks and gardens (Heritage Lottery Fund).
Sustainable Communities Programme	To create and improve green spaces that are of importance to local communities (New Opportunities Fund).
Raising standards of local services	Encourage improvements in the provision and management of parks and open spaces by local authorities through the Best Value regime.
Taking environmental action	Enabling and funding environmental and voluntary groups such as the Groundwork Federation, the British Trust for Conservation Volunteers (BTCV) and Wildlife Trusts to take action to improve the quality of local environments.
Develop a shared vision for the future of our parks, play areas and open spaces	To appoint a DETR minister to oversee the development of a vision and proposals for parks, play areas and open spaces. Appoint an advisory committee to advise and assist the conduct of this work.
Improve information on the quality and quantity of parks and open spaces and the way in which they are used and maintained	Develop a database of local authority parks and commission research into the roles of parks and open spaces, the management of the public realm and alternative approaches such as involving the local community and business groups.
Improve the planning and design of new parks, play areas and public spaces and the management of existing spaces	<p>Identify and spread good practice.</p> <p>Develop the Green Flag Awards scheme as a national award for excellence.</p> <p>Revise PPG17 to give local planning authorities a clearer framework for assessing their needs for open spaces and to protect existing spaces from development where appropriate.</p> <p>Work with a range of partners to raise awareness of the importance of parks, play areas and public spaces, encouraging 'local champions' and identifying opportunities for involving local people in looking after local spaces.</p>

Source: Adopted from the Urban White Paper (DETR, 2000).

ANNEXURE 9: Taskforce recommendations and the Government's response

Urban Green Spaces Taskforce	Link to Urban White Paper agenda	Safer, cleaner, greener response
Additional capital funding of £100 million per annum, initially for 5 years, for the restoration and improvement of urban parks and green spaces through the New Opportunities Fund.	Sustainable Communities programme/Urban Parks initiative/ taking environmental action.	The overall level of resources available to parks and green space services has increased significantly over the past 5 years.
Allow local authorities to use developers' contributions from S106 agreements to provide additional resources for urban green space.	Improve the planning and design of new parks and the management of existing spaces.	The new PPG17 makes it clear that planning obligations should be used as a means to remedy local deficiencies in both quantity and quality of open space.
Establish a new national agency for urban green spaces to champion parks and green spaces.	Develop a shared vision for the future of our parks, play areas and open spaces.	Setting up a new dedicated agency for parks and green spaces would not be the most effective way to achieve a higher profile or more integrated approach.
The Government should adopt a green space typology as a basis for planning and managing and collecting more consistent information about the amount and quality of urban green spaces.	Improve information on the quality and quantity of parks and open spaces.	PPG17 adopts the typology proposed by the taskforce for planning purposes.
Stress the importance of joined-up thinking between national and regional providers, local authority planners and managers and other local stakeholders in the preparation and implementation of local green space strategies.	Improve the planning and design of new parks and the management of existing spaces.	The urban green space strategic enablers scheme will be launched to assist local authorities and partnerships to develop integrated approaches to planning and managing green spaces.
Identify a Best Value indicator to monitor training provision in local authority green space management and maintenance.	Raising standards of local services.	It is not possible to set indicators and targets to cover every service.

Source: Adopted from DTLR (2002).

ANNEXURE 10: Green space funding initiatives

Fund/funded by	Aim/eligibility	Comments
Parks for People (formerly Urban Parks Programme)/Heritage Lottery Fund	To regenerate public parks of national, regional or local heritage value.	Applicants tend to be local authorities. Every successful park funded is expected to achieve Green Flag status.
People's Places/Big Lottery Fund in partnership with BTCV, English Nature and Rio Tinto	Community-based scheme to transform derelict areas of land in less advantaged communities into community green spaces.	Part of the Big Lottery Fund's Green Spaces and Sustainable Communities Fund (2001 – 2006). Benefited 722 communities with total of £6.5 million funding.
Wildspace!/Big Lottery Fund in partnership with English Nature	To support the creation or enhancement of Local Nature Reserves in disadvantaged communities that lack access to natural green space.	Part of the Big Lottery Fund's Green Spaces and Sustainable Communities Fund (2001 – 2006). Total of £7 million funding.
Doorstep Greens/Big Lottery Fund in partnership with the Countryside Agency	To help people who experience disadvantage by creating or enhancing local green spaces.	Part of the Big Lottery Fund's Green Spaces and Sustainable Communities Fund (2001 – 2006). Total of £33.6 million funding.
Access to Nature/Big Lottery Fund in partnership with Natural England	To encourage people from all backgrounds but especially those who face social exclusion to understand, access and enjoy our natural environment.	Part of the Big Lottery Fund's Changing Spaces programme that runs from 2008 to 2011.
Community Spaces/Big Lottery Fund in partnership with Groundwork	Empowers community groups to improve public spaces.	Part of the Big Lottery Fund's Changing Spaces programme that runs from 2008 to 2011.

Source: Adopted from Big Lottery Fund (2008).